

THE DESCRIPTION OF THE HETHER PARTE OF ASIA, WITH THE NAMES AS THEY ARE AT THIS DAY VSED BY THE BARBARIANS THERE INHABITING



THE HISTORY OF THE WARRES BETVEENE THE TVRKES AND THE PERSIANS.

*Written in Italian by Iohn-Thomas Minadoi, and translated into
English by ABRAHAM HARTVELL.*

Containing the description of all such matters, as pertaineto the Religion, to the Forces
to the Gouvernment, and to the Countries of the kingdome of the Persians,

*Together with the Argument of euery Booke, & a new Geographicall Mappe
of all those Territories.*

A Table containyng a declaration aswell of diuerse new and Barbarous Names and
Termes vsed in this History, as also how they were called in auncient times.

*And last of all, a Letter of the Authors, wherein is discoursed, what Cittie
it was in the old time, which is now called Tauris, and is so often men-
tioned in this History.*



Imprinted at London by Iohn Wolfe 1595.

Faultes escaped in the printing.

Folio	Line	Read
16	13	make his comming
76	24	to pay his Capigi & Ianissaries withal for lxxxv. Maidini
97	28	Mustaffa with all his troupes,
133	24	gouvernour of Nafsuan,
147	7	ranne all headlong and as it were
167	14	confirmed in Aleppo by the
207	21	brought into Teflis with so great quiet.
217	6	towards Heri,
233	20	Cicala Bassa,
239	27	that all the Chans
	30	being with all
	31	accompanied by all his said Army.
303	31	farre to pleasure him,
327	18	dant and fertile:

*To the most Gracious and Reuerend Fa-
ther in God, I O H N by the prouidence of
God, Lord Archbishop of Canterbury, Pri-
mate and Metropolitane of all England,
and one of the Lords of her Maie-
sties most honorable Priuie
Councell.*

Most Reuerend and my
singular good Lorde,
May it please your
Grace with honorable
fauour to accept of this
paper-Present, which by starts I haue
drawne out of Italian into English.
Sondry reasons there were that at the
first, about three yeares agoe, moued
me to begin the translation thereof,
but because they are such as concerne
matter of estate, wherewithall I list not

to meddle for feare of burning my fingers, I thought it good rather to conceale them, then in printe to publish them. The onely occasion, that caused mee after so long time hauing layed it aside, to take it vp againe and finish the same, was the graue iudgement of S^r. *Moile Finche* a right worshipfull knight in *Kent*, who this last Sommer beeing with you at your Maner of *Beakesbourne*, vpon speech then had about the great preparations of the *Turke* agaynst Christendome, and the huge victories that he had atchieued vpon his enemies that sought to weaken him, did verie highly commende this booke, and the Author thereof: whose eloquence although my english pen cannot possibly reache and expresse, yet is it trulie and faithfully doone in as plaine and significant

cant Termes as I could: whereuntoo I was once minded to haue added certain aduertisementes and collections, as well out of the old auncient writers both sacred and prophane, that haue written of the most stately & magnificent Empire of the *Medes* and *Persians* in times past, as also out of *Leunclaius* & others, that haue lately written of the moderne and present estate thereof, which hath scarce a shaddow of the antique gouernement, wherewith it was then ruled & gouerned. But that matter grew to be so long, that I gaue ouer my purpose therein, least the volume should haue waxen too great. I was also minded to haue inserted into this Treatise, a certaine Prophecie touching the Catastrophe of the *Turkish* kingdom, which *Antonius Torquatus* of *Ferrara* did deli-

uer to *Matthias* king of *Hungary* in the yeare of our Lord 1480. *De Regnorum Europæ Mutationibus*. But because he doth peremptorily set downe, that the *Turkes* shall fall into the handes of the Christians about the yeares 1594. & 1595. and that the house of the *Ottomans* shall vtterly decay in their thirteenth or fourteenth king, and that it shall not exceede that number, nor passe the yeare of our Lord 1596: He shall pardon me, if I do not belecue him, nor commend his credit to future posterity. For (with great griefe it must bee vttered) wee see all thinges go so quite contrarie to this prognosticon, and the power of the *Turkes* growe so huge and infinite; and their enemies so diuided and weakened, that vnlesse God come downe as it were out of an Engine, to protect the Gospell of his

of his Sonne Iesus Christ, and the Professors thereof, I feare greatly that the halfe Moone which now ruleth & raigneth almost ouer all the East, wil grow to the full, and breede such an Inundation as will vtterly drowne al Christendome in the West. God for his mercies sake rebate her Hornes with the glorious shine of his brightest Sonne. The houres, that I haue employed in writing this translation, were stollen from your Graces grauer busineses whereon I should haue attended: And therefore no man can by any right challenge the same from you, nor I in due tie offer it to any other but to your Grace, whose wholly I am and must be, & of whom I may truely and iustly say as *Oedipus* saith in *Sophocles*. ἔχω δ' ἔχω διὰ σέ κ'

οὐκ ἄλλον βρότον.

The Epistle Dedicatory.

The Lord God long maintaine
your Grace in all honor and health vn-
der the most blessed gouernement of
our most happy & renowmed Queen
ELIZABETH, for the continuance of the
peace of this Church of England, and
comfort of all those that are bound to
honor and loue you. At Lambeth,
this New-yeares-day 1595.

Your Graces most humble Seruant
at commaundement,

Abraham Hartwell.



The Authors Epistle to the Reader.



Although Strabo doe write, that the wri-
tinges touching matters of Persia, had
alwaies but small credit, euen untill his
time: and therefore it may seeme likely,
that I, who haue taken vpon me to wryte
such thinges as haue happened in those
cuntries within the space of myne yeares,
ought greatly to feare lest these my writinges should haue the ve-
ry same successe, that they had: yet I haue thought it necessary to
aduertise the reader, that for that respect I did not surcease, or re-
fuse to publish this my history, (though indeed for diuers other
wantes and defectes it may seeme peraduenture not soe worthy to
appeere before the learned persons of this present age:) But ra-
ther, euen for the selfe same cause, it may rest assured, that without
manifest wrong & iniury it cannot be despised or discredited. For if
those former Hiltoriographers (if algaes they were euer wor-
thy of that name) haue deserued, that little credit should be yelded
vnto them: this default was imputed vnto them not for any de-
spite or reproch, but in iustice and in reason: because (as Strabo
himselfe saith) they louing more to delight then to profit, inserted
many fictions & many fables in the truth & purity of the History.
And so the things that happened in deed, being mingled and con-
fused with such as were coggged and fained, they that read them,
could not be so truly enformed of those aduentures and actions, as
they

The Authors Epistle

they desired, and peradventure as they had great neede at that time to be instructed in. But I haue written this history, with a full and sound resolution, neuer to decline from the truth; & not to suffer, that vpon any occasion whatsoever, any thing should bee discoursed therein, but that which eyther I my selfe haue seene, or possibly could vnderstand to be true. Wherein, although I haue found many difficulties and vsed great labours, (aswell through the ignorance of the people, who being not able to tell me any other name of the Citties, of the cuntries, of the fieldes, of the Ri- uers, & of the hilles, but onely the barbarous names of them, they made the certaine knowledge of those places, wherein these battells were foughten, to be very difficult vnto me. As also because it was very requisite, that I should haue an eie to the seuerall qualities of dyuers nations, who are sometimes giuen to lying, and by whom many things are wont to bee spoken, and many things concealed, for their owne particular respectes.) Notwithstanding I haue endeauored by all the best meanes I possibly could, to discharge my duty therein, ouercomming these & such other difficulties, with continuall conference among dyuers men in dyuers places, to the end I might find them agree together in their reportes, and expecting withall, that Tyme it selfe would at last bring forth the truth. Neither did I euer content my selfe with the first or second aduertisement deliuered vnto me, but alwaies iustified the first with the last, by conferring together the testimonies of both sides. And lastly, without regard of danger, of expenses, or of labour, I haue enformed my selfe of euery particularity, that possibly I could, by such men, as were esteemed no liars, but men of great authority, who were present for the most part at all these actions. Which purpose and resolution of myne, was greatly fauoured and assisted by three priuate & extraordinary meanes. First, by the credit and authoritie of Theodoro Balbj, and Giouanni Michele, being then the right honorable Consules in Sorra for the Venetian Senate

To the Reader.

Senate, two most noble, prudent, and valorouse subiectes of the State of Venice: who most magnificently without sparing of any costes did fauour me herein, & in all my other studies, where, vnto I applyed my selfe in those countries. Secondly by the familiar conuersation which I had with one Christoforo de Buoni, cheefe Interpreter to the said most honorable Lordes, a person of great valour, well frended and beloued among those nations, and aboue all, of singular faith and dexterity. Thirdly, by my knowledge in Phisicke, which I was not squemish to practise among those people, to the end I might the better, & without ministring any suspection to any man, enter into their most secret & important aduertisements: and so by this meanes to purchase familiarity in the principall howses of those Citties, wherein for the space of almost seuen whole yeares together, I liued and was entertayned. And of thus much it shall be euen sufficient to haue aduertised the readers, who without any other Apologie or iustification of mine, may rest contented and satisfied with my desire, which hath bene to represent vnto the world Accidentes, that haue happened so far off, so strange, and so important, that thereby they may reape great profit both in peate and warre. Which satisfaction if I shall obtaine of their gratitude, I shall thinke my selfe to haue gayned enough in lieu of all the tranelles, of all the dangers, & of all the expences, that I haue susteyned, & I shall rest assured that I haue not boene an vnfruitfull labourer herein.

The First Booke.

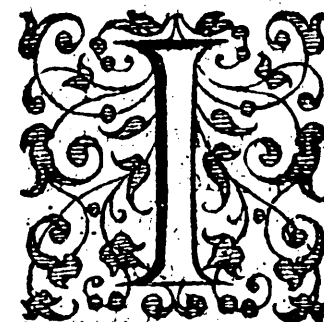
The Argument.

The causes that moued the Author to write this Historie.
The Originall of this warre.
The causes of the same warre.
Aidare beheaded.
Ismael the king with great cruelties, publisheth a new Religion, and spreadeth abroad a speech that he would passe into *Babylonia*.
Amurath resolueth to moue warre against *Persia*.
Periaconcon beheaded.
New stirres in *Persia*, whereof *Yusef Bassa* aduerteth *Amurath*, who thereby is confirmed in his opinion to make this warre.
Consultations at *Constantinople*, of the maner how to manage this warre.
Amurath will not in person go with the Armie: but chooseth *Mustaffa Bassa* to be his General: who passeth to *Chalcaden*, and from thence to *Erebrum*, where he mustereth and surueigheth his Armie, and then departeth for *Sirvan*.
Mustaffa arriveth at *Charr* with the Mountaines of *Chulder*, and there encampeth himselfe artificially.
The King of *Persia* sendeth Souldiers against the *Turkes*: and over them he maketh *Tocomac* the Sulcan his General.
Tocomac cometh toward *Charr*: he sendeth out his Spies, and being deceived by his Spies, he doth confidently assault the *Turkes*.
At the first, *Tocomac* doth happely overcome the *Turkes*, but afterwarde he was defeated, and saued himselfe by the oportunitie of the night.
The particular of the Victorie.
Manucchiar the Georgian yeeldeth himselfe to *Mustaffa*, and is interteined by him.

the warre in
Persia
unmodious
the state of
Christendom.

the causes
that moue the
author to
write this hi-
storie.

The warres betweene the Turkes and Persians.



Write the sondry successes of the warre betweene *Amurat* king of *Turkie*, & *Mahamet* by surname called *Codabanda* king of *Persia*, both of them among the *Barbarians* being most mightie & most warlike Princes. A warre not onely long & bloudie, but also very commodious and of great oportunitie to the Christian Common-wealth: for that it hath granted leisure to the Champions of Christ to refresh and increase their forces, being now much weakened by warres both Forreine and Ciuill. A matter in truth rather diuine then humane, there being now newly arisen among the *Turkes*, fresh hopes of victories, by meanes whereof (contrary to the custome of such contentions) the wrath of these two Princes was drawne in length, which if they had bene conuerted against *Europe*, might haue made our state most troublesome and turbulent. These successes and all the rest, that together with the like motions haue come to passe, sometimes intermingling among them the priuy treacheries of the *Tartarians*, sometimes the oppressions of the people of *Drusia*, and sometimes also the insolencies of the *Arabians*, I here take in hand to describe, being therunto moued, principally vpon two occasions. The one is, for that they all seeme to me of themselves very worthy to be knowne both of the men that liue at this day, & also of those that shall come after vs: neither haue I as yet seene any man that hath made any full or true report thereof, Which notwithstanding I hope shall be here performed by my selfe, who haue bene entertained at

The warre in Persia commodious for the state of Christendom.

The causes that moue the author to wryte this historie.

most seauen whole yeares (during the said warres) partly in *Soria*, partly in *Constantinople*, and by occasion of my practise in *Phisicke*, haue bene familiarly conuersant with many Bassaes, Embassadours, and other great men, as wel *Persians* as *Turkes*, that haue beene agentes and dealers in these affaires. The other is, for that I doe verily persuaide my selfe, that I shall breede great profite and delight to all nations Christian by the reading of this history, wherein they shall vnderstand how mighty the forces are of these two enimies of the name of Christ; and in what termes they stand euen at this day: by meanes of which knowledge it may peraduenture fall out, that our Christian Princes will bee encouraged to take vp armes against the *Barbarians*, vnder whose gouernement so many famous and potent nations are already reduced. A losse (to say the trueth) very great, and not to be thought of without shedding of teares, that whereas a people so renowned for their Nobilitie, & glorious in all ages for wisdom and science, did in times past gouerne so many nations, as though they were Lordes of the whole world: Now being either driuen from their proper Colonies, from their owne houses, from their domesticall confines, they goe wandering vp and downe poore, & needy of other mens helpe: Or els being brought into a most vile kind of seruitude, some serue as slaues, & some yeeld obedience to the enimies of Christ in such sorte, that euen in *Greece* it selfe, the very name of *Greece* is quite extinguished, and as because it was departed from the bosome of the Catholike Church. But let not this my history take his beginning at these quarrells and complaints, which peraduenture to some mens humors would seeme the more vnpleasant, in that they would proue more necessary to be set downe in this respect: And therefore my conceit is rather, that

The I. Booke.

in mentioning such thinges as are neerer to our remembrance, I should beginne at the death of olde *Tamas* the most famous king of *Persia*, and withall discourse vpon the state and condition of that kingdome whilest it remained in the successors of the said *Tamas*, videlicet *Isma-hel* and *Mahamet*, his sonnes: for that by this very bricfe narration, euery man shall manifestly see the true occasions of this warre, and so we shall auoide the inserting of any superfluous replication in the contexture of this our history.

I say then, that *Tamas* after the warres, which he valourously waged with *Soliman* the first of that name, and the eleuenth Emperour of the *Turkes*, at such time as the said *Tamas* did driue *Soliman* out of *Tauris* (being of old called *Ecbathana*, the very same, wherein *Herodotus* writeth, that the kings richesses & treasures were then kept, & not *Terua*, as *P. Giouius* would haue it) a Citty which the same Turkish Emperour had sacked, and hauing concluded a peace, wherein it was agreed that the Castell *Cheiseri*, by the *Turkes* called *Chars*, & by *Ptolomee* (as a man may reasonably coniecture) *Corso*, being in this great change reduced by *Soliman*, into a fort, should be razed: he withdrew himselfe to the gouernment of his own kingdome. Vnder whome the Persian Empire flourished in sacred & redoubted lawes, the people demeaned themselues after the best manner they could, abundance of collections came plentifully in, the Rentes of his chambers increased wonderfully, Armes, Artes & Sciences did happely prosper, and were highly esteemed: neither was there any more feare that *Soliman* would renew the warres, as one that had altogether bent his thoughtes another way. When as after a few yeares, wherein both *Soliman* and his

The I. Booke.

B 4 sonne

A peace betweene *Tamas* & *Soliman*, & the conditions thereof,

Soliman & Sonne *Selim*, which after him had enioyed that damned felicity of his Empire, departed out of this lyfe, *Tamas* also himself died in the yeare 1576, the xj. day of May, hauing left behind him eleuen children, one called *Mahamet* the eldest, who passed his life a while in *Heri*, (in times past called *Aria*,) and afterwarde in *Siras*, (of old called *Persopolis*) by the appointment of his father, being nowe waxen proud for his issue of many sonnes. Another named *Ismahel* his second sonne, who for the fiercenesse of his courage was banished into a Castell, called by the Persians *Cahaca*, situate betweene *Casbin* (otherwise called *Arfacia*) & *Tauris*. The third, who had to name *Aidere*, was kept in the custody of *Zalchan*, *Piry Mahamet*, *Aeta Hussain*, and other of his kinsfolkes, by occasion of the mother of the said *Aidere*, all being cheefe Capitaines in the coast of *Istigeli*. Other eight children there were partly by the same mother partly by other women, whose names were *Mamut*, *Solimano*, *Mustaffa*, *Emanguli*, *Alichan*, *Amet*, *Abraham*, & *Ismahel* the yonger.

Tamas his last will.

This *Tamas*, before he dyed, did solemnely appoynt by his will, that his sonne *Ismahel* the elder should bee set in the kingdome: who although, because he was yonger then *Mahamet*, could not bee his lawfull successor, yet did he yeeld great hope of his most excellent wit, and singular vertues: insomuch that he seemed to promise euery man an happy gouernment, & sufficient habilitie to defend himselfe against his enemies, were they neuer so fierce and warlike. *Ismahel*, after that he was confined by his father *Tamas* into the castel of *Cahaca*, had euer sought to shew himselfe superior to his brother in the Arte militarie: and although he gaue himselfe by secret industrie to learne the preceptes of the Turkish law (a thing which

The I. Booke.

if it had beene publicly knowen, would alone haue beene enough to haue barred him from succession of the kingdome: yet had he alwayes endeouored himselfe to be an open enemy to the Turkes, and thereupon with his often inuasions (which was the cause of his imprisonment) whiles the peace held betweene *Tamas* and *Soliman*, he was so bould as now & then, contrary to his fathers commandement to assault the Territorie of *Erzurum*, and beyond all honestie to spoile the townes & castelles of that region with his sodaine incursions. By meanes whereof he made shew of his great valour to all people, but principally to his father *Tamas*, who although in outward shew he seemed greatly to mislike those his youthful heates, yet was he dayly confirmed in the opinion, that he carried of him, to name him his successor, thinking verily that of soe great a dignity he would proue himselfe either altogether, or at lest more worthy then his brother *Mahamet*. Which *Mahamet* (to speake the truth) aswel for the disease of his eyes, whereby for his surname he was called *Codabanda*, as also for the manner of his life altogether giuen to that ease, which is proper to such as are studious and quietly mynded, neuer shewed himselfe sufficient to sway the burden of the Empire, and to brydle the fiercenesse of his enemies: yea and he protested himselfe that hee did vtterly abhorre so great a weight, and those so many cares, as are wont to follow so ample and soe many-partied a kingdome. And yet for all that did not *Mahamet* remaine altogether depryued of all the whole fauour of his father: for so much as *Abas Mirize*, the middlemost of his sonnes, was confirmed in the City of *Heri*, (where he was before borne,) and honored with the tytle of the Visier of that remote and abundant Cuntry: yea and

The simulation of Ismahel.

Why Mahamet was called by surname Codabanda.

Mahamet lo ueth not the charge of a king.

Abas Mirize Mahamets sonne, in Heri

C

Tamas

The I. booke.

Emir Hamze
Mahamets
sonne.

Tamas himselfe had established *Emir Hamza*, the eldest of *Mahamets* sonnes, in some great dignitie, if death, though somewhat tardie, yet not altogether vnlooked for, had not by preuenting him, bereaued him of his lyfe, and taken from them all hope of greater matters.

Ismahel called
to *Cashin* to
be crowned
king of Persia.

Stirres in *Cashin*.

Periaconcona,
sister to *Mahamet*, *Aidere* &
Ismahel, yet
elder in yeares
then they.

The singular
boldnesse
of *Aidere*.

King *Tamas* then being thus dead, the said *Ismahel* was called by the *Sultans*, for the execution of his fathers will, to *Cashin*, that he might (as he ought) be saluted & proclaimed king. But while the *Postes* (whome the *Turkes* call *Valacchi*) ran with these great aduertysementes to *Ismahel*, there arose a stirre within the Citty of *Cashin*, or rather within the pallace of the king, where remayned at that tyme *Periaconcona*, a woman in yeares elder then all those her brethren, the sonnes of *Tamas*, who was niece to *Sahamal* the *Georgian* on her mothers side, being sister to *Sahamal*, & wife to the said *Tamas*, of whom also was borne the yong *Muskaffe*, being one of the eyght sons aboue named. She hauing the care committed to her, and other *Sultans* Councellers of estate, to see the last will and testament of the dead king put in execution, was by sondry deuises dyuerfly attempted, that the place might not be preserved for *Ismahel*, but vnlawfully yeelded to *Aidere*; who whiles *Tamas* was sorely afflicted with his sicknes, boldly entering into the chamber, where he lay, had adorned his forehead with his fathers Crowne, and in the sight of his old and weak parent, with an action more rash then became his honestie, shewed himselfe desirous of this ambitious succession. And besides this error, (for the which he was presently & sharply rebuked) after the death of *Tamas*, he withdrew himselfe to his sister, most instantly beseeching for desired a dignitie at her handes: with whome, as also with the rest of the Councellers of estate

The I. Booke.

state

state he had vsed so many prayers & fauours, that the inheritance could not be any longer kept from him, but by the helpe of some secret deceit. His sister durst not be so bould, as to moue any important mitigation of these matters before the Councellers, neither would her hart suffer her to set forward any action, that might be preiudicial to her brother *Aidere*: neither could she tell how to permit so great an iniury to be done to *Ismahel*, who was chosen by his father into the succession. And therefore in this perplexity she sought meanes to satisfy the ambitious youth being present, the right and reasons of *Ismahel* being absent, the honour of her dead fathers will and testament, and the profit of the kingdome. For hauing consulted with all the *Sultans*, she resolved to yeeld, that *Aidere*, being inuested in his regall apparell, and settled in the great gallerie, should attend the acclamation of the people, and be publicly installed, as though he were elected king. And euen thus did this vnwise & bould youth suffer himselfe to be led by the blind desires of gluttonous glory: who being set in his maiestie perswaded himselfe, that he should now see his frendes and foes obedient vnto him, and himselfe reuerenced of all men, as king of the Empire. But to these designementes so hasty and so prosperous, the successes that sprong from the subtilty of those Councellers, and his dissembling Sister, were nothing conformable: for that by their aduise she tooke order, for the gates of the Pallace to be presently locked, leaving at every passage a sure garde, and permitting that one narrow wicket onely should remayne open, and safely warded with a company of most faithfull and valourous Captaines, wholly deuoted to *Tamas* & *Ismahel*, who had strait charge also given them to suffer every man to enter

The I. Booke.

C 2.

Aidere procured to be made king before *Ismahel*.

The subtilty of *Periaconcona* to entertayne *Aidere*.

Aidere stalled king in *Cashin*.

in, sauing onely the followers and keepers of *Aidere*. In this sort did she thinke to entertaine the young man, vntill such time as the nominated king should arriue from *Cahaca*, and so put in execution what he thought best, for the honour of himselfe, for the custodie of the kingdome, which fell to him by inheritance, and for the generall quiet of all *Persia*.

Thus then fate the young man *Aidere*, replenished with vnwonted ioyes, receauing honour from al the people of *Casbin*, sauing onely from his frendes and keepers. By meanes whereof, perceauing now the prohibition of them, and the great stirre of *Zalchan* his chiefe favorite, (who discouering the prepenched deceit, and crying vpon king *Aidere*, threatned the lady, the *Sultans*, & all the rest that waited vpon this fained succession, which was indeed ordayned but for a scorne & despight of him) he acknowledged this publicke derision, and secretly together with all his misfortune, he abandoned his fresh-begun honors, and of a king (as he presumed to be) he had the grace to make himselfe a fugitiue, and being become all fearefull and sorrowfull, with all the force he could he withdrew himselfe closely among certayne women of the pallace, hoping so to find some way to escape with his lyfe.

In the meane tyme so greatly encreased the cryes and threatnings of the friendly company of *Ustighu* (and now all of them had prepared themselves for some dangerous & perriuous attempt against *Persia*) that the counsellors, with consent of the lady were enforced to take order, that to bereaue these tumultuous and seditious people of all their hope and courage, *Aidere* should be deprived of his lyfe. And so *Sahamal* the Georgian vncle to the young man, after long search made for him, at last found him hidden

Aidere acknowledging his publicke derision, fledd all fearefull among certayne women.

hidden among the weomen, and without any stay, taking his head by the lockes, cut it quite from his carcase: and in the place, where *Zalchan* with the rest of vnfortunate *Aidere* his fauorites stode crying and threatning, among the greatest medley & thickest presse of the proude conspirators, he slong the head all bloudy, & as it were breathing for heate, crying out vnto them, Behould there your king, enjoy him at your pleasure. At this sudden and horrible spectacle euery man burned in rage and anger: neither did there want for the present time many a rash head, that meditated most cruel reueng, & turbulent stirres: Yet in the end when they perceiued that the neere succession of *Ismahel* was inenitable, and the death of *Aidere* (that followed) irreuocable, euery one betooke himselfe to his owne private affayres, & at last deuyded themselves one from another, and seuerally departing from the pallace, some saued themselves here, and some there, leauinge those courtes and lodgings all in quyet.

Aidere beheaded by *Sahamal* his vncle.

The head of *Aidere* throwne among the conspirators.

In the meane tyme was *Tamas* buried acording to their prophane rites, and *Ismahel* the successor arriued from *Cahaca*, who without any stirre at all was embraced by his sister, saluted by the *Sultans*, and reuerenced of all men, as the lawfull heire of so great an Empire. But he, as soone as he began to sway the regall scepter, and sawe himselfe superior to all men in liberty & authority, without any pitty at all (swaruing therein from the Persian custome, and imitating the Turkish maner) caused the heades of all his cygher younger brethren to be cut off, and with all vsed such slender diligence, that not onely all those which were neere vnto them in bloud or affinity were bereaue of their liues, but also all the fauorites of the late *Aidere* were vnhappyly destroyed in that

The 1. booke.

Ismahel put-
teth to death
many kinf-
folkes and
friendes of his
dead brother
Aidere,

Euery man
bewaileth the
cruelty of the
new king
Ismahel,

Ismahel pub-
lisheth a new
superstition,

New publike
griefes & new
deathes hap-
pening by oc-
casion of
Ismahel,

publike slaughter, so that the streetes of *Casbin* were defy-
led with bloud, and all the Citty resounded with mour-
ninges & complaints. Which vnexpected cruelty, being
altogether vnworthy of so worthy-a-thought king, did in
such sort encrease that opinion of great successes, which
all the Persians had conceaued of the person of *Ismahel*,
that there was not a man to be found, which changed not
his former hopes into new fears, & bitterly sorrowing for
the calling of such a Lord to rule ouer them, did not hate
this new fiercenes of his mind, & bewaile so vntymely &
miserable a massacre. But much greater and farre more
lamentable did these miseries growe, as soone as certayne
speeches were published and spred of the king, *That hee*
would change the religion, (if we may so call it:) & as soone
as he commanded openly, that whosoever desyred to
liue vnder his standard, & loved to obey his lawes, should
detest the superstitious worship of *Aly*, the foolish and
false prophet of the Persians, & according to the impious
custome of the *Ottomans*, obserue and mayntaine the im-
pure and wicked rytes of *Abubac*, *Osman*, and others, that
were reuerenced & honoured by the Turkes with a pro-
fane worship. So that by this great nouelty, quite con-
trary to the late publike and famous actes of *Ismahel*, and
altogether repugnant to their hope, whereby they expec-
ted glorious matters from him, to the generall benefite of
Persia, the myndes of all men were so afflicted, that the
country neuer felt greater trouble, nor ever indured a
more dangerous & vncomly change: by meanes where-
of, & by force of this publike Edict of the new king, (whe-
ther he did it because he was in loue with this wicked
worship, and had learned this abomination rather then
any other, as we sayd before: or whether he did it to re-
The 1. Booke.

Make

voke his neighboures the *Mesopotamians*, the *Babylonians*,
and *Assyrians*, vnder his banners:) many of his prophane
priestes, many of the Gouvernors of his frendly and sub-
iect Citties, being too much inflamed with the former
superstition, were dryuen into exile, many put in prison,
some had their eyes pluckt out, (among whome wasthe
Califfe of Casbin) and not a few others in sondry sortes de-
priued of their liues: yea many Ladyes, ioyned in bloud
with *Ismahel* himselfe, & dyuers others of his kinsfolkes, to
whom neither sex, nor age, nor innocency could be a suffi-
cient defence, did endure sondry tormentes and strange
calamities.

In this so great annouation, and among these tu-
multes, there went abroad with all, an vniuersall rumor,
not onely among the Citties of *Persia*, but in the regions
of the Turkes also, (*Fame the publisher of euill, rather then of*
good neuer, arriuing euen to the Citty of *Constantinople*)
that with all these disorders, *Ismahel* sought to put in order
a great number of such soldiers, as fauoured this new pro-
claimed vanity, & passing with them to the citty of *Baby-*
lon, now called *Bagdat*, there, to the imitation of *Soliman*,
would receaue the Crowne of the Empire at the hand of
him, that (whosoever he was) he should find to be the
successor of their great *Califfe*, and in the cheefest place a-
mong theyr vncleane priestes. In this dyuers variety of
matters, and in so great nouelty of euentes, beyond all
common expectatiō, whiles there encreased rather feares
of newe motions, then ensued hopes of auncient quy-
etnesse, by the helpe of the aforementioned Lady *Peria-*
consoud, (who as the kinges greatest favorite suruiued all
the rest) he was sodainely bereaued of his lyfe: whether
it were that this his death happened by occasion of cer-
The 1. Booke

C 4.

taine

The Califfe
of Casbin de-
pryued of his
eyes by the
commande-
ment of Is-
mahel.

A rumor
spread that
Ismahel
would passe
to Babilon
with an army.

King Ismahel
suddenly per-
ished, & the
manner of his
death.

raine amorous practises of *Ismahel* himselfe, or whether his sister had cunningly conueighed poyson into some e-lectuary prepared for him: or (as some more probably do affirme) that his sayd sister hauing priuately conspyred with *Calil-chan*, *Emir-chan*, *Piry Mahamet*, *Curchi Bassi*, being al at that time captaines of great accompt, & as it were Presidents of the kingdome, had brought them in, apparelled in womens weedes & gowns, & that they strangled him, at such time as *Ismahel* had priuately withdrawn himselfe among his paramoures. Howsoeuer it was, sufficient it is, that by the helpe of the saide *Periaconcona*, the 24. day of *November* being *S. Katherins* euen, in the yeare of our saluation 1577. this king, being generally tearmed by his people a seditious man & a contemner of the lawe, was suddenly taken out of this world, to the exceeding ioy of all those Nations, that by his death thought they should remaine freedde from great and manifold troubles.

Periaconcona
perfectly with
the captaines
of *Persia*.

Ismahel being thus dead, the Lady began presently to parlee with al those *Sultans*, that were the ministers of this fraudulent death, & told them, that as they had giuen aduise, for the greater benefit of all *Persia*, that *Ismahel* should be depryed both of his kingdome & lyfe: and that as yet it was not knowen, who should worthely succeed in that Crowne, which now remayned in their handes, forasmuch as the king, that dead is, hath left no issue behind him: so it touched them verie neere to take vpon them the protection thereof, and preserving the maiestie of the Scepter, the liberties of the people, and the peace of the subiect Citties, strongly to defend and deeply to settle the safety of that nation, which onely possesseth the true orders of the elect disciples of crafty and wicked *Mahamet*. There were at that tyme many gouernours and Ca-
pitaines

pitaines assembled in *Cashin*: and euery one of them had withdrawn himselfe thether, for the accomplishment of his owne priuate designementes, these gaping after the mutations of the world. *Emir-Chan* he burned in ambitious desires, and hoped by the meanes of a match, to be coneluded with a sister of *Periaconcona*, (who was already greatly inelyning to him). that he should be exalted to the soueraigne degree of all *Persia*. *Mirize Salmas*, cheefe among the *Sultans*, of that court, he hoped on the other syde to aduance into the estate, cyther *Mahamet* brother to the dead king, or els *Hamze* the eldest son of the sayde *Mahamet* *Corabanda*: and by bestowing vpon him his daughter to be his wyfe, (as afterwarde hee did.) so to encrease the glory of his house. Others there were that hoped they should be able to draw *Abus* out of *Heri*, and to create him king of the Empyre. There was also one of the Tutors of the infant *Tamas*, who waited likewise for some opportunity to settle *Tamas* in the kingdom, and so by meanes of his greatnes to exalt himselfe to the soueraigne Tytle of cheefe captaine among his fellowes. Neither did there want a number of others, that secretly watched to vse any occasion that might be presented vnto them. Howbeit in this so great variety of thoughts, the *Sultans* answered the Lady with one consent, and promised her in most liberrall termes all the protection, that their forces could afforde, or their weapons procure: and yet did they all of them both in action and word clerely dissemble their seuerall imaginations, whereas to theyr mynde was as prone and ready, as their heart was cunning to conceale them closely. And in this sort were ended those great nouelties, which arose (I
The 1. booke.

The answer
of the Cap-
taines to *Pe-
riaconcona*,

know not vpon what occasion) & were brought in by this ambitious king.

In the meane space, which was one yeare seuen monethes and six dayes of king *Ismahels* raigne, *Amurat* the new successor also of his father *Selim*, who was now wakened at the death of old renowned *Tamas*, and at the rumor spread abroad of the desyre which *Ismahel* had to passe to *Babylon*, & at the fresh report of this new published superstition, & had thoroughly learned of all sides, what harme this late inconstant & variable king had wrought in *Persia*, what dissensions he had raysed, & how hardly all the Prouinces of the Persian Empire had endured those strange calamities, & so hoped in himselfe either in *Ismahels* life tyme, or after his death to succeed him, for that heareby occasiō might be ministred vnto him to take vp armes against *Persia*, & matter suggested to put in execution his vnmeasurable desires of some new conquestes: which desires had alwaies made both him and other his predecessors not onely suspected, but also terrible & fearefull as well to his frendes as to his enemies: forasmuch as there is an auncient custom, which is growen as it were to be a law among the *Ottoman* kings, that those Emperours cannot challenge their due honours in their life tyme, nor their proud monuments after their death, (which are so durable, as at this day they remayne equall with *Eternitie*;) vnlesse they attempt some great and ambitious actions & enterpryses, and vnlesse they performe some exploit, that may be comfortable to their maiesty. *Amurat* therefore bending all his cogitations to these great sturres, would not direct his mind any other way, or moue warre against any other nation, vntill he might first see what issue these marvellous innouations would bringeforth,

Amurat at the sturres in *Persia*, entred into mind to make warre vpon them.

An auncient custome of the *Turkes*.

Amurat intentiue to the matters of *Persia*.

The I. Booke.

soorth which in the succession that followed, & namely in the person of *Mahamet* now king, seemed to be more pregnant and perseverant; then euer they were before, and ministred to *Amurat* new occasions of victorious and strange hopes, for that as soone as *Ismahel* departed out of this life, by the asorenamed *Mirize Salmas*, (being in dignitie the cheefe man among the *Sultans*, though in blood and nobilitie inferior to them all) after many letters dispatched too and fro, *Mahamet Codabanda* was at last assured, how with all quietnes of mind and security of person he might come and take possession of the kingdome. He was also certyfyed by the same *Salmas* of the whole conspiracy plotted agaynst his Brother to put him to death, and likewise made acquainted how the fraudulent lady with the *Sultans* had capitally consulted against him, & how she fauouring *Emir-chan* & *Abas Mirize* of *Heri*, her nephew and his son, more then became her, did little regard the due and rightfull succession of him being her brother. And for these causes did *Mahamet* greatly beare himselfe bold of the faith and diligence of *Mirize Salmas*: and had withall no small desyre to see his eldest son *Hannaz Mirize*, aduanced to some such soueraigne dignity, as he saw was due to the liuely hope, that euery man perceived to be in him, in regarde of his vertue & prudence, for managing the common wealth, and dispatch of matters of warre: wherein also he shewed himselfe to his father very ialous and suspicious, least some other man should vnsurpe vpon him that honour and authority which so properly appertayned vnto him. And thereupon did *Mahamet* in the end resolute with himselfe, not to leaue the kingdome in the handes of priuate persons, nor in the lightnes of an inconstat woman, who

The I. Booke.

D 2.

by

by the occurrents sent him from his counsellor, was detected to be an vniuersally queane, and a rebellious conspirator against her owne blood, where with she had now twice defiled her selfe, without any pitty or remorse of conscience. And therefore he wrote back againe, that he was mynded to take the rightfull succession vpon him, that (God so fauouring, ayding and assisting him) hee would enforce himselfe to profit *Persia*, to procure a more thankfull and commodious a member to the common wealth, then his dead brother: & that for the same purpose he was putting himselfe on his iourney: with strait charge notwithstanding, that *Mirize Salmas*, to make his turning seeme the more acceptable, should before his entrance within the gates of *Cashin* present him with the mischeuous head of *Periaconcona*, a woman (in respect of the scorne exereysed agaynst yong *Aidere*, and of the treacherous death practised and executed vpon his brother, and of the peruerse imaginations which she conceived to cause the succession to fall into other mens hands, and of the prodigall familiarity which she had with some of the *Sultans*,) well worthy of a thousand deaths. Secretly did *Mirize Salmas* put in execution whatsoeuer *Mahamet* had priuately enioyned him, so that by his meanes he was presently & solemnely proclaimed king of *Persia*. And afterwarde hauing gathered together many squadrons of men, wholly deuoted to the blood and name of *Mahamet*, the same *Mirize Salmas* put himselfe on his way to meete him, carrying the head of that audacious & manlike vtrago vpon the top of a lance, with her hayre dispersed, and some other vncouth behaviours that moued terror to the beholders. From which nouelties (one mischance as it were hyding vpon the necke

The 1. booke.

Mahamet
Codabanda
resolueth to
come and be
crowned
King.

Periaconcona
beheaded,

of another) there sprong vp dyuers inward hatreds, sundry tumultuous seditions, and many ciuill warres, insomuch that the king for his parte being continually solicited by *Mirize Salmas*, (the cheefest and deereest favorite he had,) sought by all meanes to take reuenge of those treacherous companions and complices of his brothers death, who on the other syde did euen burne in immoderate desyres to aduance their owne priuate estates, and withall their might opposed themselves against his power and authority, whereby the state of *Persia* began to fall into greater inconueniences, and of these nouelties to reape new losses. *Sahamal* the Georgian, (he that by the appointment of his neece *Periaconcona*, and of the conspiring *Sultans*, was the minister of *Aidere* his death,) as soone as he heard of the misfortune of his neece, fled to his places of rest in his mountaine of *Bruz*, fearing greatly the wrath of this new Lord. *Leuentogli* likewise one of the Lordes of *Georgia*, who by reason of these accidentes, which happened to his brother at his owne perill, did repose small confidence in the *Persian* protection, vnderstanding the flight of *Sahamal*, being very nere vnto him both in countrey and blood, estranged himselfe so farre from his old loue and amicitie deuotion, that he seemed to desire some new innouation. The Nations also that were neighbours to the Turkes, and the people of *Media Atropatia*, where *Seruan* is at this day, remayned discontent at the fame of this new king, & in the end it appeared that *Persia* vnder this new succellour, through many mutations, was fallen into a most notable misery, & the state thereof more weakened then euer it was wont to be.

Of all these late successes, as well as of the former intelligences, was *Amurat* aduertised from dyuers partes, but

The 1. booke,

D 3.

specially

New stirres
and mis-
chiefs in
Persia.

Sahamal the
Georgian fly-
eth from
Cashin into
the mount-
ayne.

Leuentogli
desirous of
innouation.

The people
of *Seruan* e-
uill affected
towards
the new king.

Vntress the
Bassa of Van
aduertyseih
Amurat of
the stirres in
Persia.

pecially and particularly *Vntress* the *Bassa* of the *Citty* of *Kan*, a *citty* accordyng to *Strabo* situate in *Armenia* the greater, vpon the *Lake* *Actamar* (sometymes called *Pallus Mantiana*,) sent him most perfect information of all these stirres in *Persia*, discoursing vnto him of the death of *Ismael*, the consultations of the *Sultans*, the treacheries & death of *Periagoncon*, the broyles betweene the king and the *Sultans*, the nature of the new king being diseased in his eyes, little esteemed by his subiectes, besotted in his affections towades his three sonnes, (at whose handes he foresaw notwithstanding, that hee should receaue many iniuries and troubles,) the facility to ouer-rule the cheefe *Gouernours* of the *Georgiani*, and the people of *Atropatia*, otherwyse called *Seruan*, which were euill affected towades the new king: and to be brieue whatsoeuer had in truth succeeded in *Persia*, and might inflame the mynd of *Ottoman* to conuert his forces agaynst an enemy of small counsell and much enofusion: adding therunto, that neuer was there greater opportunity to overcome that kyng then now was offered, and that in any case hee should not let slip such an occasion, as the *Ottoman* kings neuer had before to obayne so certayne and so famous victoryes, with so great glory and felicity in these enterpryses.

Amurat, whose eares had along time beene filled with those stirres, that *Ismael* had rayled, and whose cogitations were wholly bent to marke what wold be the issues thereof, liued with a mynd altogether inflamed with an vmeasurable desire of the newes, and as soone as to his owne naturall inclynation, and to other mens reportes, there was added also this information of *Vntress*, (who peraduenture had that charge particularly enioined him) he

The 1. Booke

settled

settled himselfe more deeply in his former conceytes, vz: to proue his forces in subduing a king of an ancient time, dissenting and estranged from the lawe of *Mahamet*, a contemner of his maiesty, and to be short, his onely corriuall and odious competitor in all the East: and therewithall began to call to his remembarnce, how *Selim* father to his grandfather, and *Soliman* his grandsyre would haue taken this enterpryse to hart, recording privately to himselfe how they being captains of most mighty armies, went themselues in person, fought with the Persian kings, sacked and tooke many of their *Citties*, and reduced their bordering enemyes into very strait termes. But no one thing did more enflame the Turkish Emperour, then did so rare an occasion which he thought was now offered vnto him, to haue for his enemy a king not well practysed in feats of war, besotted & confounded in affection & conceyttowades his children, and weakened through the dissention of his subiectes: he measured and weighed his owne forces, he considered the peace which his people had enioyed from the taking of *Goletta*, euen vntill this tyme: he collected the infinite number of his vassalles aswell horsemen as footemen, he surueighed the rentes of his customes, his meanes to fynd money, his engynes of war (wherein he did far surpasse the Persians,) the citties of his enemy layde all open, and without any defence of fyre or by such lyke instruments of death: and in brecfe when he had called to mind whatsoeuer he durst attempt and promisse to himselfe, he did more and more resolute with himselfe to take the occasion that was now offered him to begin this warre. For the compassing of which his purpose he was greatly fauoured by the present state of Christendome, at that tyme being wholly in league &

The 1. Booke.

D 4.

amity

Amurat is
confirmed in
his opinion to
make warre.

Amurat is
peace with
the Christian
Princes.

Amurat in
peace with
the Christian
Princes.

amity with him: and the peace yet continuing that the Emperour had made with him: and the rather, because he was verily perswaded that he should not haue any disturbance by the Catholike king, who no doubt would graunt him a truce by reason of his warres in *Flanders*, wherewith hee perceiued hee was shrewdly occupied; (which truce afterward ensued by occasion of the kingdome of *Portugall*.) The State of *Venice* also obseruing that faith and promise, which with publike capitulations, they had faithfully established in concluding a peace, after that singular victory, which they had obtayned neere to the *Islandes Echinades* against the Turkish Fleete. And to be shorte the Turke assured himselfe that he should not any way suffer any annoiance or impediment by any prince of Europe.

Amurat taketh counsell
of his Visiers.

In this generall tranquillity & common peace with the Potentates of Christendome, did *Amurat* with more security and bouldnes discourse with him selfe about the broaching of this warre in *Persia*: and at last not fynding any thing contrary to his designementes, he resolved to haue a treaty with those chief *Bassaes* called *Visiers* that vse to sit at the Court gate, & to take sound aduise with those that had the vniuersall gouernement of the whole Empyre in their handes, whether it were better vpon this present occasion to begin the prepened warre, or if they thought this oportunitie not to be so fit, then to lay it aside, & to conuert their forces and counsellers against the common wealth of Christendome. So impiouly and so barbarously is this Empyre managed, that whensoever there is any treaty to attempt any enterpryse for the aduancing thereof, it is lawfull to violate any truce and to breake promise: whereupon although this warre

The I. booke.

could not bee moued eyther agaynst the *Persians*, or agaynst the Princes Catholike, without breach of theyr promised fayth, (altogether counterfetting and pretending capitulations of peace, leagues & oathes that ought to be inuiolable :) yet in the manifold consultations, that passed among these *Visiers*, there was not a man found that had any consideration or made any accompt of that defect: but euery one of them (as their manner is in all thinges) preferring violence before reason, thought it conuenient to set forward the wicked desyre of their Lord, without any godly or honest respect at all. And among the rest, *Mahamet* the *Visier*, being cheefest in authority, experience, and yeares of gouernement, was of aduice that it would proue a more easy and lesse dangerous attempt to warre with the *Persians*, then with the christian princes: aswel for that the ciuil dissentions lately sprong vp in the kingdome of *Persia*, and the condition of the new successor of the *Persian* Empyre in his gouernment and warre, promised all fortunate victory: as also for that to wage battell agaynst the Christian Princes, was not to make that Prince onely his enemy against whom he should fight, (whose forces notwithstanding, bee what Prince soeuer he may bee, haue euer bene most terrible, some by sea & some by land) but it was to bid battell to all the Potentates of Christendome at once, those potentates (I say) that not many yeares before had discomfited a fleete of 300. Gallies & mo, & awhile after that, had put to flight another fleet either as great as it, or not much inferior, & peraduenture was still able to performe, whatsoeuer they desired. In these consultations & other like discourses, in the end they all agreed, that it would be much better to make war in *Asia* against

Turkes make
no accompt
of breaking
Promisse.

Mahamet the
Visier
aduiseeth to
make warre.

The generall
conclusion of
them all,

The I. Booke.

E

dartes

dartes, agaynst swordes, agaynst Citties eyther lying open or slenderly fenced, then in *Europe*, agaynst lightnings and fyres, against bowes and arrowes, agaynst devouring flames, agaynst strong places fortified with munition and instrumentes of death. And if there were any difficultie at all therein, there were but two onely that seemed to be of any weight: one was the great distance and rough passage of those places, through which they were to leade their horses, their Cammells, their artillery and their men, every man knowing that the Country of *Georgia* is compassed rounde about with verie rough mountains and thick woods, where the enemy vseth all good oportunitie to lay ambushes, and to worke treason against such as passe that way: another difficulty was money, *Smam Bassa* among the rest offering to their considerations, that if a man would conquere a new countrey, it was necessary for the mayntenance of the conquest to erect Castelles and Fortresses, which being least to the defence of valiant souldiers would require large stipends, without which every souldyer willingly forsaketh his charge. Saving these two difficulties (which notwithstanding were not greatly debated, but in answer thereof as much spoken by the king himselfe as was thought sufficient) every man thought the conquest of the kingdome of the *Chefelbas* to bee the playnest & easiest, & promised to themselves vndoubted victory of it. But above all other *Mustassa Bassa*, he that reduced the Ile of *Cyprus* vnder the *Ottoman* power, infamous for the cruell, barbarous & vniust death of *Marc'antonio Bragadino* the stoute and valorous Captayne of *Famagosta*, whose name shall neuer dye in the tongues and myndes of all ages, hee (I say) with exceeding audacitie set out great hopes

Two difficulties found in the resolution to make warre.

The difficulties answered.

Mustassa Bassa the infamous hath great hope in this warre.

The Turkes & Persians

hopes of glorious conquestes, not concealing the vertues of the *Latines*, & the perilles passed in the wars of the said Islande, and particularly in the expugnation of the Citty, preferring the armes, forces, and valour of the *Latines* before the valour, forces, and armes of the *Georgians* and the *Persians*: and in breefe assuring more certayne hope of this warre in *Asia*, then of any other that could possibly be raised in *Europe*. And in this sort were the first discourses and originall of these motions in the East, begun and practised: whereby all men may see that neither zeale of religion, nor any injury receaved from the *Persian* Kinges, but onely the ambitious desyre of *Amurat* to subdue a kingdome, both in his owne conceyte and also by other mens relation will gouerned by an effeminate and foolish king, and through ciuill dissention brought into great danger, was the first prouocation of making this warre: and thereby may all Catholikes learne, that there is nothing more pernicious to the Christian Commonwealth, then ciuill discord.

When they had thus concluded vpon this resolution to make warre in *Persia*, there arose new consultations touching the manner thereof, and vpon what coast they should begin their iourney, that so they might expect the more honorable successe: which poynt *Amurat* did greatly vrge, protesting before al his *Visiers*, that he would not enter into a warre, vlesse he were in great hope to beare away the promised victory. Many were the propositions and opinions of the *Visiers*: and many questions did the king propound, whereunto hee himselfe did readily answer. On the one side some thought, that it would be very comenient to send the Army to *Babilon*, and from thence to *Syras*, (in old tyme called *Persepolis*) famous

Mustassa preferred the valour of the *Latines* before the valour of the *Georgians* & *Persians*.

Discord dangerous to a common wealth.

Amurat protested to the *Visiers*, that of this warre he would both reape profit and honour.

The opinion of some touching the manner of the warre.

The opinion
of others.A third opi-
nion.The delibera-
tion of Amu-
rat,

for the praye that *Alexander* tooke there, (as *Q. Curtius* wryteth,) and by that way to attempt the conquest of all *Persia*. Others were of a contrary mind, & did giue aduice, that the Army should bee sent by direct course to *Tauris*, there to erect strong fortresses, and to take possession of all the country subiect round about. It is reported also, that some there were that thought it better to send two seuerall Armyes from both the places aboue mentioned, that so bringing the enemy into a strait, they might inforce him to retire, and to yeeld vnto them whatsoever they should demand. But *Amurat* durst not repose such confidence in his owne forces, as to thinke that with his battells deuided & so weakened, he should be able to overcome that enemy, who had alwaies fought most valiantly agaynst the monstrous and couragious Armyes of his forefathers, nor without some feare also of the ancient vertue of the *Persian* people, whereof Fame hath ever resounded an immortal and glorious report. Neyther did he make slender accompt of the *Georgians*, the most antique tributaries and confederates of the *Persians*, by whose onely assaultes his Army could not but suffer many inconueniences and sundry trauelles: for so much as if they should assaile his battells behind or on both sides, & the *Persians* should set vpon his forefront, though they were many in number and fenced with artillery, yet being ill planted, and in such difficulty as they could not vse their Artillery, it would be a very easy matter to defeat them. And therefore he did firmly resolute with himselfe to send one onely Army, and with vnited forces to seeke the overthrow of his enemy. And thus preferring his strong hope to conquer the country of *Siruan* in *Georgia*, and the chiefe Citties of *Media* the Great, before the

difficulty

The 1. Booke.

difficultie of making warre vpon the coast of *Siras*, reposing great confidence in the notable helpe that was promised him by the *Cumani* in *Tartaria* called *Precopenes*, he confirmed his counsellors the *Bassas* in the same opinion: and withall discovered a matter, which to all of them but especially to *Sinan* seemed most strange, namely that he was determined not to go in person with his Army about this enterpryse, but was minded to send one of his worthiest Captaines in his stead. The respectes that held *Amurat* from going himselfe with the Armye, were many: but principally the falling sicknesse, where-with hee was troubled: the zeale hee did beare to the kingdome, fearing greatly (and that not without good cause) least his sonne being in fauour with the people might peradventure vntimely be aduanced before him: and the danger that he suspected at the handes of the Christian Potentates.

While they were thus in parlee about this expedition, and *Sinan*, *Mustassa*, and some other *Vissers* made meanes to bee sent as Vicegerentes and soueraigne ministers of their Lordes designement, he dispatched away sondry postes and light-horsemen with order to the *Bassas*, *Gouernours*, of *Van*, of *Babilan*, of *Erzurum*, in the borders of *Cappadocia* & *Armenia* the greater, that they should by often inroades spoyle the townes and castelles of the *Cheselbas*, and euery way doo them what harme they could, Which was presently put in execution by them all, and specially by the aboue named *Vstref Bassa* of *Van*, who besides the burning of diuerse townes, brought many a soule into slavery, and in the countryes aswell Tributary as subiecte to the *Persians*, made many incursions, and wrought much annoyance.

The 1. Booke.

E 3.

Through

Amurat go-
eth not in
person to this
warre, and
the reasons
why.

Order giuen
by Amurat
to the borde-
rers to annoy
Persia.

Vstref doth
much harme
to the borde-
rers.

Through these and other lyke iniuries, theyr myndes were greatly incensed with anger, and theyr wrathfull hartes filled with a most ardent desyre of reuenge: and whiles with shame enough they romed vp and downe dayly, sharpening their hatred as it were agaynst a whetstone, in the yeare 1577. the abouenamed *Mustassa* was elected Generall of the Turkish Campe, prouision was made ready for him, and authority giuen him to prepare whatsoeuer was needefull. So messages were sent, and commandement giuen, ouer all the countreyes heereafter named, that all the *Bassaes*, *Sangiacchi*, *Agas*, *Spahis*, *Gianissaries*, and souldiers of all sortes, that were bound by their perpetuall annuities to go to warre, should take their iourney in the beginning of the spring to the City of *Erzurum*, (which if it be any of the old citties, it is very likely to be *Simbra* mentioned by *Ptolomee*) there to bee ready for the charge that should be enioyned them by their new Generall: who hauing his dispatch from *Constantinople*, & passing to *Chalcedon* (which *Herodotus* in respect of the founders errour calleth *Blynde* and now is named *Scutari*,) through the countreyes of *Amasia* and of *Siuas*, (the one being the natiue soyle of *Strabo*, and the other in old tyme called *Sebastopolis*), hee arriued in *Erzurum* in the very beginning of Sommer, and there stayed till such tyme as all his people, corne, artillery and other necessarye prouision were gathered together, and at last departed for *Siruan*, hauing first taken an vniuersall and diligent surueigh of all his Army: whereby distinguishing the sound & strong from the sicke & feeble, the armed from the vnarmed, & the couragious from the cowards, weighing in equall ballance his owne forces, hee might assuredly know what to looke for at their handes. Then

The I. booke.

he

he deuided his troups: and first in order were mustred the people of *Mesopotamia*, to the number of xij. thousand, (their Captayne being well checked by the Generall for bringing so few this yeare) all of them for the most parte Archers, not of any great courage, and accustomed to the vse of the *Scimitarre*. The second were the *Assyrians* and *Babylonians*, watered with *Euphrates* & *Tigris*, coming from the very confines of *Balsara*, (in old tyme called *Teredon*,) in number no more then xiiij. thousand horsemen, yet all armed with sword and darte, after the manner of their neighbours the *Mesopotamians*. The third in order were the *Sorians*, a people more riche in apparell then stout in armour, & rather alluring their enemies with the goodly shew of their spoiles then terrible to them, being ij. thousand in number, all of them being very cunning to vault and turne themselves round about in fighting. Then were mustred the men of *Siuas*, of *Amasia*, of *Maras*, of *Bursia*, of *Angori*, and other places comprehended vnder the name of *Natolia*, (where in tymes past were the *Magnesiens*, the *Bithynians*, the *Phrygians*, those of *Pontus* & *Eydus*,) to the number of x. thousand, hardy people and well armed, but for the most part archers on horsebacke. There came next after them those of *Iury*, and *Palestina*, vpon swift coursers, continuall darters & archers, more ready for flight and spoyle, then for fight and foyle, poore in apparel and vertue, to the number of one thousand. The *Cilicians* succeeded them, now inhabiting *Caramania*, to the number of iij. thousand, armed with *Scimitarre*, battell axe, and bow, a harde and rough nation, giuen to spoyle and robbery. Then followed the glory and hope of all the Campe, the people of *Grecia*, souldiers full of franke courage, armed with arcubush and

The I. Booke.

E 4.

sword

The Mesopotamians.

The Assyrians and Babylonians.

The Sorians.

The Natolians.

The Iewes & Philistines.

The Caramanians.

The Grecians.

Mustassa elected Generall of the Turkish Campe against the Persians. A. 1577.

Mustassa at Chalcedon.

Mustassa at Erzurum.

The muster of the army in Erzurum.

The Con-
stantinopole-
lites.

The men of
Erzurum.

Voluntary
men little in-
ferior to the
number
of stipendar-
ies but bet-
ter armed.

Places that
sent no soul-
diers this
yeare to the
warres of
Persia.

500. peeces
of small artil-
lary with
Mustaffa

sworde, mounted vpon good and valiant horses to the number of 10000. And after them the familiar & faithfull garde of the Generall, iij. thousand *Gianissaries* of *Constantinople* with arcubush on the shoulder and sword by the syde. Vnder the standard of *Beyran Bassa*, were likewise mustred the people of the Citty and iurisdiction of *Erzurum* leuied out of those places, where in tymes past the *Cappadoces* bordering vpon the *Armenians* did inhabite, to the number of iijj. thousand: souldiers accustomed to braules and batelles, and first in the field to meete their enemies, armed with sword and arcubush, dartes or *Indian Canes*, and yet all of them on horsebacke. Eucry troupe had their seuerall Captaynes, who notwithstanding were changed at the Generalles pleasure: whose names seruing to no purpose we will quite leaue out, the rather to auoyde the tediousnes of the reader, being not acquaynted with barbarous tearmes.

These were then the squadrons of such souldiers as were stipendiaries to the Turkish king, to the number of whom those which went as voluntarie aduenturers were little inferior, yet better armed peraduenture and more hardy to fight: so that there were found in this surueigh about a hundred and ten thousand horsemen. Neither was there any stirred out of *Arabia Felix*, out of *AEgypt*, out of *Hungarie*, out of *Africa*, or out of other places remote, or situate vpon the sea coastes: as also those Provinces, that had sent the squadrons afore mentioned, were not least destitute of their ordinary guards and garnisons, no nor without a great multitude of idle persons: yea & *Damasco*, which in old tyme carried the name and pryce for matters of warre, kept backe their band of *Gianissaries* being Arcubusiers, to take their ease at home vnder the

standerds

standerds of their owne captaynes. *Mustaffa* brought with him five hundred peeces of small shotte, as well for safety of his army, as also for security in defending such fortresses and castelles, as he should be enforced to erect in the new-conquered countries. He had also of the king many loades of money for his souldiers pay: with further order and direction to vse the chamber of *Aleppo* and of other Citties, if he should stand in neede. He caused likewise to be brought from the prouinces aforenamed, by imposition of Tenthes for graine, and taskes for cariage of camells (which they call *Nosul* and *Anaris*) an exceeding great quantity of corne: which he made to be transported in Gallies by the great sea (in tymes past called *Pontus Euxinus*) to the haven of *Trapezuntia*, or *Trabizonda*, vnder the generall conduct of *Aly Vcciali*, that for the ease of the army it might so be conueighed from *Trabizonda* to *Erzurum*, being but onely foure dayes iourney, distant from thence. He had also gathered together a great number of *Pioners* and *Myners*: and to be short hauing taken order for all thinges that he thought might be necessary for the warre, he departed in comely manner & seemely array from *Erzurum*, and in the end of eight dayes arrived at the ruines of *Char*, where among good pasture and abundance of corne, fruite, and water he stilled him selfe. And being surprised with an excessive raine, which falling in great quantity made newe pooles and brookes, and being mixed with stormes, and tempestuous winds sent his tents aunder, & wrought great harme both to men & cattell, he was compelled to stay in that place three whole dayes together, not without some inconuenience, by means whereof many fell sick & were constrained to abandon the army. From *Char* he departed.

The I. Booke.

F

500. peeces
of small Ar-
tillary with
Mustaffa.

Many loades
of money.

Taxes and
Tenthes for
corne and cari-
age.

Trabizonda
but 4. small
daies iourney
distant from
Erzurum.

Mustaffa de-
parteth from
Erzurum to
the ruines of
Chars.

An excessive
raine.
which wrought
great harme
both to men
& cattell.

Some fell
sick.

30000. 1. 1000

Mustaffa de-
parteth from
Chars.
The moun-
taines of
Chielder.

ted with al his people that were not hindred with sicknes,
and tooke vp his lodging that eueninge vnder certayne
mountanes (now called *Chielder*) being in myne opinion
the hilles of *Periardo*, and because he was aduertised, that
the Persians were in the field to make battell with him,
being now passed beyond their own borders, which were
so set out by *Suliman* in the peace concluded with *Tamas*,
(as before we haue said,) & doubting least peraduenture
they might encounter him, where he little look'd for
them: he thought it best for the more security of his
hoast to pitch his Tentes in such a place, as he might well
discouer them, and yet not be assaulted at vnawares. And
therefore he planned himselfe in the plaine, and gaue or-
der, that *Beyran* the *Bassa* of *Erazrum* should take posses-
sion of a certaine hill that was on the right hand, & *Drenis*
the *Bassa* of *Caracemir* should keepe another hill that stood
on the left hand, and with them *Osman* *Bassa*, *Mahamet*
Bassa, *Zouafunde* *Bassa* being aduenturers, with many o-
thers as well of the kinges stipendiaries as voluntary men,
should likewise pitch their Tentes vpon the same hilles,
in such sorte as they making as it were two Cornettes or
wings to the campe, might discouer the comming of e-
uery man, and he himselfe being shadowed with the two
hilles might be perceaued of no man.

But whiles all these things with such military prepa-
rations were made ready by *Amurat*: the new king of
Persia, who was yet scarce settled in his kingdome, being
stirred vp by the same of these motions, resolved with
himselfe to send men against the Turkes for defence of
his state, and was content for the tyme to dissemble his
concealed and concealed hatred, which he bare to some
of the Captaines of *Persia* and of *Georgia*, & to make some
The 1. Booke.

apparant shew that he was reconciled with them, for that
without them he could not promise himselfe any forme
of an army or defence: and for all the hurley-burley,
wherewith his kingdome was troubled, & for all the disor-
ders whereintoo both the *Sultans* & people were fallen,
yet he wrought so thoroughly, that all the Captaines of ac-
count tooke vpon them the protection of his honour &
kingdome. And so *Tocomac* a *Sultan*, the *Chan* and gouer-
nour of *Reluan*, being elected generall of this expedition,
a souldier very famous and well known to the Turkes
for the many embassades, wherein he serued often tymes
to *Selim* and *Amurat*, and in *Persia* deemed to be a man of
singular vertue, he gaue him in charge, that gathering to-
gether the greatest number of men he could out of *Atro-*
patia, out of *Media* the greater, and other places neere to
the Turkes, he should seeke all the meanes he was able to
stop their passage into *Georgia* & *Media* & *Atropatia*. And
thereupon Edictes and preceptes were sent out to all the
citties of the kingdome, and principally to *Amadan*, to
Genge, to *Tainis*, to *Nassian*, to *Marant*, to *Ardeuil*, to
Soffian, to *Carachach*, to *Turcomania*, to *Gianat*, & to many
other places on this syde and beyond *Casbin*, that all the
Chans, *Sultans*, and souldiers whatsoever, should come
ready prest to follow the commandementes of their new
Generall. Many there came that were obedient to the
kinges proclamation, but many there were that would
not stirre a foote, for their obstinacy in the broiles begun,
and for the suspicion which they had of vnlooked-for mis-
chieues: wherefore the king remayned greatly discori-
rented, and much greeued at this first disobedience of his
subiectes, and cleefely perceaued how much better it had
beene for him to haue liued in peace and amity with all
The 1. Booke.

Tocomac ge-
nerall of
the Persi-
ans.

Order giuen
by king Ma-
hamet to To-
comac.

Commende-
ment giuen
ouer all Persi-
a, to gather
men against
the Turke.
The places
whence the
souldiers
were gathe-
red.

The disobe-
dience of
many.

murat: howbeit to make the best of the matter he was inforced to take this defence vpon him, as also for the satisfaction of the subiectes of *Georgia*, (which desired the same with earnest request by certain embassadors sent particularly from *Daur-chan* for that purpose) to salue his owne honour and the succession of *Emir Hamze* his eldest sonne. And therefore with those fewe, which for the loue of iustice were met together in those partes, being not aboue twenty thousande, *Tocomac* was dispatched about his busines, hoping that the enemies army (wherein he heard say the king in person was not) might be such, as with these his small forces it was not impossible for him to oppresse them in some narrow straites, where the multitude commonly useth rather to be in confusion & perplexity, then ready and able to helpe one another. These xx. thousand were all horsemen, armed with Scimitarre and bow, with some Arcubutes among, and (which is wont to stand this nation in great stead) they were furnished with very fyne and well tempered Armour, but specially couragious they were and resolute, and made more hardy by the vertue and valour of their Captayne. And therefore with all their provision necessary for victuall and sight, keeping the way of *Tauris* and *Genge*, they came to the turning of *Chars*, where they were aduertised that their enemies army was passed. They were now arrived within a daies journey neere to *Childer*, where they were resolved to send quicke and faithfull spies that might bring them certayne newes of the enemies condition, and number of the Turkish soldiers: who came thether euen at the very tyme that the Turkes were encamping themselves betweene the two hills, whereupon the two Bassas *Beyran* and *Drenis* with their

their people had already pitched their Tentes. The Persian spyes discotiered the Turkish hoast aloft, and perswaded themselves that there were not any other battell then those which they saw vpon the two high hills: whereof with all the speede they could they returned news to *Tocomac*, who at ease had followed these his spies a farr off. When *Tocomac* vnderstoode theyr information, agreeing with his former conceit, which he brought from *Casbin* of the number of his enemies: peraduenture also perswading himselfe, that if a greater army were to come out of the borders, the same might now bee at *Chars*, and these onely troupes sent before to discover the cuntry: he became very bould & foole-hardy through too much delyre of glorie, and determined with himselfe to go and assault them: and hauing discovered his enemies tentes, he was thoroughly confirmed in his former opinion, and the spyes relation, and with so much the more confidence went forward to assaile them. But *Beyran* and *Drenis*, who quickly from the hill had perceaued the Persians comming in the plaine against them, although they knew them to be full of courage, yet reposing great confidence in their fellow battell, (which did not shew it selfe,) with all speed mounted vpon their horses, and ranne to meet them: and in the foresaid plaines vnder *Childer* within one houre after noone, they ioined a most bloudy battell: wherein there were slayne at last fiftie Turkish *Sangians*, with a very great number of souldiers, both Riperidaries & voluntary, without any apparent losse at all among the Persians, who closing themselves together, in great heat and all bee-bloudied in the battell, did prosecute their happy and fortunate victory. But General *Mustaffa*, who perceyued all that had

The errour of the Persian spyes.

Tocomac falleth into the same errour that the spyes did.

Tocomac commeth boldly to assaile his enemies.

The Persians obtaine a happy and fortunate victory.

passed, and stayed waiting till the fight was at hottest and the medley at the thickest, that so the flight of his enemies might breed the greater disorder: & seeing at length that his people could no longer endure the fury of their enemies rage, (even as though it had lightened and thondred, and as though the earth had beene shaken,) with such cries and exclamations, as the Turkes vse in their assaults for the more terror of the enemy, exciting his army, he ran as it were headlong vpon his aduersaries, and with greater cruelty renewed the terrible battell. The Persians did courageously sustaine this vnexpected & fearefull assault, and seeing the night now very neere approaching, rather then they would suffer the disgrace of a shamesfull and ignominious discomfiture, with vnexplicable signes of valour, in that little tyme of day-light that was leaft them, they continued their manifold slaughters, vntill at last being fauoured with the darkenes of the night, they resolved to withdraw themselves with as little losse as possibly they might. *Mustassa* neither could nor durst any longer pursue them, but was constrained by night to returne to his pauiglios. The Persians for their partes did with all diligence dispatch men in post, to the King being at *Casbin*, aduertysing him as well of the successe of the battell, as also of the greatnes of the Turkish army, and likewise what they were determined to do that they might annoy it: By the Turkes also there were presented to *Mustassa* (who had already sent away Postes to *Amurat*,) fife thousand heades, which by their colour, countenaunce, and beardes bewrayed themselves to bee Persians, and 3000. Persians alieue. *Mustassa* did greatly reioyce at the victory, and to make it seeme the greater, (seeking by all meanes to conceale his owne losse, and mynding

The I. Booke.

Mustassa is moued against the Persian conquerors, and succoureth his owne people.

The Persians endure the assault.

The Persians retire through the benefite of the night.

Mustassa returneth to his tentes.

The Persians newes to *Casbin*.

Mustassa sendeth postes with newes of the battell to *Amurat*. 3000. heades, and 3000. Persians alieue presented to generall *Mustassa*.

to make the issue more dreadfull, that so he might rayse a greater terror by the same that should thereof arriue to the enemy,) he caused the heads of those three thousand that were brought before him alieue, to bee presently cut from their shoulders, and vsing a most straunge Arte to breede terror in the Persian, he gaue order, that of those heades there should be framed a bulwarke in those fields, for a most horrible and vncouth spectacle.

The same day, that *Mustassa* the Turkish Capitayne employed himselfe about this barbarous & cruell worke, there came vnto him certaine messengers frō *Manucchiar* the yonger son of the Georgian widdow, called *Dedesmit*, who being brought into his pauigliō, told him, that with his good fauour and licence *Manucchiar* their Lord and maister came to salute him, & to offer himselfe vnto him as his obedient and deuoted seruant. At which newes *Mustassa* redoubbling his ioy, gaue commandement, that all the *Bassas* & Capitaines of the host, with all solemne pompe, with trumpettes, drommes, peales of Artillery, and with all other signes of magnificall and ioyfull entertainment should go forth to meet the said *Manucchiar*, and to accompany him to his presence: which they did accordingly, and encountering him with all signes of honour, conducted him with an infinite traine to the great pauiglion of *Mustassa*, who also caused him to bee saluted againe with an other peale of ordinance and Arquebuse-shot, and with a second reply of trumpets and drummes. *Manucchiar* dismounted from his horse, and (although against his will) he beheld the strange and vncouth pile of heades all pale and filthy to looke on, and indeed imagined what the matter meant, all which *Mustassa* himselfe discoursed at large vnto him from poynt to poynt: notwithstanding

The arte of *Mustassa* his cruelty.

A bulwarke made of heades.

Embassadors from *Manucchiar* the Georgian.

Manucchiar honorably receaued by *Mustassa*.

The speech
of Manu-
chiar.

withstanding before all other thinges, hauing done his
due reuerence to the said *Mustaffa*, and according to his
degrec placed himselfe next to his syde, after he had pre-
sented him with such giftes as his countrey yeelded, hee
gaue him to vnderstand, That for the honour and estima-
tion which he bare to the Turkish valour, he was alwaies
devoted to the house of the *Ottomans*: and as he had of-
tentymes desyred to spend his goodes and lyfe in their
seruice, so at this present being moued by his auncient de-
syre, allured by the strange fame of this victorious and
wonderfull army, and stirred vp by a particular fantasy to
learne the paynefull and harde preceptes of *Arte Mili-
tary* vnder such a Captayne, being a maister of other cap-
taynes, hee offered him all deuotion and seruice, more
then euer he had done heretofore: and himselfe, hauing
nothing in the world more deere vnto him, consecrated
his owne lyfe to his commandementes, desyring that the
fame might be employed in the conflicts of warre, vnder
his banners, among warriors and souldiers of fame and re-
nowne, & therefore he besought him, that hee would ac-
cept of him in the name of *Amurat*, whose obedient vassal
he vowed himselfe to remaine for euer. *Mustaffa* did grati-
ously receaue all this discourse of *Manuchiar*, and hauing
shewed him againe the pyle of heades, together with his
battles, armour and prouision of war, told him, That as
all these forces are the gift of god, who alwaies fauou-
red the righteous counsellors of the *Ottoman* kinges (an
impudens speech too bold & vnbridled) in such sort, that
they lord it ouer all the world, euen to the astonishment
of all that liue in the world at this day: so had he for his
parte chosen the better parte in comming now to yeelde
himselfe & to submit his obedience to his king, although

The 1. Booke.

The aun-
swere of
Mustaffa.

it had bene good if he had doone it before. And as con-
cerning the desyre which hee had to bee his compani-
on & fellow in these warlike affayres, he did very friend-
ly accept of his comming, & promised him all good enter-
tainment and assured safety. And so in exchange of the
presentes which he brought him, hee apparelled him in
cloth of gold, honored him with a battell-axe and target,
wrought with gold & amell: & neuer permitted him
to go from his pavilion without a traine of his slaues.

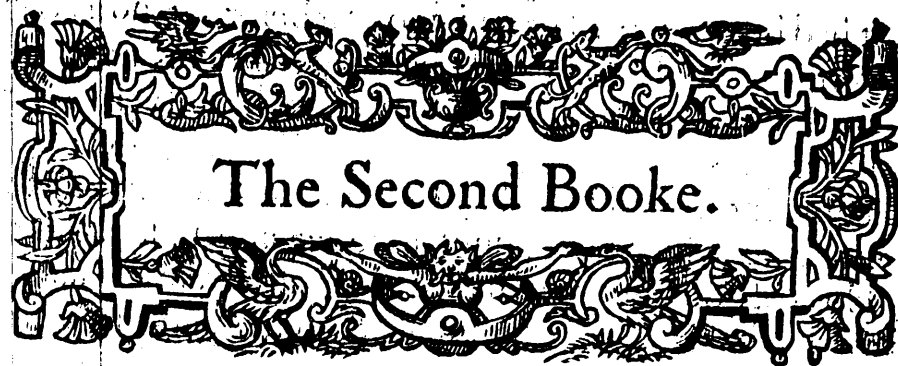
But to the end that from thinges vnknownen, and
principles not vnderstood, the course of my history pro-
ceed no further, for that in certaine strange and important
successes, the readers will be desirous to know the seuerall
nations, situations, Citties, riuers, mountaines, counties,
Dukedomes, kingdomes and prouinces: it shall not be a-
miss in a distinct booke by it selfe to declare, what these
enemies are, against whome the Turkes make warre, and
to describe what and how great forces they haue, what
kingdome they possesse, what prouinces are subiect vnto
the, their worship or religion, their kind of government,
their wepons, their manner of fight, their forme of bat-
tell, their reuenues, their expenses, and to be short what
soeuer els shall bee necessarie to bee knowen, and

so with greater perspicuity to proceed in the
continuation of our interrupted
history.

The end of the first booke.

G

The



The Second Booke.

The Argument.

The birth of *Mahomet* and his proceedings.
 The Testament and Death of *Mahomet*.
 The Originall of the Persian and Turkish Sectes.
 The errors of *Souffis* and others, touching the Originall of the Name of
Souffis or *Souffis*.
 The encrease of the Persian kingdome.
 The Geographieall description of the kingdome of the Persians, first vni-
 uersally and then particularly.
 The Geographieall description of *Georgia*.
 The Historiography of them both.
 The Orders of Dignities or Offices in the Persian Religion.
 The Orders of Dignities or Offices in the Persian gouernement.
 The Persian Souldiers.
 The Armes and weapons of the Persian Souldiers.
 Their hostes, and the manner of Ordering their Armies.
 The Surueigh of the Persian Armies.
 The reuerences of that kingdome.
 The Expenses of the same.
 The causes of the declination of that Empyre.
 Certaine aduertisements of the Author to the Readers.

THE SECOND BOOKE.



Mahomet, or (as some call him) *Ma-
 homet* was borne in the yeare of our
 saluation 593. or (as others write)
 567. of *Abdalla*, the son of *Abdel Mu-
 talep*, who had also an other son cal-
 led *Abutalep*, father to *Aly*, all of
 them among the *Arabians* of a very
 base and poore estate: which *Maha-*

Cadige the
 wife of *Maha-
 met*.

met by good hap. being married to *Cadige*, (or as some
 terme her) *Hadige*, a woman of noble parentage and no-
 table wealth, & by her hauing had a daughter, called *Fat-
 time*, who afterward was the wyfe of the aforesayd *Aly*,
 departed into *Egypt*, with rich wares and important mer-
 chandises, wherewithall his wife had furnished him. And
 being ambitious to know many thinges, and to fit his hu-
 mour, which he perceaued in himselfe to bee given to
 matters of fame and of glorious report, hee entred into
 strict familiarity with one *Sergio*, a fugitiue of Christen-
 dome, of whome learning many particulars of the holy
 testament, he digested them in his mind, & was in good
 hope by meanes of the great authority, that he had alrea-
 dy purchased at home with his fortunate mariage, to
 cause the simple people there to belieue him of his owne
 credite, and thereupon perswaded himselfe, or rather was
 confirmed in the wicked opinion which he had concea-
 ued, that he might vsurpe the name of a Prophet or Di-
 uine. And so being assisted by dyuerse lewd and vngod-
 ly persons, he began to giue out the report that he was a
 worker of miracles and a fauourite of God himselfe, and
The II. booke.

Sergio a fugi-
 tiue of Chris-
 tendome.

The fittlenes
of Mahamet
to cause him-
selfe to beheld
a Saint.

Certaine In-
iunctions ge-
uen by Maha-
met, as it
were for a
law.

A prayer in-
uented by
Mahamet,
common
both to the
Persians and
to the Turkes,
and to all
those that
professe Ma-
hamet.

besides the counterfeting of a cloude, which (as *Sergio* & other fautors of his shamelesse lyes most falsly feyned) did continually couer him, he made a shew to the world of dissembled abstinence, hypocriticall solitarines, & ambitious contempt of wordly riches, inuenting also certaine superstitious prayers, and false visitations of an Angell, and to be short a number of other lying and enormous miracles. By meanes of all which thinges having gotten the credite to be a deuout person, a Saynt, a Prophete, (being assisted by the temporall authority which he had obteyned with his riches and his wiues kinred) he made that fickle & miserable nation subiect to his wicked law: and among other filthy and vnrighteous orders, which are scattered in the *Alcoran*, and other bookes of treacherous inuention, this was most singular, which he imposed vnto them touching the manner of praying, couering all his wickednes with an honorable kynd of prayer, made to that one God, whom this people being but lately reuolted to these idoles and monstrous lyes did little vnderstand. This prayer he appointed should bee thus. *In the name of the religious & mercifull God. Praised be the soueraign Lord of the worlds, the pittifull, the mercifull, the Lord of the day of iudgement. Thee we serue: from thee we looke for helpe: shew vnto vs the right way, that which thou hast shewed to the prophets, not that, for which thou art angry with the wicked, Amen.* And commanded that it should be said fuytymes a day, namely, in the morning, at noone, at Euening, at night, and at two of the clocke after midnight: & that in saying thereof this order following should be precisely obserued. The *Fachi*, that is to say, he that hath the charge of the ceremonies, being somewhat before all the rest, when they are assembled together, prescribeth vnto

The II. booke.

them all, the manner and pronuniation of the praier, not only by falling downe flat vpon the ground with his face and raysing himselfe vp againe, but also by singing and crying out himselfe, causing all the rest euen as it were in the same moment to doo the like. *Mahamet* was the man, that wheresoeuer he was himselfe, performed the office of *Kachi*: & all those that in other places did order the praier, did represent *Mahamet*, though indeed they were farre inferiour vnto him. For he was the cheefe man not onely in the Church (which they call *Moschea*,) but also in the Court of iudgement: so that he had both temporall & spirituall authority, (as we may say,) if so be it be lawfull to such impure and filthie Institutions to apply the religious and holy tearmes which are proper to our most pure & sacred profession. The others were cheefe in the *Moschea*, but yet were subiect and obedient to their Gouvernor and king: so that at this day besides the king, the *Bassa*, and the *Sangraces*, which are the Temporall Magistrates in the court, there are the *Musty*, the *Fachi*, & Aith like, which are the principall ministers in the *Moschea*, and in the law.

Mahamet
was priest &
Prince.

By meanes of these leaud Institutions, the filthy and leacherous wretch, having obtained the name of a Wise man and a Prophet, perswaded his wife *Cadige*, by whome he had gotten all his state and wealth, that by the commaundement of God, it was necessary for him to marry with eight other women, meaning vnder the colour of a diuine Oracle to satisfy his beastly lustes. His credulous wife gratinted vnto him that which hee required at her handes, and so in profane & vniuersalles hee satisfied his vn-
cleane desires with eight other wiues or Concubines: among whom of greatest accompt were *Assie* the daugh-

Mahamet is
married to 8.
other concu-
bines.

The II. Booke.

G 3

ter

tor of *Abubacher*, of the daughter of *Omar*, and *Fara*, the daughter of *Ottoman*, by whose means he assured his temporall authority over the people, and soundly rooted his new inuentions in their minds. But (as it is the property of all flesh) at the last he was brought to his end in the sixty & thirde yeare, or (as some say) in the sixtieth yeare of his age, hauing reigned about thirty, or (as others write,) about five and twenty yeares: and whiles he was sicke, to the end that his treacherous orders should not cease, but specially that his new deuised manner of prayer should not be lost, he appointed *Abubacher* his second father in law, for him and in his stead to keepe the first and chiefe place in the *Mosque at Mecca*. With great silence, although with as great maruell, was this determination of *Mahamet* letared: but particularly as great griefe had *Aly* and his kinde folkes to heare these newes, supposing that the succession should rather haue belonged to *Aly*, being both Nephew & Sonne in Law to *Mahamet*. Yet did *Abubacher* exercise the dignity appointed vnto him, without any strife or contention for the same, vntill the death of *Mahamet*: and then *Aly* with his kinred, no longer fearing the false Prophet deceased, openly made challenge thereunto. At whose first demand it seemed that *Abubacher* was somewhat willing to haue yeelded, making a shew that he would do it to gratify such persons, as sued for *Aly* (being a man more worthy, for his neerenesse in blood, for his agility in body, & for his valour in Armes) rather then for that hee was resolved to surrenderto another the honor, that *Mahamet* had graunted to him. But afterwarde hauing secretly vnderstood the mindes of some that were more mighty then his aduersaries, who counselled him in any case not to spoyle himselfe of the

The 11. Booke

honor which he had obtayned, he began openly to resist *Aly*, and to vse not onely reasons, but force also against him: so that he established himself in the said Succession. Which *Aly*, for that he would not disturb the new deuised sect, did brooke better then it was thought hee could, although at last in recompence of this his tolleration, being forsaken of all his freendes and fatours, hee and his wife *Fattime* were also spoyled of all the substance that was left vnto them by his Vncle: *Abubacher* vouching for a reason of this his cruelty, That the inheritance of riches belongeth vnto him, to whome the Charge of the Law and of Wisdome belongeth: and That he being adiudged lawfull heire of the Wisdome, ought also to inherite the riches. Leauing it (as it were) for an Ordinaunce to the people, That a Prophet cannot separate his substance from his dignities and knowledge: but whosoever is left heire of a mans wisdome, is also to be taken for the heire of a mans wealth. Wherevpon diuers wise men of that age tooke occasion to write bookes, and therein disputed, whether a Prophet might haue authority to make one and the selfe same person, the heire of his learning and of his riches. Howbeit this *Aly* liued so long, that he saw the death of his predecessors *Abubacher*, *Omar*, and *Ottoman*, and after their decease he himselfe also succeeded in the Dignity, which till then they had vsurped vpon him. For consideration whereof he was compelled to make battell with *Maul* Lord of *Damasco*, ouer whome with great glory he payned the victory, and so euer after to his immortal praise and commendation hee exercised that Office. At the last he died also, (leauing behind him the report of a magnanimous, valiant and iust Prince,) and was buried with two of his Sonnes *Hassan* and *Ossain*, in *Cafe*, a place within two dayes Iourney neere vnto *Babylon*.

The 11. Booke.

Aly driuen out by *Abubacher*, and spoiled of all his substance.

Bookes written by those first wise men.

Aly succeedeth in the dignity of *Mahamet*.

Aly dyeth: leaueth behind him a good report.

Two sonnes of *Aly* buried in *Cafe*.

mong whose Successors was alwayes thoroughly obserued, whatlocuer *Mahamet* had commaunded to be obserued for a Law.

And although the East was diuided into diuers and sondry States and Gouvernementes of many persons, yet notwithstanding the superstition of *Mahamet*, was with all conformity maintained by them all, neither was there heard either of any schisme, or insurrection, or waighty dissention among that people; but for all the inequalities of those countries and dominions this opinion continued equal and ynniforme. At what time, euen on a sudden & beyond all expectation, there arose a superstition in the mindes of certaine *Mahometanes*, which in few yeares being sown and scattred ouer all *Asia*, did breed a great contention and warre among those nations, that, beeing before vnited together by *Mahometes* deuise, seemed to be more then frendes and in league one with an other. Of this nouelty one *Senchum*, or (more distinctly to expresse his name) one *Siec Guinet* was the author, who vnder the name of *Sofi* and of *Siec*, (that is to say, of a wiseman & an author of Religion,) or rather, vnder the pretence of holynesse began to perswade the people, being by nature inconstant & superstitious, That those three first Successors of *Mahamet*, were vniust and ynnlawfull vsurpers of the dignitie, That modest & iust *Aly* onely ought to be named the lawfull Successor, That he alone ought to be called vpon in their prayers for helpe and that by all possible meanes all honors should be yeilded and rendred to him, and taken from those three first, as from persons that were vndoubtedly damned and altogether reprobate. With many argumentes did *Guinet* approoue his Inuention, & at last perswaded many therevnto that beganne very readily

The author of
the Persian
Superstition.

The 11. Booke.

dily to follow him as the head and founder of so new a verity: Whereupon by the appointment of this new master they did all with one conformitie vse this forme of Prayer, *Cursed be Abubacher, Omar, and Ottoman, and God be fauorable to Aly, and well pleased with him.* From the time of this inuention forwardes, the Sepulcher of *Aly* and hys sonnes in *Cafe* grew in great credite, and the followers of this new superstition began euery yeare to visite it, in all respectes euen after the same sort, that the *Turkes* do visite the Sepulchre of the three first Successors: Yea the very kinges of *Persia* themselues vsed to be crowned and girte with their sword in *Cafe* neere vnto *Babylon*, (as it is sayde before,) where euer after, their great *Calife* was woont to keepe his residence, as being the mā that represented *Aly*, and occupied the chiefe roome of their filthy and damnable Priesthood.

The new prayer of the Persians.

The sepulchre of Aly held in great reuerence.

Vppon this occasion it is not amisse to aduertise the Reader, how false that rumor hath bene and is, whereby it is noysed abroad, that the kinges of *Persia* perfourmed these ceremonies in *Babylon*. The cause of which falshood was, for that *Cafe* lying neere vnto *Babilon*, and being a very little place, as resembling rather a village then a towne, or a Citty, the people reported that all these things were doone in *Babilon* that famous Citty: no otherwise then as *Strabo* writeth to haue happened about the ouerthrow that *Darius* had when he lost the Empyre. Which ouerthrow although it was at a little village called *Gangamela*, (that is to say, the Cammelles house) yet the wryters and people do say, that it was at *Arbella*, a notable Citty neere to the said place called *Gangamela*. Whereupon it is not much from the purpose to note also, how greatly they are deceaued, that thinke *Arbella* to be that which is now called

The 11. Booke.

H

led

led *Tauris*, whereas *Strabo* doth playnely say that *Arbella* lyeth in the Countrey of *Babilon* which is *Assyria*, and it is very manifest, that *Tauris* is in the Countrey of *Media*. By this brieve narration it appeereth that *Paulus Giouius* hath erred, where he writeth that the superstition of the *Persians* did begin in *Persia* at the very same tyme, that the heresy of *Luther* was sownen in *Germany*: and where he maketh one *Arduelle*, who was also called *Aidere*, to be the author of the Persian Faction: whereas he is notably deceaued both in respect of the tyme, and also of the person: of the tyme, for that it sprang vp before the publication of *Luthers* religion: and of the person lykewise, for that *Arduelle* was not the first inuentor thereof, (as hee saith) but *Giunet Siec*, called also the *Sofi*, as shalbe declared a little after. The *Turkes* in the meane tyme, by reason of this new deuysed nouelty, thinking themselues to be of a sound and sincere opinion, did alwayes call themselues *Sunni*, (that is to say, men of a good faith) and on the other syde they called the *Persians* *Rasadi*, that is to say, men of a false faith and going-astray, onely because they forooke those first successors of *Mahamet*, *Abubacher*, *Omar* & *Ottoman*, whom they belieue to bee the lawfull heyres of that cheefe dignity. And in this sort began the Persian superstition, and not (as some thinke) from the dyuers interpretations of the *Alcoran*, much lesse from the execution of the law of *Aly*. For as touching the *Alcoran*, they doo all expound it after one and the selfe same manner: and as for *Aly*, hee neuer framed any lawe, but onely confirmed that which he found already ordayned by *Mahamet* their onely law-maker. Besydes that the *Turkes* doo reuerence *Aly* together with the other three *Abubacher*, *Omar* & *Ottoman*, as him that was also a successor

The errour of
P. Giouius,

The errour of
many.

The II. Booke.

cessor

cessor to *Mahamet*: But the *Persians*, although indeed they worship *Aly*, yet for all that they doo not onely not reuerence the other three, but curse them & hate them as impious and damned persons.

Afterwardes the *Persians* were called *Chefelbas*, of a certaine red marke which they carried on their heades, by an ordinance that was instituted for the same by *Arduelle*, who was esteemed a very holy man. Which name was confirmed afterwardes in the succession of *Ismahel*, who renewed the name of *Sofi*, being first vsurped by *Giunet*, for his inuention of the superstition that was spread abroad by him: and so continuing the said name of *Sofi* euen vntill our age, among the people of *Asia*, who by the forces of *Alexander* were in old tyme subdued with a number of other nations, that were famous in those dayes (if *Quintus Curtius* may be beleueed) for the value of their iewelless, for the beauty of their bodies, and for the excellency of their dogges. Of this name *Sofi*, and *Sofiti* many particularities we could rehearse, if we were not afraide to depart from our matter now in hand; and therefore differring them till some other occasions, it shal be sufficient to repeat, & with diligence to note, that the first man which merited this name was *Giunet*, who, because hee found out this notable sect, obtayned the name not onely of *Siec*, but also of *Sofi*, although in deed he had not gotten the name of *Saba*, and that because he gaue his mynd rather to matters of learning and studye, then to matters of Armes & gouernment. After whose example there succeeded three other, who were content to be called by the name of *Siec*, but not of *Sofi*, vntill that after the there succeeded *Ismahel*, who contemning the name of *Siec* was called *Saba*, that is to say, *King*, & did in such sort

The Persians
called Chefel-
bas.

The name of
Sofi renewed
in Ismahel.

The auncient
Sofiti subdu-
ed by Alexan-
der the great.

The successi-
on of the Per-
sian Kings.

The II. Booke.

H 2

enlarge

The error
of P. Giouius.

The names of
the Successors
in the king-
dome of Per-
sia.

enlarge the boundes of his kingdome, that, in respect of his greatnes, men will hardly beleue at this day the intollerable oppressions, which those Prouinces in truth haue suffered and endured. And herein is *Paulus Giouius* found to haue erred also where he writeth, that this *Ismael* was the first of all the Persian kinges that merited the name of *Sofi*, which indeed he did rather renewe in his owne person, hauing receaued the same from *Giunet*, the first authour of the damnable superstition, who first tooke that Tytle vpon him.

This Persian superstition was first brought in by *Siec Giunet* the *Sofi*, afterward maintayned by *Siec Sederdin*, and after him by *Siec Giunet* the seconde, then, by *Siec Aider* (called by *Giouius*, *Arduelle*,) and at last so encreased & enlarged by *Ismael* the *Saba* and *Sofi*, that vnder his gouernment *Persia* seemed to enuy the glory of *Cyrus* & *Darius*. After the death of *Ismael* it descended to *Tamas*, who reigned with lesse felicity then his father did, being many a time and often greatly damnified by *Soliman*, and after *Tamas* succeeded *Aidere* the second, who raigned but for certaine dayes and houres, as the Historie setteth it downe: and then followed *Ismael*, who troubled all the Citties of his kingdom with manifold hurley-burlies: & last of all the king that now is, being more vnfortunate and vnhappy then all the rest. And euen as *Giunet*, founder of this sect, being a man that was esteemed to be wise and holy, did renew the name of *Sofiti*, which for many ages past had beene extinguished in *Asia*, and in other his successors *Sederdin*, *Giunet* the second, & *Aidere* *Sisopi*, who were contented onely with the bare name of *Siec*: so was it agayne reuyued in the sprouting glory of *Ismael*, who did so largely dilate the confines of his kingdome, that

that it seemed he had (as it were) founded it anew: and yet afterwarde, it was suppressed againe in his successors *Tamas*, *Aidere*, *Ismael* & *Mahamet*, who leauinge the names of *Sofiti* and *Siec* retayned onely the Tytle of *Saba*. In this sort, began encreased and declined, the kingdome of the Persians, who were followers of the diuision and superstition of the false law of *Mahamet*.

What the occasions were, why in so shorte a space, so famous and redoubted a kingdome began to declyne, it shalbe declared hereafter: for that it is now tyme to proceed in the narration of more important matters, beginning at the Geographical description of the kingdome it selfe: wherein it shall behoue the reader to walke with good circumspection, becaule the confines thereof are set downe neyther so ample and large as they were in the tyme of *Ismael*, nor lesse then they were at such tyme as these warres were moued. For *Ismael* had in such sorte enlarged the limits of his Empire by his new deuised superstition, that hee had not onely stretched them on the East beyond *Aria*, and on the South vpon the red sea in the Golfe of *Persia*, but on the West also he had made the *Georgians* tributaries, subdued the *Armenians*, the *Mesopotamians*, the *Babylonians*, the *Assyrians*, and threatned that he would Lorde it euen to the confines of *Europe*. But this so notable felicity of his continued no long time, becaule both he himselfe was dispossessed by those that were mightier then he was, and after his death, *Tamas* was so straitly shut vp, euen into the innermost places of his kingdome, that it were but a small matter for wryters to describe the compasse and quantity of that which was left. For being depriued of *Bithynia*, of *Mesopotamia*, of *Armenia*, and of *Assyria*, the poore Persians had much

The changes
of the Persian
state.

adoo to retaine the people of *Georgia* and *Atropatia* at their commandement and deuotion: but auoyding the outrages and incursions of the *Turkes*, they were inforced to transport their Regall seat to *Casbin*, & to forsake *Tauris* the auncient Pallace not onely of these princes, but also of all the other kings of those prouinces.

And therefore setting asyde the first felicity, and large compasse of this kingdome, (the memory whereof can serue to no other purpose then to bewayle so great a decay, and to teach vs that we ought not to put too much confidence in wordly riches, nor wax proud in the great authority of rule and gouernement:) measuring the state of this realme, as it was when these warres began, we say, that for the North part, beginning at the very vttermost East of the sea of *Bacch*, and coasting all that Sea, and then entering into *Seruan* and *Georgia* euen vnto *Mengrelli*, and so a little lower vnto *Chars*, lying in the champaine country vnder the mountains of *Periardi* called *Chielder*, where also is erected a Castell called *Childerum* for defence of the borders, you haue the description of all that the Persians possesse on that syde. From thence drawing a lyne by the East, and rolling the same ouer the Lake *Actamar*, and ouer *Cry* in the champeine of *Caldaran*, & then carrying the same lyne towards the South to the City of *Salmas*, and a little higher towards *Seresul*, euen to the channell of *Euphrates*, there is comprehended all the West parte of this kingdome. From the channell of the sayde riuer, where the *Bassora* lyeth, coasting all along that syde of the sea, euen vntill the mountaines *Techisnandan*, and more towards the East to the kingdome of *Candahar*, & there making an end of that compasse, all the South parte of this present Empire is figured. The East whereof is included

The North
parte of the
Persian king-
dome.

The West.

The South.

The East.

The II. Booke.

ded

ded betweene the borders of *Corassan*, and of the *Tartarian* *Iesselbas*, euen from the Citty of *Samarcante* on the east parte of the *Caspian* Sea, otherwise called the sea of *Bacch*.

The compasse appeareth to bee very great and of importance, comprehending in it many prouinces, not onely famous in our tymes, but also much more glorious in the daies of those Auncients: for that in the West is included with the countrey of *Georgia*, parte of *Turcomania*, and of *Cussestan*: in the North, *Seruania*, the countrey of *Gheilan*, and *Massandran*: in the East, *Candahar*, *Corassan*, and *Heri*: and in the South, all the kingdome of *Fars*, (the cheefe Citty whereof is *Siras*,) with *Caramania* the Desert. In the very middle and Centre of this Circle are the Territories of *Casbin*, *Cassan*, and *Hispahan*. So that in the beginning of this warre, the King of *Persia* ruled ouer all these prouinces, *Georgia* sometyme called *Iberia*, *Seruania*, otherwise called *Atropatia*, *Tauris* with the territories belonging vnto it called in times past *Media* the Great, *Gheilan* or *Gely*, *Massandran* or *Hircania*: & more inward *Parthia*, *Aria*, *Candahar* or *Peripaniso*, *Farsi* or *Persia*, and parte of *Cussestan* in old tyme called *Assyria*. All these prouinces in times past subdued by the *Macedonians*, the *Graecians*, and *Barbarians*, wasted by so many mutations and States, and outrages of Armyes, haue also lost their auncient names, and according to the seuerall languages therein vsed, haue had dyuers and sondry appellations, which (as a man may probably coniecture) are in truth those, that are last named. Of all which prouinces, *Anania*, *Pius* the second of happy memory, *Negro* the *Venetian*, & some other late Geographers haue bene so bould as to wryte many thinges, rather fabulous then true; after the example and imitation of those that are so greatly reprehended

The prouin-
ces of the Per-
sian king-
dome.

The II. Booke.

H 4

by

by *Strabo* and *Thucydides*: & therefore avoyding the danger of lying, and laying also a side for this time, the History of thinges Naturall, Miraculous, and Poeticall, (for of Poeticall matters especially, the particular Geography of *Danaus* reporteth) we will onely speake of such thinges, as will serue our turne for the better knowledge of the State and condition of this kingdome.

Tamas had vnder him, (and so he left the kingdome to *Ismael*, in whose time and by whose meanes these warres were raied) threescore and tenne Gouvernementes, all bearing the Titles of *Sultans* & *Chan*: so that in his whole Empire, he had leauentie Citties of such state and condition, as they deserued to haue a Gouvernour of the same dignitie, that the *Bassa* is with the Turkes, as shall be declared in the exposition of Names. Now what they were, it would be a very hard matter precisely to know; yet some of them we haue learned; and the principall thereof peradventure were, *Sumachi*, *Sechi*, *Eres*, *Seruan*, *Derbent*, *Carracach*, *Ardonil*, *Tauris*, *Reiuan*, *Genge*, *Hispahan*, *Masanderan*, *Gheilan*, *Heri*, *Cassam*, *Siras*, *Starabat*, *Chilmisnar*, *Candahar*, *Iesed*, *Sapanec*, *Saltania*, *Bargo*, *Cum*, *Coran*, *Senaa*, *Casbin*, and others, all which haue Iurisdiction ouer many Villages and Townes, from whence there are leauied many men of warre. *Hispahan* onely hath in her gouernement twelue Sultanes: *Casbin* three Sultanes & the king: *Heri* three also and *Abas Mirize*: *Candahar* three, and *Rustan Mirize*. Of all these places to make an exquisite description Geographically, to tell the Mountaines, the Riuer, the Champaines, the Distances, the Situations, the Altitudes of the Pole, and such other particularities, it would not be an enterprise fit for our handling, except we would insert many lies therein, (as a number of writers

The Citties of the kingdome of Persia.

The II. Booke.

haue heeretofore done:) & therefore, seeing neither the battels of the Turke haue entred into those partes, nor any thing happened in them that requireth any great diligence of discourse, Let that little bee sufficient, which wee haue already touched in this History by occasion of *Abas Mirize*, and of the *Turcomanni*: and returning to *Georgia*, to *Seruan*, and to *Media* the Great, with a peece of *Armenia*, we will vse our best diligence, euen as neede shall require, and our informations will serue vs.

Georgia then is that prouince, which in auncient tyme was called *Iberia*, which on the West is bounded vpon *Colchis*, at this day called *Mengrellia*: on the East vpon *Media Atropatia*, at this day called (as we said afore) *Seruan*: on the North vpon *Albania*, now called *Zuiria*: and on the South vpon *Armenia* the Greater, now called *Turcomania*, whereof it doth also possesse a parte, so that *Iberia* and part of *Armenia* is comprehended vnder this name of *Georgia*. It is for the most part full of hills, woods, rockes, and ruynes: and hath abundance of silkes, fruites, wilde beastes, and Faulcons. It is watred with many famous riuers, (and so was euen in the tyme of *Strabo*) but principally with the riuer *Cirus*, whose gulfe openeth in that country, and is ioyned with *Araxis*. The riuer *Araxis* springeth out of the hill *Taurus*, in that parte, where *Periando* is situate, on the syde of the hill *Abo*, and so running by East euen to the confynes of *Seruan*, windeth it selfe towards the west by the North, where it is ioined with *Cirus*, and then passeth to *Artaxata* a cittie of the *Armenians*, right against a place, which is very famous in this warre, called *Reiuan*, and so watring *Armenia*, and coursing all along the playne of *Araxis*, (which peradventure is the champaine called *Caldarana*,) dischargeth it selfe

The prouince of Georgia.

The riuer Araxis.

The II. Booke.

I into

into the *Caspian* Sea, at this day called the sea of *Corazan*, and of *Baccu*, on the one syde by south leauing *Armenia*, and on the other syde by North leauing *Seruania*, whose cheefe City is *Eres*, which is so famous in this booke; as in fit place it shalbe shewed. It is a riuer very deepe and large: but yet at this present it contayneth not those meruails, that *Herodotus* reporteth of it, as also it is very hard to vnderstand that which *Quintus Curtius* wryteth touching the course thereof, and that which *Natalis Comes* hath left written of it in his history. *Cirus* likewyse springeth out of the same hill *Taurus*, and yet in *Armenia*, and so descending into the Champaines and plaines of *Georgia*, charging it selfe, and being greatly encreased with other riuers, it is ioyned with *Araxis*, and so maketh his issue also into the *Caspian* sea. This riuer the inhabitants of the countrey at this day call by the name of *Scr* in their owne language, but the Turkes call it *Chiur*: the other Riuer both the one nation and the other doo vniiformly call *Arasse*. In that parte of the land, where *Araxis* insinuateth it selfe betweene *Media Atropatia*, and *Armenia*, it receaueth into it diuers Riuers that spring out of the hilles of the said region of *Armenia*, among which is *Canac*, very famous in this history, which making (as it were) almost an Island, a little on this syde of the City *Eres*, vniteth it selfe in the Channell with *Araxis*, as in his place shall be shewed.

This Prouince is inhabited by sundry Earles, Dukes, & Lordes, as well in the plaine and champaine, as also in the rough and mountaine countrey: and these inhabitants are for the most part Christians, (& yet obseruers of the rites and schismes of the Gracians,) stout people, stronge of complexion, and obstinate in their opinions. The prin-
cipall

The riuer
Cirus.

The riuer
Canac.

cipall Potentates of this Prouince, (besides many others that enioy whole Counties and diuers Lordships) are the Widow and her Sonnes, *Manucchiar* and *Alessandro*: the Sonnes of *Lauassap* deceased, *David* and *Simon*: *Leuentogli*, who by his countrymen is called *Schender*, and by vs *Alessandro*, surnamed the Great: *Giusuf* the Sonne of *Gori*: old *Sahamal*, of whome wee made mention afore, when we wrote of the death of *Aidere*: and the sixt is *Basacchiuc*.

Sahamal keepeth his gouernement betweene the terri-
torie of *Siruan*, and of *Alessandro*, by nation rather an *Ala-*
no, then a *Georgiano*, and hath one Sonne, which succee-
ded after him, when *Osman Bassa* depriued him of his life
for his treason that was discouered, whereof shall be spo-
ken in place conuenient. He dwelleth in a rough & high
mountaine, by the Turkes called *Brus*, whose top is co-
uered continually with white and hoarie snowes: he is in
religion, by his owne choice, a *Soffian*, although by na-
ture a *Georgian*: hee is in money poore, but in shaking a
launce and shooting a darte very valourouse: few cities, or
rather no one place woorthy the name of a citie doth hee
possesse, but certaine Villages and some base Townes hee
hath: and the people that is subiect to him is altogether a
sauage people, and giuen to robbery and flight.

Giusuf is in deede by countrey, by nation, and by reli-
gion a *Georgian*, although touching his religion hee hath
altogether abandoned the name of *Christ*, and hauing vo-
luntarily reuolted to the Turkes, hath chaunged his Gre-
cian Faith into another religion, that among all wicked
religions is most impiou'e. He hath his place at *Gori*, and
his territorie lieth on the West bordering vppon *Basac-*
chiuc, diuided from him by the Lake of *Esecchia*, and on
The II. Booke.

Sahamal the
Georgian and
his state.

The moun-
taine Brus,

Giusuf the
Georgian and
his state.

the East vpon the Countie of *Derbent*. He being brought into a narrow streight by *Osman Bassa* on the one side, and by the whole Campe on *Teflis* side, resolued himselfe to yeeld to the Turkes, as in fitte oportunitie shall be declared.

The widow
of Georgia
and her state.

The Widowes yonger Sonne called *Manucchiar*, is he that came to yeeld his obedience to *Mustaffa*, as wee haue tolde you before, and the elder is named *Alessandro*, of whome we shall speake sufficiently when we come to describe his misery. She holdeth many Townes, but hath put her elder Sonne in possession, and left vnto him the vniuersall care and charge of her whole estate, which afterward was fraudulently taken from him by *Amurat* and by his yonger brother *Manucchiar*. Her territory lieth in the confines of *Chars* on the West, & the State of the two brothers *Simon* and *Dauid* on the East, watred with a Riuer by the Turkes called *Chiur*, which perhaps may be some braunch of *Cirus*: The pallace of this Dominion is *Altunchala*, so called in Turkish, and in our language may be interpreted the *Golden-Castell*: there is besides, a very commodious and remarkeable place called *Clisca*, and also *Carachala*, so tearmed by the Turkes, and signifying in our tounge the *Obscure or Blacke-Castell*: and diuerse other Iurisdicktions both of Townes and Castels. This pallace aswell on the side of *Teflis*, as on the side of *Chars* is compassed with the rough mountaines of *Periardo*, and with horrible thicke woodes, very fit for treacherous ambushes, and in all respectes most daungerous for an Army: But *Altunchala* it selfe lieth in the midst, being (as it were) most cunningly defended by nature.

Lauassap the
Georgian and
his state.

There follow, as ye go towards the East, rather in *Armenia* then in *Iberia*, the places that sometimes beloged to
The II. Booke.

Lauassap,

Lauassap, but now enioyed by the two brethren *Dauid* & *Simon*, of their fathers valour and of their fathers estate, both by nature & by vertue the rightfull heires, although in truth they had greatly defyled themselves with a beastly change of their religion, whereby they did wonderfully obscure their glory, being otherwise worthy of singular commendation: and principally *Simon*, who by his knowledge in Arte military, and by his learning in matters of Poesie and Philosophie had merited the grace and familiarity of *Ismabel* the Sonne of *Tamas*, whiles he was in captiuitie in *Persia*, of whome we shall haue occasion to speake hereafter in due time. But what vertue could there be in them glorious and renowned, which was not obscured by this foule fault committed by them both? it being the occasion why the one and the other were not onely deprived of their goods, their State, and their honour, but also that they abandoned wholly the most sacred and glorious name of Christ. For *Lauassap* their father being dead, who by his last will and testament left *Simon* his Sonne to be his Successor in the kingdome, not onely because he was the elder in yeares but also because he excelled his brother in valour, *Dauid*, being of an intollerable nature, greatly enuying his brothers succession, & ouergreddie of glory and rule, began to seeke the means how to drive *Simon* out of his State, & with force and Armes to arriue to that place, whervnto neither the will of his father, nor the lawes of nature could bring him. And therefore withdrawing himselfe into the field, being followed by a kind of people desirous of Nouelties, and rather louing seditions and tumultes, then easie peace and quiet rest, he began to take vp those rentes, which his brother did yearly expect from such places as lawfully were sub-

Simon and
Dauid.

The history
of the two
brethren *Si-
mon* and *Da-
uid*.

The II. Booke.

I 3

lect vnto

iect vnto him, conuerting to his owne vse whatsoeuer he could by any meanes most vnholonestly vsurpe: and by these spoiles making his followers and souldiers more bounden vnto him, he did in such sort increase his squadrons, that being waxen very terrible to all *Georgia*, hee put his brother *Simon* also in a marueilous great feare: who hauing vnderstood his malignant and mischieuous intent, and hauing none other meanes to mainetaine & defend himselfe, fled for helpe to *Tamas* king of Persia, & opening vnto him his great necessitie, requested succours at his handes. *Tamas* was nothing slow to gratifie *Simon* herein, but dispatching foure thousand horsemen vnder the conduct of one of his owne captaines, sent him into *Georgia*, with speciall order, that he should take *David* aliue, and bring him into Persia, in case hee would not chaunge his religion, and so bee settled in that State as his lawfull subiect, and not as a francke tributarie, such as hee was before. Which if he would be content to doe, then the king commaunded his Captaine to seise vpon *Simon*, and in case he would not chaunge his faith, to bring him away with him, and substitute *David* in his place: but in case *Simon* should be readie and willing to do as his brother had done, then should he be caused to put the matter in execution, and so be confirmed in his possession, & *David* should be brought, as wee haue said before, to *Casbin*. The Persian Captaine departed into *Georgia*, and without any stirre, or any delay he tooke *David*, & in the name of *Tamas* made vnto him the former offer, where vnto he did straight way consent, and so forsaking his religion, and chaunging holy Baptisme for Circumcision, he did most impiouly consecrate himself a voluntarie sacrifice to false *Mabomet*, & (which is most horrible & fearful) *The II. Booke.*

David denyeth Christ & becometh a Persian.

full to write) renounced the Sauour of the world. Then did the Persian Captaine seise also vpon *Simon*, & tould him, that to gratify him, he was come into *Georgia* at the commandement of *Tamas*, that all thinges were performed which he required, and that he had taken his enemy-brother prisoner. Howbeit that he must not thinke to enioy that kingdome vnder the protection of *Tamas*, vntesse he would change his faith, and become an obseruant of the same prophet and of the same lawe, whereof king *Tamas* is a champion and defender: & therefore he must resolue himselfe so to doo, otherwyse his brother *David* should be settled in his place, who had already very voluntarily chosen that parte.

Most bitterly did *Simon* bewail the fall of his brother, & being now more settled & constant, then euer hee was, in the most sacred & holy faith of Christ, he surrendered vpon his earthly kingdome, because hee would not loose the kingdome of heauen, which he hoped for, and of a King became a prisoner, being betrayed by those very persons, whom he had called to be his defenders. After that *Dakt-Chan* (for so was *David* now called) had mumbled vp with his vnleane mouth, the worsted and vsuall blasphemies of the *Persians*, being circumcised, and apparelled in the habite of a *Barbarian*, he was in the name of *Tamas* installed, not by the terme of King or Duke, but of the *Chan* of *Teflis*, and all the other places, hereafter mentioned: And poore *Simon* was carried away to *Tadmor*, by whom, for all the many instances and earnest requestes, that were made vnto him to become a Persian, yet could he not be remoued from the foundation of his natie faith, & therefore was sent into the Castell or Roocke of *Cahaca*, wherein banished *Ismael*, the sonne of *Tamas* liued, who after *The II. Booke*

ward was king, as before is declared. And so contented himselfe rather to remaine in temporall prison, then to change his first Christian religion (wherein notwithstanding he was a *Schismaticke*,) and to prepare for himselfe perpetuall chaines, and blind & eternall captiuitie in hell for euer. By this successe of *Simon* we may easily learne how dangerous a thing it is, to draw the *Barbarians* into our states and gouernements for our defence and helpe: for that wee see most manifestly, there is no one thinge more doubtfull, more vncertaine, or more impious, then their faith or promises; and that to spoyle other men of their states, they will not sticke most impudently to venture vpon any wicked enterprise.

But following the description of those places, that belonged to the father of these two vnhappy heires, we say, that the Citties subiect vnto him, were principally *Teflis*, *Laky*, *Tomanis*, *Chieres*, *Giurgi-Chala* & many other townes & villages. But the chiefe pallace of all was euer at *Teflis*, and neere therunto euen at this day are to be seene the sepulchers of the kinges of this parte of *Georgia*. It is a place very strong by situation, watred with a small riuer, which descending from certaine hils neere thereaboutes cometh along this coast and entred into his neighbour *Araxis*. This small riuer the *Turkes* call *Chir*, supposing peradventure that it is some braunche of the Riuer *Cirus*, the graund waterer of all this region. On the syde of *Armenia*, towards the South coast, where *Tomanis* standeth, there are many very narrow lanes in the mountaines, & very deepe valleys, wherein the foresaid riuer *Araxis* with most outrageous turnings and windings, and his many rushing downefalls among the rockes doth euen be-deafe a mans eares, & with his most violent roming in and out

The II. Booke

An aduertisement not to trust the promises & helps of the Barbarians.

The promises of the Barbarians deceauable.

The places subiect to Lauassap.

Valleys and narrow cuttes in the mountaines of Tomanis.

doth drowne and ouerwhelme, whosoeuer by miserable chance falleth downe headlong from the toppes of those narrow passages which are vpon the mountaines. And vpon the creastes of the said mountaines, on the syde of the sayde narrowe passage, there growe most hideous woodes and antique Forrests full of * *Beeches* and *Pyne-trees*, where the horreur of darkenes, and silence which is oftentimes interrupted, onely by the whistlinge of windes, or by the cry of some wilde beast, doo make the poore passengers most terribly afraide. On the Weste syde there are most difficult passages on the rocks of *Periardo*, which maketh both the borders of this countrey, and the borders of the *Widowes* countrey also most dangerous and full of a thousand annoyances: and there likewise the riuer *Araxis* with his crooked courses in the low and deepe valleyes, maketh a most narrow and perrillous passage for any man. On the North syde is the roughe and noysome mountaine of *Caucasus*: and by that coaste the *Turkes* could not possibly get any entrance into this Region, vntill they had conquered the Cittie of *Derbent*. So that on all these three sydes, by which the *Ottomans* might make their way into that countrey, that is to say, by *Colchos*, by *Periardo*, and by *Armenia*, Nature defended the land from forraine and strange nations, as though she had foreseene this calamity and tempest of the Turkish fury, and of her owne bounty and benignity supplied those wantes of *Arte*, which were in that people, who was utterly ignorant in casting of Gunnes; and in the vse of such lyke engines. Of these straites of *Georgia* as also of the lower entrances before named, it seemeth that *Strabo* maketh manifest mention in his seconde booke, where he also writeth, that *Pompeius*, & *Canidius*, did vse

The II. Booke.

K

two

Woodes and old darke Forrests. * *Cerri*: trees lyke Poplers carrying mast fit for hogges.

Hard passages.

Strabo maketh mention of the passages into *Georgia*.

Pompeius & Canidius vsed these straies. The Turkes fought to occupy all the 4. entrances into Georgia.

Basacchiue the Georgian and his state.

Breach of promise in the Tartarians, damageable to the Turke.

Leuentogli the Georgian and his state.

two of these passages to enter with their Armies into this prouince. But in this present warre the Turkes sought to vse them all fower at one tyme : by the way of *Colchos*, sending their fleete on the great sea into the Channell of the riuer *Fasis* : by the coast of the *Albanians* leading *Abdilcherai* the *Tartarian* into *Seruan* : and by these two straies carrying all their Army, as in fit places it shall be set downe.

As yewalke towardes the North, on this syde of the lake *Essecchia*, (which perhaps is the marish called *Lych-nitis*) there standeth the Cittie *Basacchiue*, with certaine other Townes and Citties, for a long time subiect to *Basacchiue* being a Lord of that name. Who was allwaies more rusticall and vnciuill then all the rest, as one that dwelt far out of the ordinarie waies, by which the Turkish Armie made their iourney, and by that meanes neuer endured the like troubles and inconueniences that others did : so that in all these stirres and hurly-burles among his neighbours, withdrawing himselfe into these fortes made and framed by nature, he sat as it were in a watch-tower to behold the accidents of this doubtfull warre. Which rest certainly he had not so quietly enioyed, if the *Tartarians* had not fayled in their promises made to *Amurat* : whose breach of promise did in deede frustrate and thwart many important enterprises and singular conquestes; that *Osmen* the *Bassa* had plotted in those quarters.

Now the Sonne of *Leuant*, called by the inhabitants there, *Schender*, and by vs *Alessandro* surnamed the *Cacar*, and brother of *Isis*, hath his state betweene *Reiuan* & *Siruan*, wide of *Tomanis*, and though it be accounted among the *Georgian* States, yet is it situate rather in *Armenia* the Greater in the borders of *Atropatia*, then in *Media*. This

The II. Booke.

man in steed of armes hath continually vsed prayers and presentes, and as he that more then all the rest lay open to the passage through *Siruan*, and dwelt neere to *Reiuan* and *Tesslis*, he was likewyse subiect to the Persian fury : yet for all that he handled the matter so well with the Turkes on the other syde, that by his rich and liberall gifts, in steed of armes and wepons, euen in the greatest heates of this warre, he kept himselfe equally vntouched and free from the violence both of his foes and friends. His cheefe palace is *Zaghen*, fruitfull of silkes, he hath also *Grin*, and diuers other villages & townes : he surpasseth at this day all the rest of his neighbour *Georgians* in riches & money, & enioyeth withall greater tranquillitie and quiet then they all. He was in tymes past greatest affected to the Crowne of *Persia*, but since the tyme, that *Tamas* sought by vniust and vnlawfull meanes to depryue him of his state, and in his rowme to substitute his brother *Isis*, (who being become a Persian, and hauing giuen himselfe to *Tamas* and to Satan, like a wicked wretch, gaped after it about all thinges in the world,) he then began to repose small confidence in the Persian succours, and resolving with himselfe to remaine a *Neuter*, he followed the camps of the conquerours, and fauoured the Ensignes and name of those that were mightiest. And in this case standeth the state of *Georgia* at this day.

The Citties of Leuentogli.

But the countrey of *Siruan*, which on the West is ioyned with this Prouince, (whereof wee will make but a brieue discourse,) hath also on the North syde the *Albanians*, and a little beyond them some wandering and vagabound *Tartarians* called *Pericorschi*, betweene *Caucasus* & the riuer *Volga*, whereupon it may be that the *Tartarians* are comprehended vnder the name of the *Volcenses* : on

The countrey of Siruan.

The II. Booke.

K 2

the

the East it hath the lake (if with *Polyetes* we may so terme it,) or rather (as other call it) the sea of *Corazan*: on the South syde *Armenia*, and more toward the South and southeast *Media* the greater. The Metropolitall cittie of *Siruan* is *Sumachia*, situate betweene *Derbent* and *Eres*: and as *Derbent* lyeth in the way for the *Scythians*, so doth *Eres* make way for the *Armenians* and *Medes* to enter in to the country that is subiect to the said Cittie. All *Atropatia*, was subiect to the Persian King, and was obedient to him, being induced thereunto first by *Aydere*, and afterward by *Ismahel Sofi*, sauing onely that it seemed the people of *Derbent* did ordinarily loue rather the same and renowne of the Turkes, then the gouernement of their native Prince, sticking also to the auncient religion which *Aidere* shooke, and *Ismahel* subuerted. The whole country is fruitefull, and watred with *Araxis* and *Cirus*, and other riuers that are famous euen in antique writers: and principally *Eres*, which yeelded in tymes past great store of those fine white silkes, commonly tearmed by the marchantes *Mamodean* silkes, whereof at this day there is not to be found, no not a very small quantity, by reason of the monstrous ruines and ouerthrowes, that haue happened in those countreys. The king of *Persia* maintained in *Derbent* and *Eres*, after the naturall Lord was drinen out of them by *Ismahel*, certaine gouernours with the tytle of *Sultans*: and in the Cittie of *Sumachia* one onely Gouernour with the tytle of *Chan*, who ruled both ouer *Sechi*, & also ouer the other Citties that were subiect to that iurisdiction. But *Derbent*, as we haue already written, eue as it was the last cittie on that side which was subdued by the *Sofi*, & made more resistance, then all the rest, in receauing the superstition of the *Sofis* or *Cheselbas*, insomuch that

The II. Booke.

2 M

350000 *Aidere*

Aidere left his carcase vnder her walles: euen so, though at the last it was ouercome, yet did it alwayes remaine most affectionate to the first faith & opinion that it held; when the law of *Mahomet* had not yet tasted of the Schisme of the *Sofians*: howbeit, it could neuer fynd opportunity to receaue the Turkish captaines into her, and so vterly shake of all obedience to the *Cheselbas*.

Betweene *Seruan* and *Tauris* is situate the countrey of *Caracach*, fertile and rich in corne and cattell, very commodious for the feeding of Beastes, in situation not greatly subiect to windes, by reason that it lyeth rather alow then aloft, but yet pleasant and temperate: and it seemeth that this countrey on that side, bordereth vpon the *Atropatians* and the *Medians*, where the Cittie of *Tauris* standeth, euen at the rootes of the mountaine *Orontes*, which according to *Straboes* opinion is a portion of *Taurus*. Of this Cittie we haue sufficiently spoken in this History, & much more largely in the Letter, which in manner of an Appendix wee haue added in the end of this worke, for the more manifest declaration of our opinion touching the recognition of this place: the reading whereof may peraduenture more distinctly expresse the Geography of these countries. And now taking this Cittie of *Tauris* for the middell, or (as it were) the Center in a circle, wee will also vse it for an object in all the considerations, which very briefly wee shall heere set downe. All those that come from *Van* or from the Lake of *Vastan*, and make their voyage towardes *Media*, doo arrive at *Tauris*, trauellling alwaies by East, or by East & by North, being nyne dayes iourney or thereabouts, and leauing *Coy*, *Merent*, and *Soffian*. And this was the way that *Osman Bassa*, and *Ferat Bassa* kept when they went with their Army to this cittie, and which *Angiolello* also held, when he was in

The II. Booke

K 3

350000 *Persia*

Caracach.

The mountaine Orontes,
The mountaine Taurus

The volage from Van to Taurus

Polyetes callesh the Caspian sea by the name of a lake.

Sumachia, *Derbent*, *Eres*,

Atropatia is fruitefull.

Eres made *Mamodean* Silkes.

Sechi a cittie of *Siruan*,

The viage
from Reiuau
to Tauris.

Nassuan.
Chiulfall,
Siruan.

Salmas.
Siras.
Casbin.

Cassan.
Hispanan,
Heri.
Corazan.
Iesclbas.

Lakes in Ar-
menia the
Great.
The Lake
Martiano, by
Amar,
The Lake A-
rasseno or
Tospite.

The Caldaran
Champaines

Persia, as is manifest to be read in *Ramusius*. Besydes this way, there is also another comming from *Reiuau*, from whence as ye trauell by a direct line (as it were) by East, leauing *Nassuan* and *Chiulfall*, you shall arriue at *Tauris*, within the space of nyne or tenne daies iourney of an ordinarie carriers pace: and therefore *Ferat Bassa*, the first time that he was generall, attempted this way beginning at *Reiuau*, which he made a Fortresse. Aboue *Nassuan*, & *Chiulfall* is *Seruan*, and the countrey of *Caracach* which (I know not whether it be true or no), they say the Turke goeth about to strengthen with fortes, and to subdue, as he hath begun. From *Tauris* towards the south by west standeth *Salmas*, and on the south *Siras* in *Persia*, and on the South by east *Casbin*, distant from *Tauris* about eight or nyne dayes iourney, (as saith *Barbaro* and *Angiolello*) with certaine other cities amog, wherof there is sufficient mention made by vs in the history, & therefore we will not stand here to repeat them. More towards the East is *Cassan*, and further beyond is *Hispanan*, foure and twenty dayes iourney distant from *Tauris*. Then followeth *Heri*, and *Corazan*, & the *Iesclbas*, who were so troublesome to *Ismael*, that by their means he was ouercome and put to flight by *Selim*.

In *Armenia* the Great there are dyuers Lakes, whereof the greatest according to *Strabo* his opinion, is the lake *Martiano*, called by the inhabitantes there *Actamar*, and by vs the sea of *Pastan*. Next to this is the Lake *Arasseno*, called *Tospite* & *Tosti*, which breaketh and teareth apparel asunder, as *Strabo* wryteth; and through this ruer doth *Tigris* runne with such violence and swiftnes, that it doth not mingle his waters with the lake. Aboue the lake of *Actamar* are the champaines of *Caldaran*, famous for

The II. Booke.

the battelles betweene *Selim* & *Ismael*. But not to stand long in repeating such things as are written by vs, and others ypon other occasions, it shall bee well to descend to those particulars, which as they haue not bene hitherto precisely described by any man that I know, so may they bring vnto vs more certaine knowledge of this Empyre.

There is resident in *Casbin* their prophane Priest called *Mustaad-Dini*, that is to say, the chiefe of the law, who is as the *Mufti* among the Turkes: and in the other subiect Cities are certaine peculiar Heades, obedient to this cheefe Priest; who notwithstanding are not chosen or displaced at his pleasure, as our Bishops and prelates are by our most holy Pope, the true Viccar of God and pastor of the holy Catholike Church; but by the King himselfe, who, (as we haue said before) should be not onely a king, but also a Priest, euen as *Ahy* and *Mahamet* were. Howbeit for avoyding of greater trouble, he graunteth that fauour and putteth out that burden from himselfe (wherethers, to whose iudgements hee also referreth himselfe, whensoever there is any consultation or treatie touching their law and obstinate religion. Under the *Mustaad-Dini* are the *Galis*, and these are they that execute their dayly seruice in their *Moschees* or *Temples*. The chiefe of these *Califes* is he that putteth the *Horn* vpon the kinges head, when he is first inthronized: A ceremonie now perfourmed in *Casbin*, because the Turkes forbade it to be perfourmed in *Casene* vnto *Babylon*, where also in times past (as we haue sayd before) the *Persian* kinges were wont to gird themselves with their sword. Those three Sultanes that remaine in *Casbin* for the generall gouernement of the whole Empyre, haue their seuerall distinct charges. One hath the care of matters of warre ouer all the kingdome:

The cheefe
Priest of Cas-
bin called
Mustaad-
Dini.

The Califes,

The Sultans.

The II. Booke.

K 4

and

The Deftar-
dari.
The Mordari

The Caddi.

And the other two gather vp all the reuenues, and keepe a diligent reckoning thereof: which two may be rather called Treasurers then any thing els, such as the Turkes call *Defstardar*. Next vnto them there are at *Casbin* two great Chauncellours, whome the Persians call *Mordar*, whose office is to write all the orders, Commaundementes, and letters concerning the gouernement of the kingdome: one of them keepeth the Seale, and the other the penne. There is also in *Casbin* the magistracie of Iudges, exercised by two persons, whome the Turkes call *Caddi*, and whereof in *Constantinople* there are wont to bee three, as also the number of Sultanes there is greater then in *Casbin*. And these two Iudges do make answeare and giue sentence in matters of controuersy and ciuill quarrels. For as touching criminall causes they haue no further authoritie, but onely to frame examinations of witnesses, & to make declaration thereof, which they call *Sigil*: and this *Sigil* they deliuer vp into the handes of the Sultane that is gouernour of the citie or of the Empire, & he causeth execution to be done according to custome. And euen as the chiefe citie is thus ordered, so likewise all the other Citie haue the sulse same magistrates, but yet all at the kings disposition & appointment: for in them also, besides the *Chan*, or *Sultan*, besides the *Mustaed-Dini*, and the *Calife*, there are the *Caddi*, the *Mordari*, and the *Defstardari*, which exercise the same authoritie within their priuate gouernementes, as the others doe ouer the whole state. This is then the order of the States of the kingdome: First the *Sah*, then the *Mordar* and *Mordari*, the *Chan* and *Sultan*, the *Mordar*, the *Defstardar*, the *Caddi*, the *Mustaed-Dini*, and the *Calife*. The king keepeth also for the guard of his Palace certaine orders of souldiours: whereof the most noble

The order of
the Persian
dignities.

The II. Booke.

ble and greatest in number are those that the Persians call *Curchi*, which are as it were the Kings gentlemen, being six thousand, all of them diuided vnder seuerall captaines: which Captaines also doe yeeld obedience to their generall Captaine called *Curchi Bassa*, a person alwaies of great authority. The other next vnto this is the order of the *Eshahul* to the number of seuen hundred, distinguished also vnder particular Captaines, after the manner of the *Curchi*, and the captaine of those captaines is called *Eshahul Bassi*. There want not diuers other seruices besydes these, which doe not deserue in this place to be nombred. And this is the state of *Persia*.

The kings
Curchi.

The kings
Eshahul.

But as concerning the state of their warres and warfare, it cannot bee precysely and particularly descrybed, neither in respect of their forces, nor of their weapons, nor of the manner of their fight: and yet will wee set downe that little which we know for certaine. The souldiers of this kingdome would in truth be very many and terrible, if all those places, which we haue comprised within the compasse therof, as they are accompted, so they were indeed obedient to this crowne, and if also all those fables could be verified of it, that are dyuersly reported by dyuers wryters, of so many horsemen & so many footmen. But for so much as not onely the Tributaries, but also the very naturall subiects doe not lend in their ordinary and due aydes and succours, hereupon it springeth that in all their occasions their forces prooue so weake, and their Armies of a very small number. Of the discordes and diuisions in *Georgia*, which haue now bene tried by long experience to haue bene no lesse harmful to themselves, then to the *Persians*, we haue already spoken as much as may suffice: and now we will speake of some others, beginning

The state of
the men of
warre
in Persia.

The II. Booke.

L

with

his excuses auaille him, that he alleadged touching the far distance of his countrey: For if distaunce of place was no hinderance to the enimie to bring his Armies euen to *Tauris*, to annoy the *Persians*: Lesse reason had *Rustan Mirize* to withdraw his ready forces frō defending his friends, the iourney from *Constantinople* to *Tauris* beeing no shorter, then it is thither from *Candahar*.

Like vnto these was, and still is *Emir-Miran* the Lord of *Iest*, a hard man, and very obstinate in coueteousnesse, who doth not onely not send any voluntarie aide, but also refuseth to pay those tributes which by couenant & composition he is bound to send: And yet is he able to yeeld foure or fūe thousand horse of great valour in warre.

The Lord of *Lar* also, called *Ebrain-Chan*, famous for his mightinesse, although in times past hee hath alwayes helped the common forces with his priuate succours, yet at this day he vtterly denieth both the one and the other, and threateneth rather to suppress all Estates, then to aduance and encrease any that belong to this crowne.

But aboue al the rest, me thinketh that *Abas Mirize* this kinges sonne is most impious and wicked, who not onely would neuer fauour his fathers enterprises against the cruell enemies of the common libertie, but also hath sought by all meanes possible to driue both his brethren and his father out of the State, and to enter himselfe into the succession and gouernement of this diuided and troubled kingdome: So that vnder his Iurisdiction there are idly sed eightene thousand horse, which would proue very stout and strong in warre, if they wanted not discipline.

In *Cussestan*, those *Arabians* that were wont to be ready for any seruice to the Persian kinges, haue yeelded themselves to the *Turkes*, and oftentimes worke great annoy

The II. Booke.

L 2

ances

with *Amet-Chan*, who hath a longtime been Lord of *Ghailan*. This man, although he were of hability to haue yeelded singular aide to this crowne, (it being the generall opinion of all men, that he could gather together xx. thousand horse) yet could hee neuer be induced to serue in warre, but rather enioying a base and infamous lyfe, he is become both vyle to himselfe, and vnprofitable and hatefull euen to his neighbours & kinsfolkes. For which cause king *Tamas*, when hee was free from the Turkish warres, employed all his forces against him, and followed him so hardly, that in the end hee tooke him prisoner, & so kept him till he dyed, which was for the space of xv. yeares. But as soone as the now king *Mahamet* was intronized in his kingdome, being carried away with a vaine and foolish pittie, hee deliuered him out of prison, hoping (lyke an vnwyse man as he was) that this most couctous and suspicious wretch would haue proued courteous, and kynd towards him, which was a thing quyte contrary to his nature and disposition. And behold, neither the severity of *Tamas*, nor the lenity of *Codabanda*, could euer perswade him to change his mynd: for in the greatest daungers of this present warre hee could neuer tynde in his hart to apply himselfe to the performance of any noble acte, that was not only worthy of his great forces, but also especially required by the present necessities.

The like treacherie shewed *Rustan Mirize*, the king of *Candahar*, and sonne to a brother of king *Tamas*, who neither for neerenesse of blood, nor for common honour, nor for the estimation and reputation of his owne superstition, could euer be wrought to pittie the calamities of *Persia*: and yet the kingdome of *Candahar* was very well habilit to gather about xxv. thousand horse: Neither may

The II. Booke.

his

Amet-Chan.

Amet-Chan
imprisoned
by Tamas &
enlarged by
Mahamet.

Rustan Mirize.

Emir-Miran.

Ebrain-Chan.

Abas Mirize.

Cussestan.

Turcomania.

Seruan.

ances to the Persians by their suddaine incursions. But within the very bowels of the kingdome, the *Turcoman* nation, that would haue beene a great strength to these forces, if they would haue ioyned with them, Behold, how it hath not failed to procure many ouerthrowes to this kingdome: a great parte whereof we haue described in the fourth booke of this history. The kingdome of *Seruan* also is in such sort spoyled and decayed, that the cities of *Sumachia*, *Eres*, *Sechi*, *Derbent* and others, out of which there was wont to bee leuiued a good reasonable number of people, as also *Reiman*, *Teflis*, and other countries of *Georgia* and *Armenia*, are not able to yeeld any succours in the time of warre: so that the Crowne of *Persia* beeing deprived of such and so many helpes, is at this day constrained to wage warre with very slender forces, which very briefly shall be heere set downe.

Out of *Hissaban*, and the territorie thereof, (to reckon their *Stipendiaries* to the vttermost) they leaue eight thousand souldiers on horseback: out of *Bargo*, two thousand: out of *Cassan*, foure thousand: out of *Sena*, one thousand: out of *Saltania*, one thousand: out of *Cashin*, twelue thousand: out of *Andoul*, one thousand: out of *Siras*, eight thousand: out of *Tauris*, foure thousand: out of *Cum* and *Cuobiac-Tauris*, two thousand: out of *Ginge* & the rest of *Georgia*, foure thousand. Besides these they may hire others, when their occasions do so requite, and they haue alwaies voluntary souldiers, & that in som good number, so that the greatest Armie that they can possibly gather, will hardly amount to threescore thousand horse: (alwaies provided that euery citie aforenamed do send in their *Stipendiary* Souldiers according to their duty.) Whereas if all the other Capitaines, that are noted aboue

The II. Booke.

to be

to be obstinate and rebellious, would agree and concur in one vnitie, they might make an host of an hundred & thirty or an hundred and forty thousand persons or thereabouts.

Their Souldiers are armed for the most parte with *Scimitarre*, *Launce*, and *Darte*, but specially, the *Scimitarre* is most familiar vnto them, and all the Persians do make a singular profession and vse of it: although there want not among them some that can handle the *Arcubuse* also, the exercise whereof hath of late yeaes growen more familiar and vsuall, then it was in the time of *Ismael*, and in the first yeaes of the raigne of king *Tamas*. For their owne defence they are armed with good *Corselets*, and strong helmets, many of them able to keepe out an *Arcubuse*-shot, much more to daunt the force of a *Darte*: Some of their horses also are armed with very good *Armour*, most finely and soundly tempered. And these their horses are of a singular vertue, equall with those of the old time, which (as *Strabo* writeth) were accustomed to be fed and brought vp in *Armenia* for their kings vse. Swift in course, fierce in battell, long breasted and very docible. When they are vntyled, gentle and milde, but when they are armed, warlike, hardie, and manageable, euen at the pleasure of the Ryder: so that it is no meruaile, if one of them haue bene sold for a thousand or a thousand & three hundred * *Geckins*.

Those that follow & attend the exercises of warre are for the most part men of noble race, and therevpon it cometh, that they are more hardy and valiant to foyle then to flie. And beeing compared with the Turkish people, (who for the most part are very rascals, of vile race, ready to fly and to ruine) they are by good right very worthy

The weapons of the Persian souldiers.

The Persian horses very good.

* Duckates.

The Persians valorous and noble souldiers.

chie to be highly esteemed. The *Persians* are great deceivers, full of craftie Stratagemes, vnconstant, and breakers of their word: (a vice that seemeth to haue beene alwaies proper to the *Barbarians*.) Neuer content with any mans gouernement, and louers of nouelties, wherein *Persia* was alwaies noted particularly & specially to haue offended. For testimony whereof we may vouch those ancient poysonings and wicked treacheries, which were plotted not onely by Subiectes against their kinges, but also by children against their naturall father: which name (as *Iustinus* writeth) was in so small estimation with those fistic sonnes of *Artaxerxes*, that with one consent they all conspired vpon a most wicked pretence to murder their father, without that any one of them, either in regard of his Fatherly Maiestie, or reuerence to his age, or naturall pietie, did attempt to prohibite so great an iniquitie. An Acte (as it seemeth) very well marked by the *Sosian* kinges, who as we may read of *Pygmy*, *Mahamut* and others, and (as it is written in this Historie) the Children with the Father, the Father with the Children, and the Children one with an other, haue learned it by course, and dayly doe practise it to destroy one another: and so weakening their owne forces, do make themselues spectacles of infamy to all the world.

The people of *Persia* are afraide of Artillery beyond measure, and yet sometimes they haue not beene affaide with suddaine assaultes to assaile their enemies trenches, & lodgings in their Campes. And although they be so timorous and fearefull of that Engine, and know of what moment it is in a battell: yet haue they not hitherto receiued the use thereof, being rather obstinate in their blind ambitious conceits, that it is a shame and shame to exercise
The II. Booke.

The Persians
giuen to no-
ueltie.

The impiety
of the sonnes
of Artaxerxes
the Persian
king.

Thereason
why the Per-
sians do not
use Artillery
or Canons.

so cruell a weapon against mankinde, then ignorant how to make it, or destitute of matter to cast it.

The manner of ordering their battell is after the fashion of a horne or of the Moone, as a man may call it, and in open battell their Squadrons are ordered on this sort. In the right horne or wing, by auncient custome were placed those troupes that were guyded by the captaynes, of *Istigeln*, which is now called the Traytors lyne, by reason of *Zalchan* and the rest, that were so ready & resolute in the conspiracy, which was made in the fauour of *Sidere*, whereof we haue already written in this history. In the left corner or wing were placed the people that were led by the captaines *Zambeluzes*, who vaunt of their auncient discent from *Damasco*, and from the *Tacalnzes*, a nation neuer greatly esteemed for any valour or knowledge that they had in warfare. In the body of the battell was appointed the kings guard, who was alwaies accustomed to be present at warre with his Armies, although this king partly by reason of the infirmity of his eies, and partly for the dissensions in his kingdome durst not venture to goe in person, but in his steed sent Prince *Amze*, a valorous & good warriour. In the midst of the battell also, about the King, went the people of *Anfares*, which are pressed out of *Persia*, all of them accounted very warrelike, and more valiant then all the rest. Neyther would it bee greatly amisse to thinke that from hence were those troupes fetched in tymes past, which *Xerxes* was wont to terme by that proude tytle *Immortali*, the immortall souldiers. The Rere-ward was kept by those that descended from *Calirchan*, which were neuer as yet depriued of that honour, for the good desertes that *Calirchan* shewed to *Ismael*, when he strained himselfe, to passe with a mighty Army
The II. booke.

The order of
their battell.

The right
wing.

The left
wing.

The body of
the battell.

The Rere-
ward.

cuen into *Cafe*, to performe the Regall Ceremonies at his Coronation, and yet for all that neuer stirred the ordinary garde of *Casbin*. The people of *Caribdiler* and *Chia-peris* made-vp the Vaunt-Guarde, accompted also to be men of good fort and very warlike, becaule they haue alwaies shewed themselues ready in any occasions or troubles of warre, and performed their partes |very valiantly. And this was the manner of ordering their battelles in late tymes.

Touching the reuenues of this kingdome, the common opinion is, that in the dayes of Kinge *Tamas* the crowne did yearly receaue into the Chamber of *Casbin*, foure or fve millions of gold, which afterward he caused to be worth eight millions, by a sudden enhaunsing of the value of his coyne, geuing in commandment by most seuered Edictes, that ouer all his Empyre, for a certayne space, all the money that he had receaued, should bee taken and accompted for as much more as it was worth, and accordingly made pay to his souldiers and *Sultans*, & all other that were in his pay. Which example (mee-thinkes) was well followed by *Amarat* the now-king of the Turkes, who receauing at the Citty of *Cairo* the *Cechino* of gold for *xlili. Maidini*, he put it out againe in *Constan-tinople*, to pay his *Capigi* and *Ianissaries*, withall *lxxxv. Mai-dini*, commanding that it should be of that value ouer all the Citty, and countryes subiect vnto it. But in the dayes of this king of *Persia*, the reuenues of this crowne are thought to be so much diminished, that it is the opinion of all men, they amount to little more then two millions in all. Neither is there to be found in him that industry & prouidence which was in *Tamas*, and though it were, yer peraduenture it would not be regarded by his subiects: &

The II. Booke.

it seemeth that the occasion of this decay is the losse of so many countries as *Soliman* conquered, and particularly *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*, besydes *Erzurum* and the Tributes that are denyed by the people of *Georgia*, and by other nations of this kingdome. Next after this kinde of reuenue, which is payed in ready money, and collected into the Chamber of *Casbin* from among the Citties that are subiect vnto it: (although all the countrey, that was possessed by these kinges, were not appoynted by diuision to the payment of a certayne number of souldiers, as the Turke vseth to doo in those Countries that he subdueth:) yet is there a great sort of towns and villages which are very Feudataries to the crowne of *Persia*, & are so many that they supply a part of the pay that is due to the horsemen aboue mentioned, to foure thousande of the *Curchi* of *Casbin*, and to the *Eshahul* aforementioned. Among all the reuenues that are gathered out of the Citties subiect to *Casbin*, the greatest werd alwaies payed out of *Tauris*, *Cassan*, & *Hispahan*, all Citties of great traffike, where the marchandise of *Europe* & all *Asia* doo arriue. And these are the reuenues of this Crowne.

The expenses briefly are these. The threescore and ten *Sultanes*, that serue in the gouernement of the subiect Citties, are payed in ready money out of the Chamber of *Casbin*, with a stipend of three thousand, foure thousand, or fve thousand *Cecchins* a peece. The two thousand *Curchi*, that remaine to be payde for their attendance, (who haue no landes assigned to them for their pay, as the foure thousand abouenamed haue) doe also receiue their ordinary wages out of the kinges Chamber, from a hundred & threescore, to two hundred *Cecchins* a man. From thence also are defraied the stipends for the magif-

The II. Booke.

Certain lands assigned for the payment of the Persian souldiers.

The greatest reuenues com out of *Tauris*, *Cassan* and *Hispahan*.

The expenses of the Persian kingdome.

The Vaunt-Guarde.

The Reuenues of the kingdome of *Persia*, in the daies of king *Tamas*.

The practise of the Persian & Turkish kings, in enhaunsing and abating the value of their monies.

The reuenues of *Persia* at this day.

trayes of the Iudges, not onely of *Cashin* but of all the whole empire, & all the Treasurers likewise. Wherof some haue a thousand, some five hundred, and some a thousand and five hundred *Cecchins* yearly. The Garnisons of certayne Fortes, as of *Elegie* neere to *Nassuan*, *Gnuergichalasti*, *Cahaca-Calasti* and such like, consisting some of a thousand and five hundred persons, some of a thousand, and some of five hundred, are payed with these Reuenues, and euery Souldier of them receiues for his pay five *Cecchins* a moneth little more or lesse. I do not heere reckon the expenses that go out for the pay of other base Offices, of his household, of the Queene, of the Prince, of his Children, of the Temples called their *Moschees*, of the buildinges, of the gardens, and such like: and so I leaue you to make an accompt, how much remainethouer and aboue, for the king to put vp in his purse yearly.

And now hauing respect to the order of those thinges, which I propounded to my selfe to treat of, there resteth nothing els, but onely briefly to consider the occasions, whereby it is come to passe, that a kingdom so meruelously encreased is so suddenly decreased and decayed. And we think the principall occasions therof were three. The first, because the enemy did in very short space waxe verie strong and mightie, by the great conquestes that he made both by sea and by land: by meanes whereof it fell out that those calamities and assaultes, wherewith *Persia* was at sondry tymes dyuerfly afflicted and trauelled, did alwaies proue very grieuous and mortall vnto it. The second because the empyre of *Persia* had no fenced citties, that were able to hold out or maintaine themselves: and if there were any, as *Van* was one, it was because they knew not how to fynd the meanes, either to mainrayne,
The II. Booke.

Fortes that
haue neede
of ordinary
Garnisons.

The occasi-
ons of the
declination
of the *Persian*
kingdome.

orto recouer themselves: And who knoweth not, that the country lying open, without any resistance, not onely the huge forces of the Turke, but also farre lesse forces had beene able to worke these mischeefes, yea and farre greater then these are. The third, is the conquest of all Artes that the Turke hath made in the winning and subduing of so many christian citties, which are replenished with al kind of diligent study & arte. By which conquests the Turke hath not onely learned to vse his wonted and natie weapons after a more mortall and deadly manner: but also hath inuented new, to the great astonishment & terrour of his enemy, who hath not onely neglected to make vse of forraine instructions, and to learne the true meanes, to encrease his owne forces, but (as it were) contemning all other mens wittes, hath thought himselfe alone able to teach and instruct others. And this is that haughtinesse and ambitious conceite of the Persian, who in this present misery of his owne, vaunteth & braggeth of great matters, though all the world can see nothing but most vnhappy euentures in all his warres. The fourth is the concord and celerity of the Turke, whereby he hath attempted whatsoeuer he would, and hath obtayned whatsoeuer he attempted: yea and oftentimes, before the Persians could take their Armour, he hath taken their countreyes. The fift, which is the roote and fosterer of all the rest, hath alwayes beene the discord and dissention in the kingdom of *Persia*, and the keeping alieue of so many brethren or nephewes of the king at once: and not onely the keeping of them alieue, but also the maintaining of them in authority, in gouernement, and in maiesty. For hereby it came to passe that all counsellors and execution of counsailes were diuided, Armies weakened, Captaines minds
The II. Booke.

suspended, and inclining to dyuers parties, & to be briefe there followed a meere confusion of all thinges. It is indeed a barbarous and inhumaine thing for one brother to dye his crowne & Scepter with the bloud of another, and oftentimes of so many of his breethren, and out of all doubt it is a very harde and cruell position, that a man shall not be able to rule without the making away of his dearest frendes: But yet on the other syde it cannot bee but too much negligence and lenity, to permit that breethren and children, being of speciall ambition waxen ouer proude in their owne conceytes by reason of their princely gouernementes and authorities, should stirre vp armes one against another, and in the meane while scarce leaue any meanes for the poore king to scape with his life: who being by his owne bloud made. (euen as it were) a rebell to the honour and quyet of the kingdome, must needs reduce his empire into a most vnhappy state. Both these kyndes of gouernementes, are in extremities, and therefore infected with vice and barbarisme, and not to be exercised by any man. And although *Cornelius Tacitus* saith, that *Great enterpryses, which are recompensed with the profit and safety of the Commonwealth, may haue some iniquity or unlawfulness in them*: notwithstanding euery Christian prince ought by all meanes to auoide them, and to establish the quyetnesse of his kingdome, neither with too great cruelty, nor with excessiue lenity, in which two poyntes all the Barbarian kinges doo ordnarily offend.

I had heere made an end of this booke, had there not bene brought vnto me certaine bookes, some written in French and some in the Latin tongue, some with the tytle of commentaries, and some of an History, vnder the names of *dyuers Authours* more Poeticall then Histori-
The II. Booke.

An aduertisement to the reader.

call, as far as I can gather: in which bookes hauing found many wantes, aswell concerning matters of the Persian and Turkish opinions about their lying religion, as also touching the recognition of certaine auncient citties, the tymes wherein things haue happened, the actions themselves, the voyages of the armies, and many other particularities. I thought it my duty to admonishe all those, that after this our age shall happen to reade these bookes and this history, that they walke verie circumspectly in reading such writings. And especially let them take great heed, that they doo not belieue these things following: namely, That the Turkes follow *Atty*, and the Persians follow *Omar* and *Abubacher*: for the matter is quite contrary. Likewise, that *Scutar* was in old tyme *Chrysopolis*, whereas it is a most cleere case that it was *Chalcedon*, the founders whereof were termed blynde, because they did not see what errour they committed in buylding a Citty there, and leauinge the place where *Constantinople* now standeth, as farre excellling the situation of *Chalcedon*, as gold excelleth leade. Also that *Esrum* or *Erzurum*, as it should be called, is a citty of *Assyria*, whereas indeed it is not a citty of *Assyria*, but of *Cappadocia*, if we speake properly. That *Seruan* is the auncient *Macedon*, it being in truth *Atropatia*. That *Osman Bassa* tooke *Teflis*, *Mustassa* himself being there in person with all hys hoast, & not (as one of them saith) *Citra memorabile damnum*, without any memorable losse, no, nor with any losse at all, because he found it emptie. That *Mustassa*, poisoned himselfe voluntarily, which he did not indeede, but fell into an Apoplexie. And many other such tales, whereof it is not now conuenient to make any patticular confutation: And therefore passing them ouer, wee will prosecute our former order of this History. The end of the second Booke.

The Third Booke.

The Argument.

The Turkish Armie departeth for *Teflis*, and cometh to *Archichelech*.
 A reuiew of the Armie, and the number of those that wanted in the Army.
 It cometh to *Trian*. It winneth a Castell.
 It taketh *Teflis*, and fortifieth it, and then departeth for *Seruan*.
 The *Sorians* forsake the Armie of *Mustassa*, and in their returne home to
Aleppo they are assailed and discomfited by the *Georgians*.
 The Ambassadors of *Leuentogli* entertained by *Mustassa*.
Leuentogli himselfe also entertained.
Sechi a Citie vnder *Seruan*, yeelded to *Mustassa*.
 A dearth in the Turkish Armie.
 Victuallers go out for provision of Corne and Victualles, but they are
 discomfited and vterly destroyed by the *Persians*.
Mustassa with all his Armie goeth to fight with his enimies, and soyleth
 them miserably.
 Diuers disturbances and losses in the Turkish Armie, by passing ouer the
 Riuer *Canac*.
 A wonderful kind of Food found out.
 The Turkes being refreshed from diuers annoyances, arrive at *Eres* in *Seruan*.
Mustassa fortifieth *Eres*, and leaueth *Castras Bassa* in it.
Mustassa departeth, and leaueth *Osman Bassa*, as Generall and Visier in
Sumachia.
 The people of *Derbent* yeeld themselves to *Osman Bassa*.
Mustassa returneth home: is in the country of *Leuent*, cometh to *Teflis*,
 and there leaueth succours and a garrison.
Mustassa departeth thence, in his journey he endureth great cold, and
 losses in his Armie, through the cunning stratagemes of the *Geor-*
gians, and namely *Hassan Bey* discomfited.
Mustassa at *Aleppo* receiveth the Widow and her other Sonne *Alf-*
sandro.

The Argument of the fifth Booke.

He goeth to *Glisca*, and so to *Erzurum*.
 He sendeth both the Sonnes of the Widow to *Constantinople*.
Abdischeras the Tartarian Captaine cometh to succour *Osman Bassa*.
Ares Chan withdraweth himselfe to the Riuer *Canac*, and is discomfited
 by *Abdischeras*.
Genge sacked.
 The Tartarians pitche their Tentes in certaine champeines and there take
 their ease.
Castras Bassa and his people vterly destroyed by the Persian Prince.
 The Tartarians also destroyed by the same Prince.
Abdischeras taken alive and sent to *Casbin*.
Osman Bassa flyeth from *Sumachia* to *Demir-Capi*.
Sumachia destroyed by the Persian Prince, and the people of *Sechi* also
 chastised.
Abdischeras at *Casbin* falleth in loue with the Queene: he is discouered,
 and both he and the Queene slaine by the Sultans.
Osman Bassa taketh to wife the daughter of *Sahamal* the Georgian. He
 discouereth the treacheries of his Father in Law: hee putteth him to
 death, and causeth his countrey to be destroyed.
Alf-Vechial returneth from *Mengrellia* to *Constantinople*, and reporteth
 what he hath done in his Navigation.

THE THIRDE BOOKE.



After the solempne entertaynment of the Georgian *Manucchiar*, Generall *Mustassa* had geuen order ouer all his Campe, that the next morning they should remoue from those mountaynes. And now was euery man bucklinge himselfe to accomplish the Captaines commandement, when as there happened very obscure and darke stormes that couered the heauens (as it were) with night and terrour, and being turned into raine and wind, casting out flashing fyres, & scouring the aire with terrible lightnings, did freshly afflict the Turkish armie. Which raine continued so vehement for the space of foure daies together, that it seemed the heauens were melted into waters: by meanes whereof it came to passe that out of the dead carcasses, & heads before mentioned, there issued a most horrible stinke, so that partely thereby, and partely by the myre, and other filth of the Cammells, Mules, and horses, they spoyled their armour, their apparrell, their deuises, their plumes, their pauillions, and all things els that was of any worth, yea all their brauery and beautie, and in the bodies of the people there arose dyuers diseases and infirmities, though not very pestilent, but breeding rather annoyance then death to the Turkes. But at last the heauens hauing ceased the raine, the lightning, the blustering and the stormes, and the Sunne hauing cleered all the ayre, *Mustassa* raysed his campe to passe towardes *Teflis*: & because the ground was still very moyst and slabby, with the raine that had

The III. Booke.

fallen

fallen in such aboundance, the Camells, that carried the heauiest burdens could not go onwarde, and the horses that drew the artillery, were subiect to the same difficulty, & so the army could not that daye passe any further then the plaines where the lake called *Chielder Giol* standeth, which (if the distance of places, & the nouelty of names do not deceiue vs) may wel be thought to be that, whēce *Euphrates* taketh his beginning. And there they stayed to drye and trim their apparrell, their weapons, and their harnesse, and to yeeld to their sick and wounded souldiers their due and deserued refreshing.

The Lake called Chielder-Giol.

The Turkes remouing from thence the next day about noone arriued at a Castell called *Archichelec*, sometymes belonging to the *Georgiani*, but conquered by *Soliman* in his late warres against *Tamas*, and euer sithence possessed by the Turkes. Heere *Mustassa* taking fit occasion of this frendly castell, and hauing commodity of pasture and opportunity of faire wether, (by reason of the losse which happened vnto him in the last battell, & the necessity of continuall traouelling through his enemyes cuntry) resolved to take a surueigh of all his army, wherein hauing ranged them in due order, & marshalled them, with exquisite diligence, he found his number diminished, aswel by meanes of his late battell, as also of the forenamed infirmities, by forty thousand persons or there aboutes. Of which number, there was not a few that fled away from the hoast, and being wearie with following so rough and perrillous a iourney, closely and by night departed from the Campe, and returned into their owne citties, to take their ease at home. From hence the Army departed, and lodged the next night neere to a vile & filthy marish, called by the Turkes *Peruana-Giol*, which wee

The Turkes at Archichelec.

A surueigh of the army.

40000. persons wanting in the Turkish Army.

The III. Booke.

N

may

A notable raine.

The Turkish army remoueth towards Teflis.

The Turkes
at the lake
called Perua-
na-Giol.
The Turkes
at Triala,

The praises of
those Christi-
an forces that
tooke the ho-
ly Citty.

The praise of
Torquato,
Tasso.

Giurgi Chala
possessed by
the Turkes.

may well call, The Lake of Slaues: and the next day at *Triala*, where there are to be seene at this day the ruines of a great Citty and of many churches, whereof some being repayred and restored by godly men, are still maintained and kept by catholike priestes according to the holy customes of *Rome*. The reliques of those happy and religious forces, that with so great and faithfull zeale passed the seas and mountaines, and with the Sacred signe of the triumphant crosse, (being displaid in the winds vpon their victorious Ensignes,) perced through these barbarous nations, euen to the borders of the *Leuant*. Blessed & happy soules, that prepared for your selues so fruytefull deaths, and with so great glory purchased at one tyme both kingdomes vpon earth, and the kingdom of heauen. Very well worthie are you, that as in the heauens you are entertained and praised by those soules that are Cittizens thereof, so here vpon earth you should bee commended and celebrated by the hautie verses of so graue & worthie a wryter. Reioice and liue in Gods name eternally, and pray vnto that soueraigne bounty, that into the hartes of his mighty champions he would inspire that enterprise, that is so greatly desyred of all men, & the longer it is delayed and slowe, the more difficult and perrillous it will proue.

The next day the Turkes ascended the high and craggy mountaine, that standeth vpon *Teflis*, from the toppe whereof descending the day following, they seised vpon a Castel of the *Georgiani*, called by the Turkes *Giurgi-Chala*, & by vs the Georgian Castell: & departing from thence, & making their next abode in certaine plaines, the day following they came in good time nere to the riuer that runneth by *Teflis*. But in this iourney, frō the place, where the

sur-

surueigh of the Campe was made, euen to this Riuer, there happened diuers and sundry slaughters of certaine souldiers, that separating themselves from the army, being dryuen thereuntoo by hunger, went to get some victualls, for themselves and their beastes: for that dyuers Captaines of *Georgia*, as *Giusef*, *Daut*, and (as some saye) *Alessandro* the eldest sonne of the widdow, hauing gathered together a number of their owne countrey souldiers, had secretly followed the Turkish army, and as men that wer acquainted with al the waies of that regiō, they stood watching in such places as the victuallers should passe through, and suddenly setting vpon them, spoyled them at once both of their goodes and lyfe. And this happened as often as there were either footemen or horlemen, (without any notice giuen thereof to their generall, who had graunted them certain sure souldiers to guide them,) that being perswaded thereuntoo by hunger, diuyded them selues from the custody and safe keeping of the rest of the hoast.

Mustaffa found the rocke or castell of *Teflis* empty, & without any inhabitant at all, for that *Daut* (of whome euen now we made mention) running away as sone as he heard of the comming of the Turkes, and betaking himselfe to the fields, sought means to prouide better for himselfe that way, then he could haue doone, if he had stayed still in the Forte, & so should haue bene constrained of necessitye to haue remayned prisoner. Whereupon *Mustaffa*, rather then he would vtterly raze it, resolved to restore the old and weake walles thereof, and to make them stronger, that they might endure the sounge & shacking of the Artillery, wherewithall hee ment to strengthen it: which resolution he put in execution, and placed

The ambuscade
of the Georgiani.

Mustaffa at
Teflis.

Mustaffa fortifieth the
walles of
Teflis.

Mustaffa
cheerfully
entertaineth
the embassa
dors.

Leuentogli to
Mustaffa.

Mustaffa re-
ceaueth Le-
uentogli, and
promiseth to
passe through
his territories
at his returne.

so pleased him, was ready to doo him reuerence, and by word of mouth to promise him that deuotion, which he had alwaies borne in his mind to the *Ottoman* kinges. With merry countenance did *Mustaffa* behould these Embassadors, and most cheerfully heard their offred obedience: and thereupon presently sent them backe & willed the to cause *Leuentogli* to come, for that his friendship should be deere and acceptable to him. The Christian embassadors went to fetch their Lord, for whose welcome the Turkish Generall tooke order with all the Captaines of his army, that they should shew the greatest signes of ioy that might be: which was with all solemnity accordingly performed, & his coming celebrated with all tokens of fauour and kindnes. And after he had presented those precious & rare gifts that he brought with him, he offred his obedience to Capitaine *Mustaffa*, with the most earnest and liuely speeches that he could possibly deuise, calling *Amurat* his Lorde, and shewing that hee tooke it in ill parte, that *Mustaffa* passed not through his territory, where he might haue enioied all maner of commodities, abundance of corne, and other helps necessary for his army: yet for his better satisfaction, hee would looke for him at his returne from *Siruan*, being in the meane tyme most ready to bestow all that he had for the seruice of the *Ottomans*: telling him moreouer, that forsomuch as in many iust and lawfull respectes he could not possibly wait on him into *Siruan*, yet hee would accompany him alwaies in mind, & would pray to the creator of all things for his prosperity and all happy successe. And so eftsoons praying him to returne by his Citties, he tooke his leaue. *Mustaffa* receaued his presents curteously, & in exchange thereof bestowed vpon him a Battell-Axe, a Targat, and some

The III. Booke.

some apparell of cloth of gold, and gaue him his answere in very magnificall, and graue termes, and in the end promised the Christian Duke, that in his returne hee would passe through his countrey, and so dismissed him: with speciall commaundement, that his departure should bee honoured in the same sorte, as hee was entertained at his comming.

The Turkish Armie followed on their begonne iourney towards *Siruan*: and in the space of twelue dayes, after their departure from *Teflis*, traueiling allwayes thorough low and moorish wayes, that were intricate by reason of reedes and myre, they atriued in the confines of the *Medians*, otherwile called the *Siruanians*, netre to the riuer of *Canac*, whereof in the description of *Georgia*, *Armenia*, and *Atrepatia*, we made but a short, & yet a plaine & manifest mention. Somewhat on this side of the same riuer, the Turkes ascended a little higher, being very weary with the long iourney that they had made, and rested themselves one whole day, in which time the Subiectes of the Cittie of *Sechi* bordering vpon the *Siruanians* and the *Georgians*, foure dayes iourney distant from *Sumachia*, came to offer themselves to *Mustaffa*, as vassalles and subiectes to the Turke: All which were gladly entertayned, and some of the chiefe of them apparelled in silkes and gold, and honoured with great magnificence, and in the end had all protection promised vnto them.

The Turkish Armie, as I haue told yee, was all forewearyed with the continuall iourney of twelue dayes together: but yet farre more afflicted with hunger, hauing not found in those parts so much as one wild beast, whereby they might quench their desire of meate; so that there was not a man among them, but sought meanes to get

The III. Booke.

N

4

some

Mustaffa and
his host at the
riuer Canac.

The subiectes
of Sechi come
to offer
themselves to
the captaine.

The hunger
of the Tur-
kish Army.

some store of victuaille, especially when they vnderstood, that *Mustassa* was resolved to passe ouer *Canac*, and enter into a new countrey, vnkowne to them all; and where they knew not what hope to conceaue of finding any substance fitte for them. And whiles they were enquiring among themselves, who was able to conduct them into any place where they might finde reliefe, behold, there were certaine Persians taken, (whether they were there by chaunce, or brought thither for some Stratageme, I know not,) who beeing demaunded where they might haue corne and meate to slake the hunger of the Armie, after much resistance, and at the last told them, that not farre from the Campe, after they had passed certaine marshes, where *Canac* dischargeth it selfe, and runneth into *Araxis*, they should finde many fieldes, full of rye and corne in the blade, and a little farther, certaine fat herdes of cattell feeding, that would bee sufficient to satisfie the appetites of all their people. Of this newes was *Mustassa* certified, and although hee greatly doubted the treacheries of his enemies, and the subtleties of the Persians, yet to gratifie his souldiers, and to make them the more willing to follow him in his passage to *Siruan*, hee licenced euery man, that had any desire thereunto, to goe and prouide themselves of victuails, & so suffered all that would, to goe freely. When the Captaine had graunted them this licence, many *Spahini*, many *Zaini*, and some *Sanguichei* also, sent diuers me to fetch this prouision of corne and cattell. And there went for that purpose about ten thousand seruile persons, with many Camels, horses, and mules to carry the pray.

But the successe fel out quite contrary to their designementes: for *Totomac*, *Alyculi-Chan*, *Emanguli-Chan*, *Serap-Chan*,

The Persian
spyes taken.

The intelli-
gence that
the spyes gaue
for vittaille.

Mustassa
licenceth euery
man that
would goe for
corne and o-
ther necessa-
ries.

Ten thou-
sand seruile
persons go
for victuaille.

Chan, and all the rest of the Souldiers, that escaped out of the ouerthrow. giuen them by *Mustassa* in the plaines of *Chielder*, (after they had with all diligence made report to their king at *Casbin* of the issue of this battel in those cham-paines) hauing gathered together so many of their people, as were left them, able to endure the difficulties of warfare, & hauing recovered such places as they thought safe and frendly for them, did alwayes lie in awaite to know the marching and passing of the Turkish Armie. And at last, beeing certainly informed by the inhabitants of *Reiuan* and *Georgia*, what way they kept, and that of necessitie they must needs arriue at the bankes of *Canac*, they begonne to deuile some notable Stratageme, whereby they might reuenge the great boldnesse of their enemies; and make this their entrie into *Siruan* very dangerous and dammageable to them. And yet hauing neither courage nor force sufficient to assault the whole Armie, they resolved with themselves, (as men that had stomacke inough to attempt great matters,) to stay in priue ambush at some fit place, till some bande of the Turkish Armie should arriue, where the pray of corne and cattell might allure some of them to descend into those fieldes to relieue their common necessities: and so they sent out diuers men, who fayning that they went about their owne businesses, made shew as though they had suddeinly and at vnwares lighted vpon the Turkish Campe, and reuealed vnto them, as a great secrete, what a good pray was hard-by them. And so withdrawing themselves out of the way, they stayed priuily to watch, when the Turks would send their victuailers to fetch away the corne & cattell: when as, within the space of three onely dayes, it so fell out that the foresaide ten thousand seruile persons arriued at the

The Persian
Captaines
take counsell
how to an-
noy the
Turkes,

The strata-
geme of the
Persians.

The ten thousand victuallers flane by the Persians.

Mustassa runneth with all his host to succour the victuallers.

The order of Mustassa his battaile.

place, where they had no sooner begun to charge themselves with their pray, but they were surprized by the Persians, and saving a very few, that were nimble at flight, they were all slaine, and left both their pray and their liues behind them. The noise of their crie, and the thunder of their Gunnes was heard in the Turkish host, which made *Mustassa* to imagine, that the matter was fallen out, euen as in deepe it was, & therefore presently mounting on horse-backe, and raising his whole Armie, euery man desirous of reuenge, ranne with bridle on the horse-necke to succour the poore people that were already slaine. And although the Turkes came not in so good time, as to yeeld them any aide, yet came they very fitly to surprise the *Persians*, who beyond all honesty and duetie were ouer-busie in loading themselves, and carrying away the pray that they had recovered.

The place, where the corne was gathered, was as it were almost an Islande, watered with two riuers, *Araxis*, and *Canac*, which with a little compasse fetched-about, discharged it selfe with a very deepe channell into *Araxis*. On the side of *Araxis*, which was the left side of the Turkish host, *Dreuis Bassa* kept one wing: on the side of *Canac*, being the right side, did *Beyran Bassa* holde another wing: and *Mustassa* himselfe led the middle of the battell. which if the *Persians* would not haue encountered, then should they haue beene constrained to haue runne and drowned themselves either in *Canac*, or in *Araxis*. As soon then as the Persian Capitaines had descried *Mustassa* with all his forces making hast towards them, and saw such a multitude of souldiers, of ensignes, of speares, and of fyre-workes, and withall remembered the late ouerthrow in the Champaines of *Childer*, then beganne they to beethinke themselves

The Persians repent their long aboad.

themselves how much better it had beene for them to haue vsed more speede in departing out of that Demy-Island, and so with suddaine dispatch avoiding their enemies forces to haue contented themselves with the late slaughter of those sclauiish and seruile people, and not to haue stayed for so vnequall and importunate assault. And being excited therevnto by a certaine intrinsicall and naturie vertue, they discoursed among themselves, whether it were better for them to flie, or with so great disadvantage to ioyne battell with them, and rather to die with an honorable death, then to liue with reproache of a shamefull flight. At the last, whiles euery man was thus tossed with the tempestes of thoughtes, they resolved vtterly to preserve themselves for the state of Persia, and to continue their liues for the great and waighty affaires of that kingdom: deeming it rather to be a point of high wisdom, then of shame, not to lay open their security and the honour of their publike and priuate causes, to most certaine and vndoubted losses, and miserable issues.

Great thoughtes that troubled the Persians. The Persians resolve to abandon the fight, and to flye.

But in taking their prepensd flight they discovered new difficulties: for that they were in such sort straightened within the saide Demy-Island, as they had none other ground left, but onely that, which beyond their expectations the Turkes had already possessed, and so being greatly perplexed with these troubles, euery man began to betake themselves to their owne priuate conceites. *Tocomac* and *Emir-Chan*, with other Capitaines of the army were the first that tourned their backes, and some by wading, and some by swimming passed ouer *Canac*, beinge greatly holpen by the valour and agilitie of their adventurous and gallant horses. The example of these Capitaines moued many other to doo the lyke, though with

Difficulties in taking their flight.

The Persian Capitaines saue themselves by passing the riuers.

The Persians
drowned in
the River.

The Persians
in fight shew
great signes
of valour.

Conquerours
doo but little
regard their
promises, be-
ing geuen to
spoile.
The Demye
Island made
the perpetuall
grauel of a
courageous
& warlike
people.

a contrary fortune: for that their horses being out of breath and windlesse, there remained a great number of them drowned in the waters. At which fearefull spectacle, others being amased, euen as it were in a headlong rage & fury, perceiuing that if they should fly, vnavoydeable death was present before their eies, setled all their trust in resisting, and reposing all their hope euen in despaire, they shewed vnspeakeable actes of valor in fighting. But what can one doo against a hundred? For they also without any great adoo were all destroyed, though with lucke and fame farre vnlike their fellowes. But what helperth Fame in such a medley, where the names of those are not knowne, that either fight manfully or flie effeminately? Others at last resolved to yeeld themselves without drawing sword or bending bowe, imagining that by so doing they might recouer themselves, together with such spoiles and riches, as they had, whatsoeuer they were. But what benefite can gold and precious stones be to a few in the tumult and confusion of many conquerours, who being geuen rather to vniust rauening then to vpright piety, doo but hardly make accompt of their promises, much lesse to be liberall of that which they haue not promised? In this sort did the Persian armie rest discomfited and destroyed: & so this Demy-Island being first stayned with the blood of the enemy, & afterward with the slaughter of the neighbour and proper inhabitant, was the perpetuall sepulcher of a courageous and warlike people.

The Persian Capitaines fled away in great sorrow and affliction for their vnexpected ouerthrowe, and knowing now assuredly whether the designementes of the Turkes tended, who were already turned towardes *Siruan*, they resolved in as ill plight as they were, to retourne home to
The III. Booke.

their

their places of abroad, which they had forsaken, and to certify the king in *Casbin* thereof with all speed, to the end that (if he could) he should send such prouision as might bee sufficient to annoy the enemies army: whereof (as *Emir Sultan* a Marchant of *Azemia*, of great traffike, of a very sincere mynd and affection, and a man of free speech, being my very familiar frend, hath often tymes confessed vnto me in *Aleppo*) *Tocomac* sayled not to write vnto his king, that there was slaine of the Turkes a great number: and so meaning to excuse his late ouerthrow, & to make his losse to seme more tollerable, he made shew of a great slaughter of the Turkes in this second battell also: although in very deed, with the miserable and totall destruction of his owne slender Armye, the losse of the Turkes in this fight did not exceede the number of three thousande besides the slaughter of ten thousand victuailers. And when this certificat was made to the King, euery one of the saide Persian Capitaines, with the lycence of *Tocomac* departed to their seuerall gouernementes, as *Emianguli-Chan* to *Genge*, *Serap-Chan* to *Nasruan*, *Tocomac* himselfe to *Reiuan*, & all the rest to other Citties, to the gouernement whereof by the commandement of the king they were before appointed, & so remayned in expectation of new warrantes from *Casbin*.

The losse of
the Turkes
in this battell.

The Persians
withdraw
themselves to
their seuerall
gouerne-
mentes.

In the meane while the Turkes had retired themselves againe to their Tentes, from whence by occasion of this vnexpected battell they were sodenly raised, & now was *Mustassa* with all his troupe arriued at the bankes of the riuer *Canac* on the same syde, where he must beginne to passe ouer, as before is mentioned. For being mynded to go vpto the Cittie of *Eres*, which first of all offreth it selfe to your sight, when ye trauell on that syde to *Suma-*
The III. Booke.

O 3

cha,

Mustaffa
commandeth
all his hoast
to passe ouer
the Riuer
Canac.

The souldiers
in a tumult
threaten Ge-
nerall Mu-
stafsa.

The answere
of Mustaffa
to his souldiers

chia, there was no remedy but he must needes passe ouer the foresayde water of Canac: a thing very displeasing to the whole Army, and yet could not bee auoyded, if hee would execute the commandementes of his king. And therefore (fall out whatsoeuer could fall) making straye proclamation ouer all the hoast, that euery man should bee ready the next day to wade ouer the riuer, he prepared himselfe for that passage. At this proclamation sodenly all his people arose in a tumult, with great pride ranne beefore the Generall, with iniurious termes reprooued his folly and inhumanity, protested ytter daunger to himselfe, and vniuersall confusion to the whole army, & to be briefe, praied him that he would surcease from proceeding any furdur, vnlesse he would replenish the whole campe with carcasses & spoiles. But neither could their threatnings nor yet their entreaties any thing moue the resolute mynde of the Generall, who gaue them none other answere but this: *That so had Amurat appointed: that if all the rest should shew themselves unwilling to obey their soueraigne, he would not, and in duty thought hee could not doo the lyke, but in truth would be the first man to attempt and performe that which all they so abhorred and reprobred: That not in Idleness & ease, but in great paine and difficult enterprises true souldiers are discovered, who ought neuer to be as frayde of chaunging brittle lyfe with euerlasting honour, nor to auoide death, if it should happen, for the seruice of their King. And for his owne part he did most earnestly pray them, that after he had attempted the passage of the water, if any thing hapned to him otherwise the well and to be alyue, then he might bee carried dead to the other syde of the riuer, to the end that if hee could not execute the commandement of his King, whiles he was alyue, yet he might performe the same at least, when he was but a speechlesse and a lyfelesse*

The III. Booke.

lesse carcasse: and for making too great an accompt of his owne lyfe, the desyre of his King might not in any sorte be defrauded. Diuers and sundry murmurs and whisperings followed vpon this speech of the Generall, who notwithstanding the next morning (imitating therein the example of Alexander, in making his army to passe ouer Tigris, if wee may beleue Quintus Curtius,) did first of all wade ouer the deep and swift riuer himselfe, and presently after him waded ouer all the Bassaes of the Campe, and with them all their slaues: by whose example the rest also at the last were induced to doo the lyke, and so continued till by the darkenesse of the night their passage was interrupted: which was the occasion, why more then halfe the army could not get ouer, besydes that their publike treasure & artillary were yet also on this side of the water. But this passage being attempted with very great tumult and disorder, & no regard had to the places that were wadeable, it came to passe, that about eight thousand persons, being carried away by the violence of the riuer, were miserably drowned, with the great outcry, of all the hoast. The lyke happened also to many mules, cammelles & Sumpter-horses, vpon whose backs diuers persons being mounted, because they were desyrous to passe dry ouer the water, were likewyse headlong ouerwhelmed therein.

With great complaintes and blasphemous cursinges was the whole night spent on this syde Canac, and euery man being euen desperate knew not what to doo to auoid that dangerous passage, whose feare and grieve the example of their vnfortunate fellowes that were drowned did greatly increase: And no doubt some pestilent sedition had ensued thereupon, that would haue bredde much harme to the Turkish affayres, if by the death and overthrow

The III. Booke.

Lib. 4.
Mustaffa first
of all wadeth
ouer the deep
Riuer Canac.

Night was
the occasion
that more
then halfe the
hoast went
not ouer.

8000. Turkes
drowned in
wading ouer
the riuer of
Canac.

throw of those that were drowned, there had not beene discovered a shallow Forde, that assured safe passage to those that were left: wherein they were much more happy then their former fellowes, in that their delay had wrought them great ease. For in the passage, which the people made that followed *Mustaffa*, the grauel of the bottom of the riuer being raised and remoued by the heavy hooues of the cattell, was driuen downe along the saide water to a place, where by great good hap there was also a Foorde, and there gathering it selfe together in a heape, had in such sort raised the depth of the channell, that it made as it were a shelve for their commodious passage, so that the remnant of the people, carriages, and artillery passing ouer the same, there was not so much as one man that perished. And in this manner did the Turkish people passe ouer *Canac*, and vpon the bankes thereof did they rest themselues that day, and the next, and there made stay till the whole army was mustred and set in order. From thence remouing themselues all together, not hauing any meanes at all to fynde victuailles eyther for themselues or for their beastes, they encamped the day following in certaine barren champaines, where there was neyther corne nor cattell, neyther could they learne that in those quarters there were any villages at all. By meanes whereof the hunger of their beastes encreasing greatly, (a thing affirmed by dyuers faithfull & credible souldiers that were present in those calamities) they were constrained to geue to their horses and mules the leaues and stalkes of verie drie and withered reedes, & such other like thinges of no sustenance at all. And the men themselues were faine to satisfy their hunger with those vttermost reliques, that they went vp and downe

The III. Booke.

A meruelous
kind of
Foord.

The calamities of the
Turkish
hoast,

piking & gathering out of those poore victuailles, which now by corruption were abhominable to mans nature. There was not a man in the whole army, but perceaued that it was high tyme to rid himselfe of these inconueniences: howbeit to returne backward was odious to them all, in respect of the present famine, and to go on forward was more terrible vnto them, in respect of the great feare that they had, to continue some longer tyme in these commeneed miseries. Notwithstanding needes must they follow the fortune of their captaines: among whom *Mustaffa* the next morning, before all the rest, set himselfe forward on his determined iourney. Hee had not long marched onward, but there was discovered good store of sundry plantes, & neere vnto them a very large plaine all greene and flourishing, & garnished with many trees: by the onely sight whereof euery man was refreshed for the hope of good harbour, and hastened their paces somewhat more then ordinary, vntill they were entred into those champaines, being abundantly fertile in all kind of corne and fruites, that could be desyred of hungry man and horse. In this place did euery man satisfy his appetite with meat and his body with rest, and forgot in parte the calamities and damages that were outpassed: and the next morning with willing mindes they were all ready to follow *Mustaffa*, who remouing his campe, and leading it still through the fruitfull and pleasant fieldes, abounding in all thinges necessary for mans sustentation, arriued at the city of *Eres*, beeing (as we haue before declared) the chiefe citie in that coast of *Siruan*, as you tra-
uaile from *Georgia*.

The Turkes
refreshed
with victu-
aile, & other
commodities.

The Turkes
at Eres in
Siruan.

This citie of *Eres* was forsaken by a great number of her inhabitants, as soone as it was noyed that the Turkes
The III. Booke.

Eres abandoned by the
Persians.

P

were

were come to *Canac*, and they all followed the Standards of *Samir Chan*, Gouverneur of the said cittie, being allured thereto by the example of *Ares Chan*, (whome also a good while before the Persian King had trusted with the government of the cittie of *Sumachia*, and as soone as he likewise heard that *Mustassa* was come to *Canac*, hee abandoned his owne cittie, and withdrew himselfe into the mountaine, as a safe and safe place,) There did *Samir Chan* remaine with him, and other the Gouvernours of *Sechi*, and other places of the said Prouince, all of them, ioyned together, attending the end of these great nouelties. So that the entrie of the Turkes into *Eres*, was not by the enemies sword in any sort disturbed, nor yet with any spoyle, that were found therein, any thing enriched, for that the people had carried away with them all the best thinges they had, and every man endeouored in the common losse of his countrey, to keepe and preserue his priuate goods at the least, and his owne proper life. Two & twenty dayes did *Mustassa* remayne vnder *Eres*: in all which time, although somewhat long, there was not one man that felt any inconuenience in any matter of fort, but during those dayes employed himselfe to the erecting of a Fortresse within the said cittie: vpon whose walles were placed two hundred peeeces of shot, and for the custodie thereof was appointed *Comas Bassa*, one of the voluntarie Captaines, with fife thousand souldiers.

In this meane time, for that the cittie of *Sumachia*, now called *Sumachi*, stood not farre distant from thence, it being the Metropolitall cittie of that Prouince, and of great accompt, because it standeth vpon the way that leadeth to the cittie of *Derbent*, now called *Demircapi*, but in tymes past *Alexandria*,) *Mustassa* commanded *Osman Bassa*,

Samir Chan & *Ares Chan* Persian Gouvernours withdraw themselves into the mountaines.

The entrie of the Turkes into *Eres* not disturbed by the enemy, nor enriched by spoyle and victory.

Mustassa remaineth in *Eres* 22. daies.

Eres fortified & fenced by *Mustassa*.

for one also of the voluntarie Captaines, as before we haue noted, to possesse that cittie with ten thousand men, vnder the tytle of Visier, & Gouverneur Generall of *Siruan*: Giuing him further in charge, that in any case hee should cleere the passage to *Derbent* abovesaid, and so giue present aduertisement to the Tartarians of his arriual, who without all doubt hauing passed through *Colchis*, could not choose but by this time be arriued in those quarters, at the least: for so had they promised to *Amurath*, with all faith and fidelitie. *Osman* departed to *Sumachia* accordingly, and had friendly entertainment of those that remayned there, and were determined to commit their liues to the fury of the conquerers: so that he did presently surprise the cittie, entreating all the inhabitantes in friendly maner, without doing or suffering any outrage to be done vpon them. Which vsage being vnderstood by the *Alexandrians*, (a people that by naturall inclination, in ceremonies, in worship, and in obseruation of their religion, liued not as Persians in deede, but subject to the Persians, & principally to *Mustassa Sultan*, the gouernor of that cittie, & yet for all that being of the Turkish beliefe:) they sent presently to offer themselves to *Osman*, beseeching him, to receiue them into his protection, and in all occasions to defend them from the Persians.

Of all these matters *Mustassa* had aduertisement before he departed from *Eres*: from which place, (after hee had finished his Fortresse, his Garrisons, and all his Rampiers, being informed of these good adventures, solicited thereto by the *Giannizzars* and the people of *Grecia*, and somewhat enforced so to do by the season of the yeare which was unfit for long a voyage as was yet behind, & perswading himselfe that he should leaue his affairs there

Mustassa appointeth *Osman* bassa to keepe *Sumachia* & *Derbent*.

Osman Bassa friendly entertained at *Sumachia*.

The *Alexandrians* yeeld themselves to the Turkes.

Mustassa de-
parteth from
Eres.

A bridge
built vpon
Canac to
passe ouer.

Sahamal
yeeldeth him-
selfe to
Mustassa.

Mustassa by
night looseth
his way.

Mustassa in
the country
of Leuent.

in good and reasonable state) with great confidence hee departed, and turned his course towardes the country of *Leuentogli*, otherwise called *Alexander the Great*, as he had entreated him to do in his late passage to *Siruan*: and hauing traueiled a long iourney, he lodged at the foote of a certaine mountaine, where hee wanted no kind of good victuailles: And from thence sent Engines and Pioners to make a bridge ouer *Canac*, that his Armie might passe ouer without any daunger. On the hether side of the riuer they tooke vp their lodgings: and from that place *Mustassa* sent to giue notice of his arriuall to *Sahamal*, the inhabitant and Lord of the mountaine of *Brus*, (whereof we haue heretofore made often mention:) who presently came to yeeld himselfe as vassall to the Turkes, and being entertained with his accustomed pompe, and rewarded with apparrell, sword, battell-Axe & Target all guilt, he tooke his leaue and returned to his old withdrawing places of the mountaine.

After that *Sahamal* was gone, *Mustassa* departed also, and trauelled forward by night, because hee would not loose the opportunity of faire wether: but so it happened through ill guiding, that hee lost his way, and knew not whither he went, being conducted through rough waies, and vneasy and difficult passages, whereby he was enforced to set vp his tentes, & wait for daylight: which rising very cleere did manifest vnto them, that they were now entred into the countries of *Leuentogli*. And therefore he caused proclamation to be made fourth with ouer all his army, that vpon paine of death no man should be so hardy, as to molest or disquiet anie of the subiectes of *Alessandro*, but to haue good respect vnto them, and to entreat them with all currefy. The day following he still continued

nued his iourney in the saide country of *Schender*, where he wanted no victuailles, and the rather for that the same day there arriued from *Zaghen* certaine embassadors of *Alessandro*, with great aboundance of cattell, of corne, of fruits, & of other relief, which was sent by him for a presēt to the Generall, with a solemne excuse that he came not himselfe, because the infirmitie of his body would not suffer him. Wherewithall *Mustassa* rested satisfied, and leauing the cittye of *Zaghen* on the right hand, he caused the messengers of *Alessandro* to guide him, and so tooke his way toward *Teflis*: and by them was so directly conducted, that within the space of three daies, without eyther hunger or thirst, or any other inconuenience of his army, they brought him to *Teflis*, from whence they returned homewards, being wel contented for their paines by *Mustassa*.

But those that he had left at *Teflis* before for the custody thereof, he found so miserably plagued with famyne, that they were constrained to eat Cattes and Dogges, and Sheepeskinnes, & such like vnwonted & strange things. Many of them also he found sicke, and some dead, by reason that they could not obtaine lycence of *Mahamet Bassa* their captaine to go out of the castle to provide victuaile, for feare of the enemyes. By whose prouidence such care was taken for their corne, fruit, and cattell, that, although those of *Teflis* had issued out for that purpose, yet was it all preserued in very safe and secure places without any daunger. Which thing was credibly certified to me not by one alone, but by many of the Georgians, with whom I was familiarly acquainted both in respect of my trafficke with them, and also of my practise in phisicke. But *Mustassa* refreshed and relieved them all with words,

The embassa-
dors of Le-
uentogli
with reliefe
& presentes
receaued by
Generall
Mustassa.

Mustassa at
Teflis.

The famine
of the souldi-
ers left in the
Castle of
Teflis.

with

Mustaffa receueth them with meate, money and wordes.

Great snowes breed many annoyances to the Turkes.

The Turkes dispersed by cold weather.

The Georgiansly in wait for the Turkes.

Hossain Bey the authours friend,

with money and with meate, and gaue them plenty of all thinges. And after he had remayned there two daies, he raised his army, and put himselfe in the way towards the champaignes that were subiect to the said city, to put all to sworde and fyre, as indeede he did. Onely the sepulchers (wherein rested the bones and ashes of *Simons* progenitors; and neere whereunto he tooke vp his first lodging) were least vnhurt and vntouched, by the Turkish fury. The day following they trauelled ouer rough and ragged mountaines full of a thousand difficulties, which were the more encreased by wonderful great snowes that were fallen, by meanes whereof, together with diuers other annoyances, many souldiers, horses, cammells and mules did perish. In this distresse they continued two whole daies, during which tyme all the people were fallen into such a disorder, that forgetting the feare of their enemies country, without any regard or respect, euery man tooke vp his seuerall lodging aparte, and one on this syde, and another on that syde shrowded himselfe, where he might fynde either some thicke bushe, or some small cottage, or some quyet valley to shelter him from the winde, from the snow, and from the stormes.

But certaine Georgian captaines (and peradventure euen the same, that had before so euill entreated the people of *Soria*;) hauing sent out scouts to watch the Turkish army from time to time, & being thoroughly certified of the disorder wherein it was, did ioine theselues together, & in the night approched neer vnto it, secretly, quietly & boldly searching out some opportunity, how they might coole the burning desyres of their enemies blood. In the end hauing obserued *Hossain Bey*, my good friend, and acquaintance, among many others the sonne of fruitfull

The III. Booke.

Giambulat

Giambulat, (I terme him fruitfull, for that in one night there were borne vnto him 7. children by diuers women, & he himselfe saw at on time alieue fourescore & six heires of his owne body begotten,) that hee had withdrawn himselfe alone vnder certain mountaines to defend himselfe from the storme & the wind: they were perwaded that this was a lit occasion to gaine them some spoiles: and hauing assaulted him, they slew all his slaues, and all his squadrons of souldiers, tooke a great booty of many loades of mony and apparrell, led away with them all his horses, and whatsoever els they could fynde, and scarce gaue him any leasure to saue himselfe, by flying into the Tentes of *Beiran Bassa*. And it may be that he had also remained for a pray to the Georgians, had it not beene for *Hala Bey*, captaine of the *Zaini* and *Spahini* of *Aleppo*, an old man as any among the Turkes, of an extraordinarie bounty, of a sincere mind, of free speech, and well exercised in scates of Armes, from whome I liberallie receaued many particularities of these thinges that I haue written. This man being wakened by the noise, & raising the people of *Beiran Bassa*, ran out himselfe to meet *Hossain Bey*, and shewed him the way to escape as afore. And vpon this rising of the Turkes, the Georgian retired themselves with their gotten pray, and so the rest had leasure to withdraw themselves together into more sure & safe places.

The next morning the Campe removed, and in the euening came to a castell called *Ghiurchala*, where it stayed a whole day to make prouision of victuaile, which was attempted by sending many of their slaues abroad into the fieldes, conducted by the men of the said castell. In the meane while, there arriued certain embassadors from

Fruitfull *Giambulat*, that saw 86. children alieue at once that were his heires.

Hossain Bey assaulted by the Georgians, & greatly discomforted.

Hala Bey the authours friend.

Hossain Bey escapeth to the tentes of *Beiran Bassa*.

The nephew
of Simon
yeeldeth him-
selfe faynedly
to Mustassa.

one that was then called the nephew of *Simon*, signifying to *Mustassa*, that (if it would stand with his good pleasure) their lord would come to salute him, & to offer himselfe vnto him as his vassaile. whereof *Mustassa* was very glad, and declaring vnto them that his coming should be very acceptable vnto him, he sent them backe againe with presentes and curteous wordes. But although hee was expected all that day, yet made he not his apparance, & indeed all those that were sent out into the fieldes for reliefe, were miserably hacked in peeces, to the great griefe of *Mustassa*, thinking himselfe too much abused by those fained embassadors, who in truth proued to bee cunning and craftie spies, rather then embassadors.

Hunger a-
mong the
Turkes.

The straite of
the moun-
taines of Ge-
orgia, watted
by Araxis.

Misery of the
Turkes.

From this place the army departed with great hunger, ouer diuers vneasy hilles and rough places of the Georgian, where they were faine oftentimes to rest themselves, & at last came to the confynes of the widdowes territory, vpon the feast day of the Turkes *Ramadan*. In the entrance whereof they must needs passe through a narrow strait betweene certain mountaines, where the riuer crangleth it selfe with a thousand tournings and windings about the low valley: A very difficult place and indeed so narrow, that no more then one man alone could passe through it. Betweene this strait, and a very thicke and hilly wood, they lodged vpon the banks of the said riuer, and from thence the next morning they remoued, and trauelled ouer very steep mountaines, and wooddy Forrestes, ouer ice and snow more harde then marble-paumentes, and ouer other hanging rockes, in such miserable sorte that many camelles, mules and horses, as well for carriage as for saddle, fell downe headlong into the whirlpittes of the riuer to their vtter spoyle. Through this ruinous

The III. Booke.

nous craggies, and dyuers other miseries they iournyed all the next day, and after that, another day also as miserable and dammageable to the Army as the former: but at last being shrewdly spoiled and ill handled by hunger, foyled and slaughtered by their enemies, & afflicted with the harde season and situation of the place, they arriued within the territories that lay vnder *Altunchala*, the widdowes Pallace, where they had all manner of desyred reliefe, for all the miseries that they had endured since their departure from *Chiurchala* vntill this place, being the space of fixe daies, which ordinarily, if it had beene a common trauelled way, would haue beene performed in one onely daies iourney.

The Turkes
releued at
Altunchala.

The Widdow with her elder sonne *Alessandro*, came downe from the Castel, and went to the pauillion of *Mustassa*, offering him dyuers presentes, and promising vnto him all faithfull obedience. *Mustassa* receaued her curteously, and declared vnto her the good entertaynement, that he gaue to her yonger sonne *Manuechiar*, that went with him to *Siruan*, who being there present shewed euident token thereof to his mother. *Mustassa*, (dissembling for the present tyme his priue displeasure, that hee bare the widdows son *Alessandro*) embraced him courteously, and praied her that she would bee pleased to leaue him also there with him, for that it should turne to both their contentmentes, signifying further vnto her, that he would send both her sonnes to *Constantinople* to *Amurath*, with letters of credence for their yeelded obedience, for their fauour shewed to his army in giuing them so secure passage, and so many helpes, & lastly for their good deserts, the rather that by the said Sultan they might be honourably entertained, and enriched with honours & dignities.

The Widdow
and her sonne
Alessandro
come to
Mustassa.

The III. Booke.

Q The

The Widdow
leaueth both
her sonnes in
Mustaffas
handes.

The Widdow, although her mynd was herewithall sore troubled & perplexed, yet outwardly in her countenance shewed her selfe to be pleased, and seemed curteously to yeeld, what she was of necessity constrained to grant: as well because *Mustaffa* had one of her sonnes already in possession, as also for that her selfe & her whole state were now in his power, & as it were at his deuotion: & therefore leauing both her sonnes behind her, she returned to her Castell.

The Turkes
at Chisca

Some dye for
cold.

The Turkes
at Olti.

The Turkes
at Hassancha-
lasi.

Mustaffa, after hee had stayed in that place with his army two whole dayes without feeling the want of any thing departed thence towarde *Chars*, and so did all the rest, who hauing now no feare of the enemy, as being in a sure and frendly countrey, deuided themselves into seuerall companyes, by fives, by twenties, by fifties in a troupe, as euery man thought it best and conuenient. The first day they lodged at *Chisca* in the widdowes countrey, where they wanted no manner of necessities, but had most plentifull abundance of all thinges. From thence they tooke their next lodging vnder certain rough mountaines by which they trauelled two whole dayes through many difficulties, where some of them also dyed for cold. Then they came to *Messeardachan* sometimes belonging to the Georgianj, but now to the Turkes: & so to *Bincardacan*, belonging also to the Turkes, where they kept the feast of *Ramadan*, which till now they could not celebrate. And from thence to *Olti* a Castell also of the Turkes, where the *Sangiaccq*, that gouerneth those quarters is resident, a countrey very fertile in all thinges, well situated, and very conuenient for these and greater passages. From *Olti* by the way of *Neneruan* in two daies they arryued at *Hassanchalasi*, a Castell likewyse of the Turkes,

The III. Booke.

Turks, called also *Passin*, and from thence afterward they came to *Erzurum*, with the great reioicing of the whole army, which was there presently discharged by *Mustaffa*, without any numbring or mustring at all, and so they returned all home into their owne countries.

But *Mustaffa* settled himselfe in *Erzurum*, dispatching Poastes with letters of plentifull aduertysementes to the king touching all thinges that had passed, but yet in such sort that he magnified his owne exploits without measure: and among diuers other newes, that were scarce true, which he wrote, one was, That *Teflis*, which hee had taken, was in greatnes & beauty equal vnto *Damasco*, besydes the situation that was exceeding strong. He certified him also of the battelles that he had with the *Persians*: the obedience that he receaued of the *Georgiani*, & the *Siruanians*: the stirres and insurrections of the people of *Constantinople* & of *Greece*: the Fortresse built at *E-Bassa*, and in *Sumachia* with *Osman Bassa*: the offers of the *Alexandrians*: and in brieve whatsoever els had passed, & whatsoever he had taken from the enemy. Neither did he faile to propound to *Amurath* his opinion, what hee thought conuenient to be attempted the next yeare, for the strengthening of those places that he had already conquered, and for preparing the way to newe enterpryses. And principally he put him in mind of a fortification to be made at *Chars*, a place very fit for any passage to *Georgia* or *Armenia*, by situation fruitfull and commodious both for men and cattell. And withall he sente vnto the said king, the widdowes two sonnes *Manucchiar* & *Alesandro*, signifying that they would bee alwaies ready to performe whatsoever it should please him to command

The III. Booke

Q 2

them

The Turkes
in their re-
turne at Er-
zurum.
The army
discharged by
Mustaffa to
winter them-
selues.

Mustaffa
magnifyeth
his owne ex-
ploites to A-
murath.

A fortification
to be at
Chars.

The widdowes
sonne sent to
K. Amurath.

them, and that he had receaued in their country all good entertainement and frendly welcome not omitting for all that, to declare his opinion, that *Manucchiar* was a meeter manne for the gouernement then *Alessandro*, for that *Manucchiar* had shewed greater valour, & was more willing and ready to serue him then his brother: and the rather because it was a generall opinion, that *Alessandro* had his hand in those treasons and mischeefes which happened to the victuailers and to the Sorians in *Georgia*. Greatly did the king commend the diligence and vertue of *Mustassa*, and pleased himselfe highly with this conceit, that of these pretty beginnings there might growe mighty conquestes and singular successes to the enlargement of his Empyre, and hoped that by this meanes hee should bee able to surpassse the glory of his predecessors, and the more his thoughtes were occupied about these warres, the lesse did he trouble himselfe with thinking how to annoy *Europe* with his forces.

But now it is high time to returne to the narration of the accidentes that happened in *Siruan*, where (we told you) *Caitas Bassa* was leaft at *Eres*, and *Osman Bassa* at *Sumachia*, with expresse order, that *Osman* should call the Tartarians to his aide: the Tartarians, (I say,) that hauing leaft the Fennes of *Meotis*, and the vnmountable shores of the Blacke Sea, passed ouer the rockes vpon *Colchis*, & surueighed the frozen craggess of *Caucasus*, were now arriued in the confynes of *Siruan*, and there staid, attending the commandement of the Turkes, to inuYTE them to spoile and victory. Among the Tartarian Precopenes, there was one *Abdilcherai*, a Capitaine of great valour and fame, a yong man of comely countenaunce and well sett of person, who, according to the faithfull promise of *Tartarchan*

Caitas Bassa at *Eres*, and *Osman Bassa* at *Sumachia* in garrison.

The Tartaiā neere vnto *Siruan* attending the commandement of the Turkes.

Abdilcherai the Tartarian Capitaine, a faire young man, and of noble blood.

The III. Booke.

tarchan

tar-Chan (surnamed *Mahamet*) geuen to *Amurath*, brought with him about thirty thousand souldiers, his subiectes, with a full resolution to attempt whatsoeuer any Turkish capitaine should command him in the name of *Amurath*. And therefore *Osman* called him, and inuited him to succour the forces of his king, and to furdere these beginnings of his glory, & these his conquestes, or rather these magnificentall and famous termes of victory. Hee aduised him withall, that as soone as he had arriued in the countrey of *Siruan*, before he passed any furdere, he should send aduertisements of his arriuall there, by two or three seuerall letters dispatched by two or three seuerall messengers for the more security, to the end that he might be againe informed what course he should take, to make his coming more profitable and more glorious. All which was not onely thoroughly vnderstood, but also most diligently put in execution by *Abdilcherai*, and therefore hauing entred the Iron gates, where *Derbent* standeth, (which by the Turkes at this day is called *Demircapi*, and signifyeth, *The Gates of Iron*,) and from thence passing on into the countrey of *Siruan*, there he staid, and gaue aduertisement thereof to *Osman*, as he was appointed.

Osman calleth *Abdilcherai* and aduerteth him what to doo.

The Tartarians at *Demircapi*.

Now in the meane time, that *Mustassa* hauing subdued *Sumachia* and *Eres*, was departed out of the confynes of *Siruan*, *Ares-Chan* (who after was gouernour of *Sumachia*;) and other Gouernours of that region, of whom we made mention before, hearing the newes of the departure of the Turkish Generall, were determined to returne to their forsaken country, & to find some meanes, whereby they might in parte (at the least) reuenge the great injuries, wherewith *Ares-Chan* was most greiuously offended and damnified, and so with victorie ether of spoile

Ares-Chan the Persian & other captaine seeke to annoy the Turkes.

The III. Booke.

Q 3

THE III. BOOKE

or of slaughter vpon *Osman Bassa*, to gaine honour & commendation with the Persian king, by the publike shame and confusion of his enemyes. For in deed great was his anger and wrath; when hee beheld his owne Citty remaine for a pray to the enemy, and was not hable by any outward acte, to shew any signe of his greefe. And so having passed vnder *Sumachia*, (not far from which place he had put to the sworde som fewe victuailers of *Osman*, that more boldly then wisely had issued out of the citty,) and being with all his people encamped in certaine freshe fieldes, a little on this syde of the said *Sumachia*: I knowe not how, but he was so well fauoured by good fortune, that he surprysed certaine spies or messengers, sent from *Abdilcherai*, who first went to carry the news to *Osman*, of the arriual of the Tartarian Captaine, and according to the order taken betweene them, to knowe his pleasure, what should be put in execution. These Tartarians were brought before *Ares-Chan*, who after much torture disclosed the letters that they carried: which the Persian captaine read, and considering the great number of the Tartarians that were come, (for the letters made mention of thirtie thousand) he was vtterly resolved not to stay any longer in those quarters, but presently raysted his Campe, & retired towards *Canac*, meaning from thence to certify the Persian king of all these nouelties, and vpon the bankes of the saide riuer to encampe himselfe, attending an answer from his said king.

But *Abdilcherai*, who had now sent out his second, & his third spies, caused *Osman Bassa* by som other means to vnderstand of his arriual, who then very wel perceaued that the suddaine and vnlooked-for departure of *Ares-Chan* could not be vpon any other occasiō, but vpon knowledge
The III. Booke.

of the coming of so great an hoast: but when he saw that the first spies neuer came, which *Abdilcherai* accused in his second letters, he was more then assured thereof. Howbeit the Tartarian captaine was called to *Sumachia*, where sitting in consultation with *Osman*, they fell to agreement that *Abdilcherai* should passe *Canac*, and so onwardecuen vnto *Genge* the countrey of *Emanguli-Chan*, to destroy and waist his fields, his townes and his Citties, bringing away with him, men, cattell and corne, and enriching his arriual by all the most terrible & strange meanes he could. The Barbarian captaine longed to see the time that he might staine his dartes and sworde in the blood of his enemies entrailles, and to charge himselfe with the expected pray: and therefore presently departed, and with poasting iourneyes passed ouer *Canac*, where *Ares-Chan* was as yet encamped, and assaulting him in furious manner, (without allowing him any time of defence,) lyke a rauening and deuouring flame, discomfited all his hoast, and taking him aliue, sent him to *Sumachia* to the garrisons of *Osman*, who forthwith caused him to be hanged by the necke out of a lodging in the same *Diuano* or Councell house, where he had heretofore sitten as Gouernour.

From thence, wading ouer the riuer, and coursing a little aboue *Genge*, he found *Emanguli-Chan*, among certaine vallies, with his wife, all his familie and a great parte of the nobilitie of *Genge*, hunting the wild-boare, & suddenly put him to flight, tooke from him his wife, all the Ladies, and many slaues, and slew many of the rest, that vnawares were brought thither to see such disport. And after roade on to *Genge*, and yeelded it wholly to the furie, licentiousnesse, lust, and wickednesse of his souldiers, who
The III. Booke.

The Tartarians at *Sumachia*, in consultation with *Osman*.

All the Persian army of *Ares-Chan* discomfited by the Tartarians & *Ares-Chan* himselfe hanged.

Genge sacked

The spies or messengers of the Tartarians taken by the encamped Persians.

The Tartarian spies disclose their letters to *Ares-Chan*.

Ares-Chan retireth to *Canac*, fearing the coming of the Tartarians.

left no maner of inhumanitie or crueltie vnattempted, but satisfied all their most immoderate and barbarous affections, that naturall fiercenesse, or present occasion could minister vnto them. And so beeing loaden with spoyle, satiated with bloud, and weary with the slaughter of their enemies, they returned merrily towardes *Siruan*, and passing againe ouer *Canac*, they came on the hether side of *Eres* into certaine low champaines, enuironed about with hilles, and there hauing pitched their tentes, without any feare they setled themselues to sleepe, and with rest to repaire their fore-wearied sences.

In this meane-while, and long before these actions, were the newes come into *Persia* of the battailes that happened in the plaines of *Chielder*, and in the Demi-Islande betweene *Canac* and *Araxis*: Whereupon the Persian king, who neither would nor could goe himselfe in person, hauing gathered new forces, had dispatched *Emirhamze Mirize* his eldest sonne with twelue thousand souldiers to passe into *Siruan*, to see what hurtes the enimie had done, to attempt the reuenge of the forepassed iniuries, but especially and aboue all to punish the villanie of those of *Sechi*, and other Cities of *Siruan*, that voluntarily, and not induced thereunto by any necessity, had yeelded themselues to follow the Religion of the Turkes. The Persian Prince had now remoued from *Casbin*, accompanied with his mother *Begum*, who would needes follow her beloued sonne, and had taken his journey towardes *Siruan*, vnder the guiding and gouernement of *Mirize Salmas*, chiefe of the Sultanes, and had already left behind him the countrey of *Ardouil* and *Caracach*: when hee was certified of the aduertisements come from *Ares-Chan*, touching the arriual of *Abdilcherai* with his populous

The III. Booke.

hoast

hoaste of Tartarians, and thereby was stricken in a greate quandarie, & almost without comfort. But yet his feare was not so great, as it could stay his ambitious and burning desyres of reuenge and glory, but rather enflamed with a fresh anger for the great boldnes of the Tartarians, and set on fire with an vnquencheable thirst of reuenge, hee was encouraged more then euer he was, to prosecute his intended enterpryse: and so came to *Siruan*, still leading people with him from such places as he trauelled through, & hastening his iourney came to *Eres*, long before the king his father did thinke hee would. Very fit & conuenient was this his notable celerity: for that *Caitas Bassa* had boldly issued out of the Fortresse, & went spoiling all the country about, carrying away with him what pray soeuer he mett withall, and committing such other insolences, as hungry souldiers beyond all honesty, vse to doo in strange and fruitfull countries. But when hee was in the midst of his spoyle, and leaste feared his enemyes forces, he was suddenly encountred and assaulted by the said Prince, without hauing any meanes to escape his furie: so that in this extremity and necessity, which brought *Caitas* to a sudden death, ther followed a bloody battell, wherein although the small number of the Turkes shewed many effectes of valour, yet in the fight they were all destroyed with their captaine, who together with his lyfe abandoned the world, the Fortresse, and the spoiles, & left the country free, that was committed to his custody. Which the Persian Duke hauing once againe gotten into his possession, he tooke away the two hundred peeces of shot, that were left in the Forte by *Mustassa*, and presently sent them to *Casbin* to his father.

Mightely did courage encrease, and hardines quicken

The IV. Booke.

R

in

The Persian Prince suddenly arrived at Eres.

Caitas Bassa assaulted by the Persian Prince. A bloody battell. Caitas Bassa & all his people slaine.

Eres recovered by the Persians.

The Tartarians encamped in certaine fieldes on the hether side of Canac, fall to sleepe.

Emirhamze the Persian Kinges eldest sonne, at Siruan.

Begum the Persian Princes mother followeth him in his Army to Siruan.

Regim left
at Eres.

The Persian
prince disco-
uereth the en-
camped Tar-
tarians.

The Tartari-
ans destroyed
& Abdilche-
rai taken aliue
by the Persian
Prince.

The Persian
Prince vnder
Sumachia
threateneth
Osman.

in the Persian Prince by this good successe, and therefore leauing his mother in *Eres*, he followed on his iourney towardes *Sumachia*: but in passing by the way where the Tartarians were encamped, and in descending the hilles, that enuironed the plaine, he discovered their tentes that were there pitched: whereupon he stood in great doubt what to attempt, whether by venturing vpon so populous an hoast to proue the perrill of battaile, or yeelding to so great a danger to returne back into *Persia*. Too great a shame he thought it to returne, & rather then he would with ignominie refuse so good an occasion offred him, he did choose with honour to endaunger himselfe to the most manifest perrill of his lyfe: and therefore descending the hill, and drawing nigh to the paulions of the enemy, he perceaued that all the army was laid downe, enioying their quiet rest and sleep, and their horses, some couched & some standing, but all of them void of saddles or horsemen. Whereupon without any stay, setting spurres to his horse he pricked forward with all his hoast, and in all hast and terrible manner ran to assault the Tartarians, who were now both buried in their spoiles & sleep: & hauing slaine their first watch, and their second, although with some losse, among the tumultuary souldiers hee made an vniuersall confusion, & common slaughter, putting some to flight, killing others, and taking diuers of them Captiues. Among whome was their Captaine *Abdilcherai*, who was taken aliue and sent to the king in *Casbin*, vnder good and sure custodie.

After these victories, the Persian Prince scoured to *Sumachia*, and compassed the Cittie round-about, wherein the new Turkish Captaine *Osman* sate as Gouvernour, to the great reproach of *Persia*: and there encamping himselfe,

selfe, sent word to *Osman*, that if he would yeeld himselfe, he would let him goe with his life and goods: but otherwise if he would stand-out obstinate, and not yeeld vp the cittie, which vniustly he possessed, he should be compelled to surrender it by force, and his life withall. *Osman*, that knew nothing of the Tartarians ouerthrow, but hoped, that entertaining his enimies with faire wordes and goodly promises, the Tartarians might in the meane space returne, and hew them all to peeces, gaue the sayd Prince a most courteous aunswere, saying that hee was very ready to yeeld vp the Cittie, but withall entreated him that he would make stay but for three onely dayes, & graunt him time to put all his thinges in readinesse, that so he might freely depart, as it pleased the prince in courtesy to offer him. The Persian Prince was very glad to receiue such an aunswere, & well knowing the ouerthrow which he gaue to the enemy, did verily perswade himselfe that *Osman* frankly, and with a true & constant mind had made this promise: & therefore expected that what the Turke had offred should be performed. But *Osman* not meaning to commit himselfe to the faith of his enemy, though hee was vtterly resolved to withdraw himselfe into some stronger place, yet was he very curious to find meanes to escape into those safer refuges, and not to come within the fingers of the prince. And therefore somewhat before the assigned terme of the three daies appointed, seeing that the Tartarians whom he looked for, did not appeare, he resolved to saue himselfe by secret flight: because he was sure, that if hee should remaine in *Sumachia*, hee had good reason to feare the inhabitantes themselues would betray him, and that if he should yeeld himselfe to the Prince, he might be by him also easily de-

Osman an-
swereth the
threates of the
Prince.

Osman deter-
mineth to flie
secreatly by a
couert way o-
uer the
mountains,

Osman fly-
ing from Su-
machia,
scapeth to
Demircapi.

The Persian
Prince pun-
nisseth the
inhabitanes
of Sumachia
with diuers
kinds of tor-
tures &
deathes.
The Persian
Prince delibe-
rateth whether
he should re-
turne home
or go forward
to Derbent.

The people of
Sechi & Eres
punished.

ceased. And thereupon determined with himselfe, by the help of the darke night, and a difficult way, (though very couert by reason of the high craggess and bushie places of the mountains neere to *Sumachia*) to take his flight, and withdraw himselfe to *Demircapi*, as hee had already promised to the *Alessandrians*. And so he iourneyed o-uer the said mountaines with great secrecie and silence, leading away with him whatsoeuer either in the tyme of peace or of war he had laid vp in store, and without any daunger or threate of the enemy he escaped safely to the said City of *Derbent*. On the morning the inhabitants of *Sumachia*, without any stay opened the gates of the city to the Persian Duke, who seeing their infidelity, that they were not onely ready to giue entertainment to *Osman*, but also to help him to escape without giuing to the prince any inckling of his departure, did put in execution the effectes of his wrath and indignation which euen in *Casbin* he had conceaued in his minde against them: and with great cruelty did punish the miserable and infortunate Commons of the City, making their houses euen with the ground, destroying both the old and new walls therof, and bringing the whole lande to nought, that sometime was so desired a receit of the Turkes. But when he should depart from thence, he was in a great deliberation with himselfe whether he should passe on to *Derbent*, or returne into *Persia*. The city well fenced, the cold time of winter, and the long voiage that hee should haue had homeward, perswaded the Prince to lay aside the enterprise of *Demircapi*, and so he made choise to returne to *Casbin*. But first for all that, he determined to make his retyre by the people of *Eres* and of *Sechi*, and vpon them as vpon rebelles to inflict deserued punishment. For

The III. booke.

the

the effecting of which his purpose, he made his present repaire thither, and spared neither sexe, nor age, nor any condition, but though the persons were vnequall, yet was the punishment equall to all. And after the execution of this his reuenge and indignation, he with his foresaide mother *Begum*, and with his armie, though somewhat diminished and endamaged, yet victorious and triumphant turned home to *Casbin*.

Young *Abdilcherai* the Tartarian, was kept within the kinges *Serraglio* in good & safe lodgings, neither did he in this his captiuitie find want of any thing, but agreeably to his calling he was appointed a very tolerable and easie imprisonment: which day by day was in such sort enlarged, that he seemed to liue not as a prisoner or captiue, but rather as a companion of those of the court, and as it were in apparant liberty: by which occasion, hauing insinuated himselfe into the loue of *Begum* the kings wife, he spent his time in courting of her, and she again in courting of him in all secreat and couert manner. These mutual affections proceeded in such sorte, and these interchaungeable fauours discovered themselves so openly, that in the *Serraglio* and ouer all the City, there was a ripe report, how shameles *Begum* had participated her bed & her selfe with the Tartarian prisoner. Howbeit neither the king nor the prince knew any thing of it: but the king perceauing that the yong gentleman was generally commended to be valiant and curteous, began to thinke of a matter, which might easily fall out to bee a very great commodity and help to himselfe. For the king fauouring these good qualities, being conioined with proportion of body and nobility of birth, (because he noyed himselfe to be the brother of *Tatar Chan*) perswaded himselfe veri-

The III. Booke.

R 3

ly

Abdilcherai
prisoner in
Casbin well
entertained.

Abdilcherai
the prisoner
enamored, &
beloued of
Queene Be-
gum.

The report of
the loose life
of Begum the
Persian kings
wife.

The deep
consideration
of Mahamet
the Persian
King.

ly, that it could not but proue a meruellous benefite to him, if in steed of a captiue he should make him his kinsman, and giue him his daughter to wife. Whereby (hee was in good hope) there might grow such an amity and vnion between the Tartarian Precopenles, & himselfe, as they would not onely refuse from thenceforth to fauour *Amurath* in these warres, but also that they would bee enemyes vnto him, and in the fauour of *Persia* turne their armes & affections against him. Very considerate assuredly was this cogitation of the king: but yet did it greatly displease the Sultans of *Casbin*: who either because some of them was a suiter to the said daughter, or because they did naturally hate the Tartarian Nation, or els because they had a mischeerous conceit of the loues of *Begum*, did all their endeaours to turne the king from so strange a purpose, and vsed all the arte that possible they could deuise, to cancell out of his mind that detestable opinion, as they thought. Howbeit they could nothing preuaile either with their eloquence or other their cunning deuises: but the king was now vpon the point to make a conclusion of the marriage, when as the Sultans entring into the *Serraglio* with a company of their people, and finding there the vnfortunate Tartarian, ran him through the body, cutting off first his priuie members, and flapping them vpon his mouth after a most barbarous and filthy maner. It is reported that Queene *Begum* likewise was then also murdered by them, but (how soeuer it came to passe) it is a cleere case, that the death of the Tartarian Duke was procured in the maner aboue mentioned, and that the poore lady neuer after that day, saw the light of the sonne. Which whether it was put in execution by the appointment of her husband, who had beene aduertised of all

things

The Kinges
purpose doth
not please the
Sultans of
Casbin.

Abdilcherai
slaine in the
Serraglio of
Casbin, by
the Sultans.

thinges that had happened, or that the Sultanes wrought it for the publike interest: they know best, that haue had the meanes to insinuate themselues into the innermost places of the Realme: For vnto our knowledge neuer came there any other report touching the particulars thereof.

Vpon the death of this Tartarian there sprung vp many ciuill dissentions in Persia, and so therevpon followed also the banishment of some, the flight of others, and sondry miseries, that lighted vpon many. And the great hopes whereby the king was mooued to desire the marriage, were chaunged into most turbulent and troublesome passions, and daungerous calamities, that threatned the vtter confusion of the Persian affaires, to the singular benefit & commodity of *Amurath*. And yet for all these strange accidents, the king ceased not to prepare new forces for the next year, and as much as in him lay to quiet all tumultuous disorders, brideling his owne priuate affections, and the motions of his sonne *Emirhamze Mirize*, and procuring at last a perfect vnitie, which hee thought most necessary to continue the defence of his kingdom. And these were the stirs that happened in the Persian and Tartarian affaires the first year, being the yeare of our saluation, 1578.

But *Osman Bassa* being in *Demir-Capi*, after the returne of the Persian Prince to *Casbin*, continually employed himselfe in laying platfourmes for the enlarging of the conquestes already begon, and for the assuring of those places vnder the gouernement of *Amurath*. Among other occasions, that he tooke for the better establishing of his owne matters, one was the friendship that he entred with *Sahamal*, Lord of the mountaine of *Brui*, of whome

The III. Booke.

Vpon these
murders there
arose many
calamities in
Persia.

Osman
practiseth
friendship
with Sahamal
the Georgian.

Osman mar-
rieth a daugh-
ter of Sahamals.

I haue more then once made mention before. With this man did *Osman* practise many tokens of good will, and he againe interchangeably towards *Osman*, wherevpon there arose a faithfull frendship betwene them, if not thoroughly and inwardly, yet at the least in outward apparence: wherevnto in short time there was added a straight knot of alliance, for that *Osman* tooke to wife a daughter of the sayd *Sahamal*, and hauing celebrated the marriage, hee thought he was sure of all sides, & could not desire greater signes of the sinceritie of his loue. But soone after, grounding himselfe vpon reasonable coniectures, he toke a suspicion that *Sahamal*, for all his inward and outward practises of frendship towards him, might notwithstanding receiue some secreete order from the Persian king to betray him, and to deliuer the Cittie from the Turkish oppression, and so reduce all the Prouince, as before it was, to his ancient deuotion. Among other occasions, whereby *Osman* was moued and induced to suspect it, (al being of great force and importance,) the speeches of his wife (being *Sahamals* daughter) gaue him greatest cause. For she being auished with the valour, riches, and magnanimitie of her husband, would not conceale any thing from him, that she knew was deuised against his life, but freely vttered by word of mouth vnto him, that her father hauing reconciled himselfe to the Persian king, did continue his confederacy and frendship with him, and that letters went betwene them of great matters, and particularly of the affaires of *Siruan*. By this discouery *Osman* *Bassa* grew into a great suspicion, that *Sahamal* should deceitfully practise his death, and perswaded himselfe verily, that the frendship, the mutuall offices of loue betwene them, and the marriage that was made, were wholly directed

rected to that end. This aduertisement *Osman* kept secret to himselfe, and made shew to his wife that hee kept no such reckoning of it, as in deede he did, & ought to doo, being a matter of so great importance: But yet in his hart resolved to keep it in store to his benefite: in such sorte, that not onely the deuise which *Sahamal* had imagined against him was quite frustrated and auoyded, but also *Sahamal* himselfe was punnished with deserued death. And therefore *Osman* caused *Sahamal* to come to him, & thereby feasting him, courting him, & entertaining him, as it became him to vie his beloued father in lawe, and by many other apparant and confident behaviours, he made *Sahamal* strongly presume, that he might take oportunitie to put in execution those designementes, for effecting whereof he had thus procured the frendship and alliance of *Osman*. But *Osman* preuented the intent of *Sahamal*. For hauing inuited him (according to the custome) to come and celebrate with him certain of their solemne feastes, he made the most valorous and trustie of his esquadrons acquainted with his determination, and enioyned them, that as soone as *Sahamal* was entred into his court, euen in the very dismounting from his horse, they should all fall vpon him, cut of his head, and put all his retinue to the edge of the sword. Old *Sahamal* failed not to come accordingly, being inuited by his son in-law and daughter to the solemne feastes, & in his lighting from his horse all was performed that *Osman* had commanded: & forthwith there were dispatched two thousand horsemen to spoile & sacke all the lands, & country of the said Georgian Lord, to the great maruell & astonishment both of farre & neere. The newes thereof came to *Casbin*, euen to the kinges eares, who tooke the matter very grieuously, and

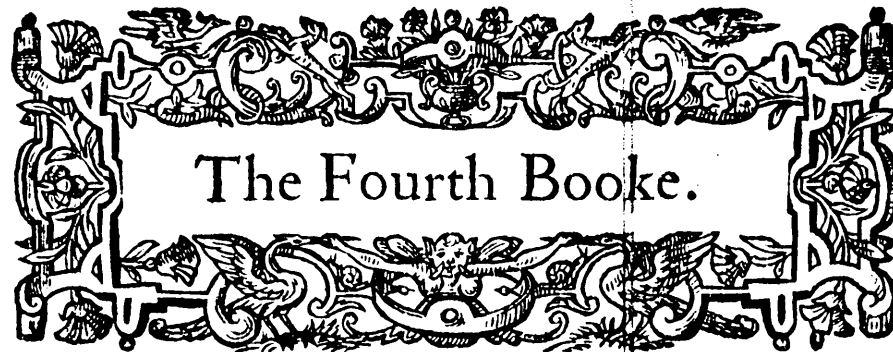
Sahamal be-
headed by
the appoint-
ment of *Os-*
man at *De-*
mir-Capi.
The country
of *Sahamal*
wasted by
*Osman*s peo-
ple.
The Persian
king beway-
leth the death
of old *Sa-*
hamal.

beganne to foresee, that the conquering of that countrey would proue very difficult, and so feared greatly that the Prouince of *Siruan* would remaine still in the Turkes handes. And this was the end of the stirres in *Siruan* the first yeare: & so the winter comming-on very sharply euery man ceased from battell and forraging, forsaking the Forrestes and the fieldes, and attended wholly to the conseruation of such things, as they had already conquered.

And now by this time all these aduertisementes were arriued at *Constantinople*, & *Amurath* had receaued all the particular intelligences of all thinges that had happened. Also *Ali-Vechiali*, who in the port of *Trebizonda* had discharged his appointed carriage, was now returned to *Constantinople*, & made relation of his sayling into *Colchis*, declaring how hee had built a Castell in the Territorie of *Tatiano*, in the confines of *Iurello*, and that he had strengthened and enlarged those borders in *Georgia* on that side also: insomuch as these beginnings seemed to *Amurath*, to bee of great importance: the successe whercof in the continuance of the history, we will describe vnto you in the bookes that follow.

The end of the third booke.

Ali-Vechiali
buildeth a
Castell in
Colchis,



The Fourth Booke.

The Argument.

The deliberations of *Amurath*, what enterprise he should take in hand,
He resolueth thereon, and sendeth out new Commissions.
He causeth *Manuchiar* to be circumcized, and deliuereth his brother
Alessandro into his custody.
In *Persia*, *Emanguli-Chan* maketh new offers to the king.
Simon maketh request to the Persian king.
The causes, why *Simon* chaungeth his Religion.
Simon is dispatched by the Persian to annoy the Turkes in *Georgia*.
The new assembly of the Turkish Armie.
The Insurrection of the Souldiers,
Chars fortified by *Mustaffa*.
Mustaffa falleth into new cogitations for the succours of *Teflis*.
Hassan is sent by him into *Georgia*, where there happeneth a battell full
of losse to the Turkes.
The *Georgians* do assaile the Turkes a fresh,
Alyculi Chan is taken prisoner.
Victorious *Hassan* succoureth *Teflis*, and returneth.
The Stratagemes of *Simon*.
Hassan deceiueth *Alyculi Chan*,
Simon being also deceiued, and all in a rage, vtterly destroyeth the
Turkes.
Hassan arriueth at *Chars*.
Alyculi emprisoned at *Erzurum*.
Abas Mirza accused of rebellion by *Salmas*, who had made the eldest
Persian Prince his Sonne in law.
Mustaffa discharged of his Generall ship.
A comparison betweene *Simon* and *Mustaffa*.
Simon accuseth *Mustaffa*.
Two *Destardari* or Treasurers of *Mustaffa* emprisoned.
The death of *Muhamet* the chiefe Visier, and the maner of his death.

Simon elected the chiefe Visier.
Mustaffa and his two Treasurers released.
Simon elected Generall.
 The Persian king sendeth Embassadors to *Constantinople*.
 The conditions of Peace.
 The arriuall of the Embassador *Maxut-Chan* at *Constantinople*.
 His speech to *Amurath*.
 The Persian king at *Tauris*.
 The leaue of Souldiers in *Persia*.
 The consultations of the Persians.
 The Turcomannes follow the Persians.
Tocomac chosen to goe with an Armie into *Georgia*.
 The treaty of Peace with *Amurath* at *Constantinople*.
Maxut-Chan made Treasurer or Chamberleine of *Tauris*.
Maxut-Chan accused by *Emir-Chan*.
Maxut-Chan flyeth out of *Persia*, and runneth to the Turkes.
Maxut-Chan at *Constantinople*.

THE FOVRTH BOOKE.



Sfoone as *Amurath* was certifyed by the letters of *Mustaffa*, of all that which had happened since his departure, vntill his returne to *Erzurum*, and vnderstoode the battelles that followed, the obedience that was yeelded by the Georgianj, the conquering of citties, the building of new Fortes, and to bee short so good a beginning of so desired an enterprise. Of these prosperouse successes, which by *Mustaffa* were described to bee far greater then in'deed they were, (hauiug geuen order, that *Alessandro* & *Manucchiar*, who were sent vnto him by *Mustaffa*, should bee safely kept with all good entertainment,) he began to cast many deuises in his head touching such matters, as were to bee attempted the next yeare. And especially there arose at one instant many & sundry considerations in his mind, which told him that the manner of sending his army to a newe resting place might be altered diuers waies, & so amidst so many doubtess he remayned in a hammering what to doo. On the one side hee was of opinion, that it must needes be necessary to passe againe into *Siruan*, and to recouer those Citties that were first conquered by *Mustaffa*, and after subdued againe by the Persians. For by that meanes it would come to passe, that the countrey of *Siruan* should remaine quietly vnder the gouernement of *Amurath*, and so the great trauels, the troublesome voyages, the harde conquestes, the blood already spilled, the dangerous perilles, & the losses of the next yeare should
 The IIII. Booke.

The consider-
 ations of
 Amurath.

not altogether be frustrate. But this opinion of his, hee himselfe (euen of himselfe) chaunged, as it is reported, for the great hope that he had in the aide that was promised him by *Tatar-Chan*, who did faithfully assure both him and *Osman*, that he would ouerrunne that region anew, and set forward those notable designementes that he had intended, and gaue his word to doo great matters in his seruice. In respect of this hope (which notwithstanding fell-out to be but vaine, through the default of *Tatar-Chan*, as in place it shalbe shewed) hee laide *Siruan* asyde, and committed the defence thereof to the false promises of the Tartarian, & to the valour of *Osman*: consulting with himselfe, whether it were not expedient to send his army in a strait course to *Tauris*, & to find meanes that there might be erected in that Citty a Fortresse, which being well fenced with artillary and arcubuse, and strengthened with the vertue of valourous souldiers, should neuer be subdued by the power of *Persia*. And so bringing this his purpose to effecte, without the other difficulties, (which if the warre should fall out to bee long, hee must needes endure) there might remaine in his possession all the cuntrey that lyeth betweene *Tauris* and *Erzurum*. The easinesse and speed, wherewith this his purpose might be brought to effect, did fauour his conceit in this pointe wonderfully: for there was no man but thought that the Forte might be built in very few daies, & euery man perswaded him that it was an easy matter for so great an host not onely to pierce into *Tauris*, but also to passe whether soeuer hee would desire. This his designement was of great weight & importance, neither did there want some that priuily and familiarly did aduise him, that it was to be preferred before the rest, and comforted the king to

The IIII. Booke.

goe

goe forward withall, by promising prosperous successe therein.

But albeit that *Amurath* had his minde enkindled with ambitious desires and lustes, burning after glorie, and being pricked on with sharpe spurres of Auarice, longed to carrie away the victorie ouer his enemies landes: Notwithstanding, laying aside all his foresaid consultations, as being too eager and importunate, and weighing his affaires in a more vpright ballance, he deemed it better to preferre the safetie of his Armie, the honor of this warre, and the certaintie of victorie, before the doubtfull speed in attempting the enterprise: and in the end he did resolutely conclude with himself, that he had rather (though but slowly) ouercome & triumph ouer his enemies, then (too soone with shame) to forsake and abandon his designementes begun: and therefore did fully determine first to assure and strengthen his owne borders, to lay open the wayes that were shut against him with woods & bushes, to confirme his conquests that were as yet but doubtfull, to discouer all secret and treacherous ambushments, and to make the voiage plaine and open: rather then to runne headlong with vncertain conceits into another mans countrey, and to conquer places, that were farre off, fenced and defended not onely by mightie enemies, but also by Nature it selfe. In this his resolution he was confirmed by the state of the *Georgiani*, whom he perceaued as yet not to be reduced to such assured obedience, as he durst altogether trust them: and in particular he feared the treacherie of *Daut*, and more then that, the comming of *Simon*. For by these occasions it might fall out, that his Armie going to *Tauris*, might be assailed on the one side by the *Georgiani*, and on the other side by the *Persians*, and so

The IIII. Booke.

S 4

brought

brought into verie great miseries. And this misfortune might happen vnto him, as often as he should haue occasion to send new supplies to the Fortresse.

Mustaffa sent
deth outcom-
maundement
for a new Ar-
mie,

By these deliberations, and with this resolution *Amurath* being moued, he did absolutely signifie to *Mustaffa* by writing, that it was his pleasure, that against the next spring he should prepare all such prouision, as he thought necessarie for the buylding of certayn Fortes in the waies that lead from *Erzurum* into *Georgia*, to the end, that hauing made all those wayes safe and secure, and brought that people into due obedience, the next yeare he might employ his courage to more noble and haughtie enterprises. Hereupon *Mustaffa* presently directed out his precepts to the Cities of *Aleppo*, of *Damasco*, of *Caraemit*, and to all the other places of *Soria* and *Mesopotamia*, that they should take vp cunning workmasters, Pioners, and other such persons, to the number of twentie thousand: And likewise wrote to all the Countries specified in the first Booke, that all their Souldiers, (yea, and in greater number then they were the last yeare) should be in a readinesse the next Spring, to returne to the warre: Whereof he caused the rumour to be spread euen as farre as *Egypt*. He commaunded likewise, that they should make collection of the Taxes and Tenthes, and that in greater quantitie, then it was the yeare before: and made such prouision of Money from the *Chambres* of *Aleppo*, and other places, as he thought necessarie for these purposes.

Alessandro &
Manucchiar
at Constantinople.

In this meane while at *Constantinople*, the two *Georgian* Brethren, the *Widdowes* sonnes, who (as we told you before) were sent by *Mustaffa* to *Amurath*, expected the end why they were come to the Court. As touching *Alessandro*, he perswaded himselfe that no wrong should euer be done

done vnto him, to whom by the course of his age the gouernment of his kingdom belonged, or rather who already was put in possession thereof by his Mother: and besides that, was in a great hope, that some means should be deuised how he myght be established & confirmed therein after a more sure and safe maner, and that *Manucchiar*, his brother, should be honoured with some other Office worthy the magnificence of *Amurath*. Wherein although he had some litle kind of doubt that troubled him: yet did he euer carie a constant resolution, that he would not in any case chaunge his Religion, nor staine hys conscience wyth so fowle and infamous a blot. On the other side, *Manucchiar* the yonger Brother, who the last yeare had followed the Campe of *Mustaffa*, and had shewed some good tokens of manhood, with an expresse kind of Militarie vertue, that he might the rather enter into the gouernment of his Mothers State, induced therunto by the flattering desire of Rule, was vtterly resolved with himselfe to do any thing, so that he might not liue as a priuate souldier, but rather to take from his brother his birthright and enheritance, and with the vtter losse of his countrie-Religion wherein he was borne, to purchase a vyle and base kingdome, yea, and rather then he would liue inferiour in dignitie to his brother, he would make himselfe the slaue of *Amurath*, and the Deuill. Neither is their opinion false peraduenture, that thinke this agreement and conspiracie to haue beene secrete lie contriued betweene him and *Mustaffa*, vtterlie to disgrace and overthrow his Brother. Hereupon they were both examined, which of them would be content to submit hymselfe to the Religion of *Mahamet*: whereunto *Manucchiar* answered, that hee would so doo, and beeing

Manucchiar
consenteth
to change
his Religion.

Alessandro
remayneth
constant in
Christian
Religion.

Manucchiar
circumcised,
and named
Mustassa.

132 *The warres betweene*
become the vassall of so great an Emperour, would de-
sire no other thing, but to manage his owne State in his
service, and vnder his protection. Whereas on the other
side *Alessandro*, although he should be deprived of his
State, which already hee had begun to gouerne, yet
would he not consent to the vyle and infamous change
of his Religion, but remayning constant in his former
faith, he onely desired, that as a priuate souldier, and
bereaued of that inheritance, whereof Nature and God
had caused him to bee borne the lawfull successour, he
might not be denied at the least to goe and lyue in his
owne natue Countrie, and so to be buried neere vnto
the Ashes of his predecessors: promising withall, at all
times; all obedience to *Amurath*, and loue to his brother.
The *Turkish* king willed *Manucchiar* therein to do as he
himselfe thought good. For that for his owne part, he
did greatlie feare, least *Alessandro* by some treacherie
myght depriue him of his lyfe; and so succeeding in his
former place, might make that State more rebellious then
euer it was before. Howbeit, for so much as *Manucchiar*
consented vnto it, he was also to content himselfe with-
all, and to commit the custodie of that State to such
care, as *Manucchiar* should take for the preseruati-
on of himselfe. Heereupon *Manucchiar* was circumcised,
and had the name of *Mustassa* gyuen him, wyth the
title of *Bassa* and *Gouernour* of *Altunchala*, and of all his
Mothers and Brothers Countries: (for the which there
were great signes of ioy ouer all the *Serraglio*,) and hee
beeing thus created a *Turke*, had his Brother *Alessan-
dro* committed vnto him, and they both returned into
their owne Region.

The IIII. Booke.

But

the Turkes & Persians.

133

But in *Prisma*, in the pallace of *Cashin*, many consultati-
ons were had in this meane time. For *Emanguli Chan*, go-
uernour of *Genge*, perceluing himselfe to be in great daun-
ger of loosing his beloued and honorable gouernment, by
means of the late sacke and spoyle of his Citty made by the
Tartarian, and taking occasion of those plottes that were
daily in contriuing to sende people into the confines of
Siruan: to the ende that *Osman Fassa* should not intend his
new works, and withal (if it were possible) should be hun-
ted out of *Demir Capi*, and out of all that prouince, he pur-
posed with himselfe to make an offer to King *Mahamet*,
that he should bind himselfe vpon paine of his head, to de-
fend *Siruan*, and not suffer *Osman* to attempt any newe build-
ings or further conquestes in that Region: and therein
wrought so much with the King, that his request was not
denyed him. Whereupon the charge of the gouernment
of *Genge*, & guarding the Prouince of *Siruan* from the for-
ces of *Osman*, was frankly committed vnto him. Neither
were his offers extended any further: For the *Persian*
King knew wel ynough, that if the *Tartarians* or the Gene-
rall *Mustassa* should come thither, hee should stand in need
of greater prouision and stronger defences. And therefore
he gaue order to *Emir Chan*, gouernour of *Tauris*, to *Teco-
mar* Gouernour of *Reitan*, to *Serap Chan* gouernour of *Mas-
sian*, and to diuers other Captaines that were neere, that
at euerie instance and request of *Emanguli Chan*, they should
be ready (if need so required) with their power to resist ey-
ther the *Tartarians* or the *Turkes*, when they should enter
into the countrey of *Siruan*. Neither did *Emanguli* forget to
solicit the sonne of *Sahamal*, who succeeded in the Lord-
ship of *Brus*, that he would ioine himselfe with him, and
they two together would take occasion to reuenge the
The III. Booke.

The offer of
Emanguli-
Chan.

Emanguli in-
uiceth the son
of Sahamal
the Georgian
to ioine with
him.

T

grievous losses that they had received of the Turkish army, and especially to chastise *Osmar Bassa*, as hee deserved for the death of *Sabamal* his father. Howbeit, the saide some would not by any meanes endanger himselfe, neither durst in any wise shewe himselfe an open enemy and persecutor of the Turkes, but was content to beare the losse of his father in such sort, as he thought most behoouefull for the preservation of his owne estate.

And this was the provision that was made for the securitie of that Province, concerning which, euerie man almost was of opinion, that *Mustaffa* should not returne thither againe, but they knew well that hee should chiefly be employed about the strengthening and assisting of the conquests of *Georgia*: and therefore there was no further provision made there. But the King turned all his counsels and cogitations to send people towards *Teflis*, for he knew of a certentie, that either all the Turkish Armie or els some great bande of it should come to bring succour thither, or els it must needs come to passe, that the Fort should fall againe into the hands of the *Georgiani*. About this matter was the King verie busie and intentiue, when as *Simon* the Georgian, who was sometimes imprisoned at *Cahaca* (of whom we made mention before) and being throughly informed of all thinges that had happened, thought with himselfe that hereby he might take opportunity to obtaine at the Kings hand such helpe as hee had long desired, and purchase those honours that he had long expected. For hee deemed it a verie likele and reasonable matter for the King to desire and wish with all his heart, that hee (carrying the name of a famous Capitaine, & throughly acquainted with all the aduantages, that might be taken in *Georgia*, to the great losse and anoyance

The IIII booke.

of the Turkes) would offer himselfe to go into that prouince and there gathering his souldiers together with a soueraine authoritie ouer all that people, to defend those cities that were yet vntouched, far better than his brother *Dant* could doe, and in another maner a sort (than he also could) to trouble and offend the Turkes, which must needs come that way to succour *Teflis*. Neither did hee protract the time long, after he was entred into this cogitation, but with conuenient speed dispatched his supplication to the King, wherein he declared his request, & reprooing his brother for his cowardise & flight, promised to persourne greate matters himselfe.

This *Simon* in the time that he remained prisoner at *Cahaca*, entred strait familiarity with *Ismahel* (late son to King *Tamas* deceased) who, as we told you before, was sent thither by his father to be satelie kept: & in this mutual familiarity there passed such enterechangeable offices of loue betwene them, that as *Ismahel* shewed himselfe louing and affectionate to the conditions of *Simon*, so much did *Simon* for his part shew himselfe dutiful & deuoted to the vertues & magnanimity of *Ismahel*: whereby there arose an extraordinary loue of the one towards the other: which continued in such sort, that *Simon* (I know not by what sophistry deluded, or by what flattery enticed) was perswaded by the Persian prince, to forsake his religion, and to follow that barbarous superstition. What might be the reasons that were able to change the mind of *Simon*, being before so constant, and so well instructed in the Greek Christian faith (for the maintaining whereof he had chosen to live deprived of his libertie and estate) it can not bee so precisely declared: but it seemeth, there were three principall and powerfull respects, that wrought this unexpected noueltie in him.

The IIII booke.

T 2

Good Name

Simon maketh a request to the Persian King.

The familiarity betweene *Ismahel* and *Simon*.

Simon induced to change his religion, and the reasons why.

The Persian King minded to send men towards *Teflis* in *Georgia*.

Simon the Georgian.

The powe of
friendship.

Namely, the perpetuall imprisonment, which he knew hee could not auoyd, as long as he continued of that mind: the friendship of *Ismahel* (friendship I say, that oftentimes changeth mens natures, much more their opinions:) and thirdly the great honours that Prince *Ismahel* did dayly promise him, whensoever it should happen that hee were named King. While they were thus mutually affected one towards another, it happened that King *Tamas* died, and *Ismahel* being accompanied from *Cahaca* to *Cashin*, was with meruellous pompe saluted King of all his father dominions. Among all the rest, whome the King full dearly beloued, hee could not forget, but preserve in memorie the vertue and fame of *Simon*, who was already according to the Kings pleasure circumcised, and made a Mahometan, yea, and in such sort did he remember him, that hee was most desirous to bestowe greater honours and rewardes vpon him than he himselfe could request. But sudden and v unexpected death lighting vpon, before he was aware of it was the occasion why *Simon* remained without any advancement, and yet so greatlie contented, as his recovered libertie could breed contentment in him. Notwithstanding among the many varieties of his thoughts did *Simon* long time wander, being after the death of *Ismahel* shreudlie distracted in his mind, couersing and discoursing with himself whether it were better for him, either to remaine still in *Cashin* and to stay the comming of the new King, or els to resolute vpon departure, and so to returne to his forsaken faith, and wasted Cities. But in the end, after many consultations, hee concluded that it should bee more safe and commendable, considering the state of his affaires, to stay for the new King, and vnder his protection and fauour to find some means, that he might be restored to the dignity

The IIII booke.

and rule that was vsurped vpon him, rather than to flie away alone, and (having no stay to leane vppon) to seeke for quarrels and contentions with his brother, yea and peraduenture to purchase himselfe a bitter death. And therefore he did willingly maintaine himselfe in *Cashin*, looking and hoping, that the change of his schisme (for so it is rather to be accounted than a religion) his imprisonment endured, his libertie recovered, his fame of great valour, his present necessitie, his deuotion and obedience to the king manifestlie declared, should deserue at the new kings hands some honour and reward, or at least, if it would please him to commit any charge of the warre in *Georgia* to his care, a constant and assured protection of him. And therefore when *Mahamet* was now established in his kingdom, and was certified of the losse of *Teflis*, *Simon* besought him of lawfull leaue, to returne vnder his protection into his own ill-defended countrey, offering himselfe withall to venture vpon any perill or trauell whatsoever, and promising that he would neuer either feare any great enterprise, or auoyd any base exploit, so that he might know he might do good seruice to *Mahamet*. With great satisfaction did the King consent to the requests of *Simon*, and named him the Chan of all that kingdom, which hee possessed before by the name of a Christian: and with all diligence was he sent with *Alicul Chan* into *Georgia*, for the endammaging of the Turkish Armie, and defence of his neighbour Cities. And to them both were deliuered certaine peeces of Artillerie, that were taken at the rocke or Castle of *Eras*, when *Caitas Bassa* was slaine, (as in the booke next going before we haue told you) and besides the Artillerie, there were assigned vnto them fise thousande Horsmen, that were leaued out of the Cities, bordering vpon the ene

The IIII booke.

T 3

Simon named (by the Persian king) the Chan of all his kingdom.

Artillerie appointed for *Simon* & *Alicul Chan*.

Simon pref-
eth souldiers
in Georgia.

Simons ex-
cuse, why he
changed his
faith.

The meeting
together of a
new armie at
Erzurum.

Aegypt sen-
deth souldi-
ers, whereof
scarcely the one
half came to
Erzurum.

Pestilent sick-
nesses in So-
cia.

Procellous
other moor
this Army e-
qual with the
first.

and the other Media: Simon afterwards comming to Georgia, where hee was greatlie welcommed and honour-
red, pressed about three thousande Souldiers out of all
those countries, both of his owne and of his neighbours,
signifying vnto them all, (though with a false and impious
excuse,) that he was now become a Persian, not because he
preferred the faith and lawe of Mahomet before Christian
Religion, but onely because he might bee deliuered of his
imprisonment, and imploy his forces in the seruice of our
Saviour and onely Prophete Christ Iesus, and so by that
meanes also maintain his owne estate. And in this order
were the affayres of Georgia assured and strengthened, after
the best maner that might be.

But now was the new season of the spring in beginning,
and every man prepared himselfe to the discontinued tra-
uels of the warres begun. And now were there met toge-
ther in *Erzurum*, out of all the woonted prouinces, all the
souldiers: & withal were gathered together all the Engines,
all the Moneys, al the prouision of corne, Barley, and Rile,
and all other things necessarie for the sustenance of Car-
tel & Souldiers. Aegypt also had sent thither her squadrons
whereof notwithstanding little more than the one half ar-
riued at *Erzurum*, partly by reason of the landie wildernesse,
through which they must needs passe, as they came to-
wards *Seria* from *Memphis*, where now *Cair* standeth: and
partly by reason of the pestiferous maladies, which they
found in the Cittie of *Aleppo*, and places heere thereunto,
where besides Carbuncles, blundises, and blacke botchits,
there reigned also a venomous and contagious Feger, that
replenished the Cittie with greater terror, lamentation, and
death. So that this Armie at *Erzurum*, was equal with the
first: and thereupon *Mustafa* taking his departure, thereof
The IIII. booke.

35000. 1111. de

Mustafa at
Chars.

determined to remooue, and to iourney towards *Chars*.
And so holding on his way to *Hassen-Chalaf*, hee came in
twelue daies to *Chars*, not perceiuing so much as one small
word awry in any of his Souldiers. And forasmuch as here
they must rest, & put themselves in defence, by fortifying
with wales, & compassing with ditches the ruinated City
of *Chars*, which must be done in the best maner that might
be, and with as great speed as was possible, ther was no re-
remedie, but besides the Pioners and Engyners, (that were
brought for that purpose) there must be set to worke ma-
ny *Spaoglani*, many slaues, and some Ianizzaries also. But it
was not presently put in execution, as the necessity requi-
red. For all these kind of people suddenly made an insurre-
ction, and in a tumult began with bitter protestations to let
the Generall vnderstand, that their stipends, wherewith it
pleased the Sultan to fauour them, were not bestowed vpon
them, to employ their forces and vertues in workes so
vile and so far from the Art of warre: but only with their
swords and other weapons to exercise that forced and har-
dinesse, for which they were esteemed worthy of that ho-
nour. The General gaue them their answer againe in verie
haughty teatms, and although he knew wel ynough, that
the smallest summe of mony that he should haue bestowed
among them, would soone haue quieted them, yet would
he not yeeld one iot to their inciuility, but vying al means of
authority & terrour, he brought them to work as much as
he desired. And so within the space of 23. daies, the towers
and wals were erected, the ditches digged, the bathes build-
ed, the attillery disposed in order vpon the wals & the wa-
ter brought round about it, either fro som branch of *Enfra-
ras*, or fro som other riuer (not much lesse famous than *En-
frates*) that springeth out of the mountain *Periarda*. Many
The IIII. booke.

The souldiers
in a tumult
against the
General.

”
”
”
”
”

In the space
of 23. dayes
Chars fenced.

inconueniences happened in the Armie, while they were busie about this worke, and namelie vpon the xxv. day of August, when they had almost euen finished the whole building, the souldiers endured a most sudden colde, by reason of much snowe that then fell in greate abundance. But so vehement it was not, that it coule not bee borne, but every man was the rather forward to execute anie commandement, that according to the pleasure of *Amurath* should bee enioyned them by *Mustaffa*, all of them being generallie of opinion, that the only repairing and building of *Chars* was but a small matter, in regard of so greate an Armie gathered together with so greate diligence, no doubt for some greater and further purpose.

For the accomplishing of this fortification nowe there remained nothing to doe, it being fullie finished, and therefore nowe it was time to attempt some newe enterprises: Whereupon the Generall resolved to sende succours into *Georgia* to the fort of *Tesslis*, without which it was most certaine that the Fortresse would be yeelded to the *Georgians*. For this purpose he must needs take one of these courses, either to choose some valiant Captaine that should go thither, or els to go himselfe in person, with all his Armie, about so great an enterprise as that was. In which cogitation he remayned very doubtfull, casting in his mind on the one side a certaine feare, that if he went not with all his armie, some mishappe might light vpon the Captaine that should goe in his steed, and on the other side bethinking himselfe, that if he shoulde goe thither with all his people, he should hardlie satisfie *Amurath*, whom he had already made to beleue, that he had subdued all the *Georgians* and reduced all that prouince to his obedience and deuotion. Notwithstanding in this his ambiguity, the desire that

The IIII. booke.

Snowes at
Chars in Au-
gust.

The consul-
tations of ge-
nerall Mu-
stafa touch-
ing Tesslis.

he had to preserue his credit with *Amurath*, preuailed, and hee thought that it would be as sufficient to sende succours thither by a Captaine accompanied with twentie thousand chosen souldiers, as to go himselfe with all his campe: being of opinion, that in the straites of *Tomanis* and other places, so huge a multitude might giue occasion to their enemies rather of praye than of feare, and might breed to their own forces rather lettes and impedimentes, than any fauour or help. Wherein hee was highly commended of all men, though therby with the King in particular he lost his credit, to whom he had heretofore made so goodly promises, that he wel hoped, without sending any such preparation thither, to haue receiued of that people much greater obedience.

Now forasmuch as it was verie needful to fortifie and strengthen that place, he made choise of *Hassan* the *Bassa* of *Damasco*, son to that *Mahamet* that was the principal Visior of the Court, as famous as any that euer had any gouernement in the *Ottoman* Empire, a man no lesse faire in face & countenance, than valourous and venturous in sudden and important cases, and to him he deliuered between eighteen and twenty thousand souldiers, some of *Greece*, some of *Damasco*, and some of *Carnemis*: ioyning in company with him one *Resuan-Bassa*, Captaine of certaine Aduenturers (comprehended in the forsaide number) that voluntarily offered themselves to follow the forces of *Hassan*: and assigned vnto him likewise fourty thousand Duckets, and many loades of Meale, Rife, and Barley, with other thinges necessarie both for diet, and for warre, and so set him forward for *Tesslis*. This *Hassan* caried a haughtie mind, with high thoughts agreeable to his magnanimity, and did determine with himselfe to loose all that he had, yea, and his verie life withall,

Hassan Bassa
of *Damasco*,
chosen Gene-
rall for the
succouring of
Tesslis, with
20000. soul-
diers.

Resuan Bassa
Captaine of
certaine Adu-
enturers.

40000. Duc-
kats caried to
Tesslis.

The IIII. Booke.

V

rather

rather than he should not bring these succors within the walls of Teflis. But when he was now come to the famous strait of Tomanis, & passed the ruins of other treacherous places, he arrived at a dangerous passage (without perceiving any footing of an enemy) where the woods on the one side, deep valleyes & craggy rocks on the other side, would make any man astonished that should come thither: and, behold, even on a sudden, the Persians, together with the Georgians, under the conduct of Aliculi-Chan & of Simon, at unawares set upon the armie of Hassan, & ioyned battel with them. For Aliculi-Chan and Simon-Bech (as we told you before) being sent into Georgia, & having therabouts gathered souldiers together to the number of 8000. did still remaine, for the most part in the borders of Teflis & Tomanis, wayting for some opportunity to annoy, either those of the Fort of Teflis, if happily they should at any time issue forth, or els the other that should come to succour them. Howbeit the famine, wherewith they were afflicted at that time, could not worke so much upon them, as induce them to issue out of the forresse, & so the Persians could find no opportunity to do them any harm as they desired: but having continual advertisement, that Mustassa had sent succours to the being thus besieged, they stayed there, & watched, to hear on what side any newes would appear from them. At the last they understood by certain spies, that they kept the way of Tomanis, & that Hassan Bassa with twenty thousand men was comming to this aid. This newes caused them forthwith to scatter themselves among the woods, all along the length of the said strait, hoping from thence to assaile the Turkes, and overthrowing them headlong into the deep valley, to bereave them both of their goods and life.

But Hassan, who had not so much care of any thing, as he
The IIII. booke.

had to avoid that grievous danger, chuse rather to make his journey through the woods, & eschew the ambushes & trecheries that his enemies might lay for him, & so minister means to his people to escape the perill of that headlong overthrow. And therefore in steed of leaving the wood on his left-hand, he entered within it, to discover all the wiles that might be plotted against him, and so did all his souldiers with him, & therupon began the battel. Wherin they fought with a thousand windings & turnings in-and-out, through a thousand crooked pathes, and doubtful cranks, in a most confused Medley, till there ensued therupon a great slaughter of the Turkes: who being not accustomed to this kind of fight, nor acquainted with the situation of the place, were in the skirmish driven so far, that downe they fell, and not being able to recover themselves, were presently slain. In this confusion, among others that were ill handled, was Mustassa Bey of Caifar, a place in Caramania, who lost his banner, being taken away from him by the Georgians, having also his Standerd-bearer thrust-through, and all his hortes surprised, which he had caused to be lead-out on the right hand, and done many mischiefs with them. And in this manner did they passe the straites of Tomanis.

Now although they were not very far from Teflis, yet would they needs make stay nere to the said straits, & faining that they would favour and rest their men and their cattell, (and peradventure meaning to nourish a foolish opinion of fear in the minds of their enemies) they waited to see whether they would come againe to trouble them a fresh or no. Hassan Bassa burned, till he might perform some famous and notable act, thinking with himselfe that hee had received a great ignominy, in suffering his enemies being in number so far inferiour unto him, to escape from him, & remembering
The IIII. Booke.

The warres
of Hassan

The battell,
wherin there
was a great
slaughter of
the Turkes.

The turkische
stratageme

that in such places sleights and stratagems are more available than open forces, he took aduice, that a band of the souldiers of *Greece* with a certaine troupe of the Adventuriers, vnder the conduct of *Resuan-Bassa*, should lay themselves in ambushment within the thickest shades of the strait, and so being hidden, should diligentlie watch euery stirre of the enemy. Two dayes together did the Turkes remaine there thus diuided asunder, and were now resolved the third day to remooue from thence, and not to stay any longer from conducting their succours to *Teslis*: when as *Aliculi-Chan* and *Simon Becb* (vainly imagining that this stay of the Turkes was for feare they had of the Persians) with all their people freshly, but boldly, and foolishly returned, and gaue a newe onset vpon the flanke of *Hassan*'s Squadrons, who forthwith raising all his souldiers, and giuing a signe to *Resuan* and the rest that lay in ambush, with all speed compassed in his enemies, and straightning their wings on both sides, tooke some of them aliue, hacked some in peeces, and put all the rest to flight. Among others that were taken aliue, *Aliculi-Chan* (the Persian Captaine) who ouer-rashlie ranen vpon the face of *Hassan*, with al his band, that continually followed him, was taken prisoner, and so fell into the hands of *Hassan*. Who victoriously and ioyfully arrived at *Teslis*, the next day following, being the verie 11. day after his departure fro *Chars*: where hauing passed ouer the river, and entered the forresse he found among the poore besieged soules many miseries, by occasion whereof some had died, and some were yet sick. For they were so plagued with famine, that they had not only deuoured their horses of small price, but they had also eaten the verie skinnes of the same horses, of Muttons, and of dogs, and had passed away the time in most miserable wants. But *Hassan* did comfort

The IIII. booke.

The Georgians assault again the Turkish Armie.

Aliculi-Chan taken aliue.

Hassan victoriously arrived at *Teslis*.

A great famine in the sieged city of *Teslis*.

them all with the newes of victory, and more with the relief that he brought hē, distributing to euery one of them gifts and good words, and exhorting them all to perseuere in the seruice of the King, whose honour was neuer more then now to be respected: For that it is no lesse commendation for a man to preserve and keep a conquered country in the midst of the enemy and the enemies forces, than it is at first to conquer it. And for asmuch as al the souldiers of the Fort did with one voyce request *Hassan*, that he would appoint them a newe Captaine, because they did all mislike *Mahamet-Bassa*, who the last yeare was sent by the Generall in that Fort: *Hassan* removed the said *Mahamet*, and put in his place *Amor-Bassa Agabegli*. And when he had filled vp the places of the dead souldiers with a newe supply, he tooke his leaue, and recommended the charge and custody of the Fort to their trust and vertue.

Hassan passed ouer the river with all his people, and put himselfe on the way bakke again towards *Tomanis*, so that he came to the very strait, without any trouble or impediment of his enemies. But being come to the mouth of the strait, he was aduertised by his Scottes, that it was shut vp with verie strong trenchies of Artillerie, and defended with a great number of souldiers. And these were they that remained aliue in the last skirmishes (that we told you of) when *Hassan* marched towards *Teslis*. For *Simon* thinking (as in deede it fell out) that *Hassan* shoulde returne backe by the same way of *Tomanis* could not find any better meanes to repress his boldnesse, to reuenge the losses of his owne people and to redeeme the prisoner *Aliculi-Chan*, but this, Namely, thus to shut vp the mouth of the Straite, hoping thereby, that the Turkes being enforced to turne vpon the artillerie, so laid for defence of the said strait, shuld be all con-

The IIII. booke.

Hassan returneth from *Teslis*.

The entrie of the strait fenced with Artillerie.

Hassan seeketh to auoid the great danger of the strait.

Hassan promifeth to set Aliculi-Chan the Persian at libertie.

Hassan breaketh his promise.

armed and utterly destroyed. But Hassan, as if he had been desired that the passage was with a fort but y^e by Simon sought means to make his iourney some other way, and declining that great danger to frustrate and delude the ambushes and stratagems of Simon. Whiles he remained thus doubtful in himself, discouraging many conceits in his mind; Aliculi-Chan, who would not haue bene squeamish to haue committed any villany, so that he might thereby purchase his libertie out of prison, made offer to Hassan, that he would shew him a safe and a short cut, wherby he should not onle elchue the prepared mischief, but also auoyd all assaultes of his enemies: but yet vpon this condition that Hassan should promise him to set him at libertie. The Turkish Bassa did not stick in large matter to promise Aliculi his liberty, although indeed he did not perform his promise to him afterwards, which (to say the truth) did not a litle obscure the glory of his actions. And therefore bending his iourney towards the right hand, he was guided by Aliculi-Chan through strage and vncoth waies out of those woods & dangers, not meeting with so much as the sword of one enemy. The Persian Duke put the Turk in mind of his promise for his liberty, but all in vain: For the Turk dissembling the wicked intention, wherby he was induced to giue him his word, pretended with great & deep sighs, that he was very fory he could not perform, as much as his intent was to doe for him: because it lay not in his power to set any man at libertie, that in battel was taken prisoner by the souldiers & vassals of Amurath: & yet for a noble & magnificent pledge he gaue him his faith, that so far as his intreaties & fauours with captaine Mustassa could preuaile, he would not suffer him to receiue any wrong, but would vse all the most earnest meanes he could to procure him a libertie, & return to his own cuntry.

The IIII booke.

EV

1111111111

In this meane while, Simon perceiving that the Turkes were remooued from those places that were neere vnto the strait, could not perswade himselfe that they were returned to Teflis, but imagined that they had taken this new way. And being after ward certified that it was so indeed, and informed of the truth thereof by his faithfull spies, he ranne all headlong and as it was desperate to meete with that so happie Annio. And burning in anger and all inflamed with rage for this great fortune of the Turkes, cursing and blaspheming the heauens, hee arrived vpon the tayle of the Turkish host, which with vaine security hee did wholly destroy & discomfit, leading away with him al the people, all the horses, and all the treasure of Mahamut Bassa, which was brought from Teflis, & all the treasure of Hassan Bassa likewise: putting to death & taking prisoners the slaues & vassals of both the Captaines, and shedding the blood of many other souldiers. Among which although he sought greedily and diligently for Aliculi-Chan, of purpose to deliuer him, yet could he not finde him, for that he was committed to the charge and safe custody of a Turkish captaine in the front of the Army. After which medley, there fell againe great store of snowes, so that the cold thereof, biting and ripping the woundes of such as had valiantly fought in the battel, the greatest part of them perished. Hassan followed on his voyage, and being come to Chars in the space of eight dayes after his departure from Teflis, he presented Aliculi to Mustassa, declaring vnto him the perils that hapned, his succors performed at Teflis, the dangers that he had passed, & the great losses that he receiued in his return: & the Turks say, that he did not fail most instantlie to deal for the libertie of Aliculi, which notwithstanding I leaue to the iudgement of those that can iudge.

The IIII booke.

V 4

1111111111

Angry Simon destroyeth the tail of Hassans army

Abundant snowes.

Hassan come to Chars, on the returne of Aliculi

more profoundly, than I with truth and credite can write, I my selfe being one of those, that do verily beleue, He can not keepe his faith with man, that donieth his faith to God. Sufficeth it, that poore vnhappy *Aliculi* by commaundement of *Mustassa* was caried away to *Erzurum*, and ther committed to prison in the Castell. And this was the ende of the stirres of the yeare 1579.

Mustassa returned to the said Citie of *Erzurum* with al his Army, which was presently also by him discharged. And afterwards he sent aduertisements of all these successes to the Court to *Amurath*, recounting vnto him the deserts of *Hassan* as well for the succouring of *Tessie*, as also for the taking of *Captaine Aliculi-Chan*. And forasmuch as the last yeare the said General had perswaded *Amurath*, that the prouince of *Georgia*, and the people thereof were reduced vnder his obedience: to the end that he should not maruell at so many losses and so many battels, and thereby doubt of some lying and false information, hee declared vnto him, that all these difficulties were not raised by the natural and home-bred Georgians, who the last yeare had promised him al due obedience, but by two certain Captaines, *Simon* and *Aliculi*, sent out of *Persia*, who had moued all these stirres, prepared all these dangers, and layd all these ambushes, although one of them now remayned with him in prison, a worthy punishment for his malapert temerity. The king sent by two of his Captaynes (or Gentlemen Hushers) to *Hassan*, a battle-axe all gilt, and setful of iewels, a Target of gold and pearle, and a garment of cloth of gold, in rewarde of his noble enterprises achieved, commending him heartlie for his vertue and valour: and with great delight did he read ouer all that *Mustassa* had written vnto him, giving order withall, that *Aliculi* should be kept, where hee was,

The VIII. booke.

Aliculi-Chan
imprisoned
at *Erzurum*.

Amurath ho-
moreth *Hassan*.

indiligent and safe custodie.

The King of *Persia* lying at *Casbin* was aduertised of all these successes, which being added to his newe thoughts touching his son at *Heri*, wherof *Mirize Salmas* had enformed him, did greatly molest him. For on the one side, the euident dangers, wherin all *Georgia* stood, did shrewdly trouble him, considering that the Stratageme so well deuised by *Simon* had no better successe, and the Turkes had now made themselves throughly acquainted with all those passages, in the difficulty & roughnes whereof consisted al his hope of defence: and moreouer vnderstanding that the *Widowes* sons wer become vassals to the Turk, which course *Lehen-top* also propounded to himselfe, as one that was greatly inclined to be in confederacie with the *Ottomans*: and to be briefe, perceiuing that all the *Georgian* Captaines had settled themselves vnder the standares of *Amurath*, hee could not but feare greatly, that his enemies would begin to pierce in to the noble ciues of *Medin* the greater, yea and peraduenture euen vnto *Tauris* before any of the rest. On the other side, he was as it were with a worm inwardly consumed, for the newes that were brought him by his Visier *Mirize Salmas*, of the euident suspicion, which hee told him, that his son *Abas Mirize* of *Heri*, should (like a rebel and an ambitious youth) goe about to proclaime himselfe king of the *Persian* empire, to the great ignominy of his father, and of *Emir-hamze* his eldest sonne, who only was worthy to be named his successor in that crowne.

This *Mirize Salmas*, according to his longing desire, had married a daughter of his to the late *Emir-hamze*. With the consent of the king his father: but yet not content with that great honor, he ceased not continually with ambitious deuices to seek out meanes, how he might make the *Persian*

The IIII. booke.

X

The VI. booke.

Abas Mirize
suspected of
rebellion a-
gainst his fa-
ther, by *Mirize*
Salmas
the chief Sul-
tan of *Casbin*
Mirize Sal-
mas hauing
made the
Persia prince
his son in law
advanced his
estate.

estate free from all other Seignuries, & bring it to that passe as it might wholly remaine to his son, vndeuided & entire, from the participation of his brethren. And therefore little regarding the perilles that might happen from the Turks, and blinded with the desire of his own greatnesse, he went about to turn the King against *Abas Mirize*, either to take him & commit him to prison, or at least to leaue him void of all authority to command. And the better to perswade the king therunto (being a man very credulous & nothing considerate, but putting more confidence in him than in any other) he began to discourse, that *Abas Mirize* his sonne had not greatly respected him in diuers occasions, declaring vnto him, that sundry times hee had very rashly scorned his commandements, and because he would not shewe himself obedient & inferiour vnto him, he wold not send so much as one souldier towards this war against the Turks; and in fine he had caused himselfe not onely to be called king of *Heri*, but he had also giuen it out, that he meant to claime the succession in the kingdome. And that therefore it was necessarie to seele the mind of the young youth, and to establish the tranquility and quier of the Empire: to the end that if these stirres against the Turks went forwards, *Abas Mirize* should not be so hardy, as in the greatest heat of war to raise sudden tumults, & to make himselfe Lord of that, which by right appertained to *Emirhamze*. Of these complaints he gaue the king diuers euident prooffes, which both in respect of the loue that he bare to *Emirhamze*, and also of the faith that he gaue to his Visier, caried a greater sway with him in his mind, especially they being accompanied with the crafty packing of the said Visier, who as hee was very cunning in such practises of himselfe, so did hee make them much more effectuell with the effeminate king

The III. Booke.

The Persian king verie credulous & inconsiderate

Obiections against Abas Mirize,

by

by the means of diuers Ladies & other occasions that were familiar and vsual with him. But the most euident prooffe of all was this, that the saide Visier enformed the king, that whereas both by letters and commandements he had summoned the gouernors of *Sasnar*, *Coran*, & other places subiect to the iurisdiction of *Heri*, to come to *Casbin*, and so to passe with *Emirhamze* to *Siruan*, yet neuer a one of them wold stir a foot, answering, that they were enioyned so to do by *Abas Mirize* their lord. This euidence was the most principal occasion, why euery thing that *Mirize Salmas* alleged, was beleued by the King, & why he did continually bethink himself, how he might find opportunity to repress the boldnes of his disobedient son. And yet notwithstanding al these difficulties being otherwise perswaded by his most loyal and faithful Sultans, he did not fayl to temper these his internal motions, & to tame these vnruely affectiōs of his mind: & remaining resolute in his important cogitations against the Turks, to prepare such prouision, which should be sufficient to inhibit their passage to *Tauris*, if they had had any purpose so to do. Vpon which resolution arresting himself, he neuer ceased til he had furnished all those prouisions, wherof a litle hereafter we will make mention, for that it is verie conuenient first to prosecute the history of those things that were reported of *Mustaffa*.

He being returned (as we told you) to *Erzurum*, after so many external stirres & troubles, was surprised by certain more intrinsecal, & domestical quarrels at home: for many grieuous complaints were there made of him to *Amurash*, whereupon the said king was induced to take frō him the charge of the Generalship, & to cal him to the court to giue account of his actions. Neither did this thing happen vnto him without iust cause, for that he had before raised a great

The III. booke.

X 2

discon;

the Persian king effeminate

Mustaffa discharged of his Generalship, and called home to Constantinople.

the occasion
of the depri-
uation of
Mustaffa
from his Ge-
nerallship.

discontentmēt in the mind of *Amurath*, by sending so much people to the succours of *Taslis*, whereby hee coniectured that the affaires of *Georgia* were not in such security, as *Mustaffa* had already informed him they were. Moreouer hee had also greatly displeased al the souldiers of his army, who thought themselves to be much deceived by him: for that now this second year, with so much adoo, he had gathered together such a number of armed men, and made so greate prouision with such a charge and expences to their Lorde, and with such a trouble of al the whole empire, and yet had not any worthy or notable enterprize to performe, whereby either the glorie of *Amurath* might receiue increase among his enemies; or the souldiers themselves might be contented with some good bootie, or for any other action of importance. Whereupon they were all in an vprore; & accused him of improvidence and prodigality, in that he had no regard of the wealth and subjects of his king. With these accusations did they the more odiously taxe and re-prooue *Mustaffa*, for that in the space of two years, wherein they had followed his wars, they neuer receiued frō him any final sign of curtesie, no not so much as the smallest reward: but alwaies like a tyrāt, he did reserue to his owne vse al those presents and tokens of gratification, which by order from the king were due to all the souldiers, to encourage them that they might the more lustily cōtinue in this war. These and such other complaints that were made of *Mustaffa*, although they were of some moment, yet would the king neuer haue construed them to hardly against him, as for the same he wold haue bin induced to depriue him of his place: and without all doubt they had bene vtterly cancelled by reason of the great fauours which *Amurath* did beare vnto him, at the enue which *Sinan* Bassa did carie towards him.

The IIII. booke.

X

being

being now exasperated by atticient and inveterate hatred, had not ministred strength & force to all these accusations, & set (as it were) an edge vpon *Amurath* to do what he did.

This *Sinan* was a most ancient enemy to *Mustaffa*, and thought himself to be his match in al things. For if *Mustaffa* had broght the Iland of *Cyprus* into the power of the Turkes within the space of so many moneths, *Sinan* had also in very few dayes subdued *La Goletta* in *Africa*. And if *Mustaffa* were a man of great courage, and reuerend for his yeares, *Sinan* would be his equall both in the one and the other: yea and *Sinan* would not iticke to think himself to be his better (which indeed was supposed to be the originall of these bitter indignations) for that in the enterprize of *Giamen*, where *Arabia Felix* is, *Sinan* himselfe did an exployt, which *Mustaffa* neither durst nor was able, nor yet knew how to put in execution, and *Sinan* alone caried away the glory and entire honour of that famous victorie and important conquest. And euer afterwardes there was nourished between them a thousand dissentions, so that the one of them did alwayes shewe himselfe æmulous and aduersarie to the other both in act and speech, as occasions fell out. At the last happens this opportunitie for *Sinan*, to declare vnto the King how the matters of *Mustaffa* were but slenderlie grounded, and taking occasion of the complaint of so many against him, he caused a great number of the to frame their supplication to the king, which he for his part did in most malignant maner inforce, and exaggerate against *Mustaffa*, accusing him; that this second yeare he had manifestlie shewed himselfe to haue gone into the warre, not as a worthy Captaine, and one that was desirous of noble and honourable enterprises, but as a man greedy to make merchandise of blood, and of his souldiers payes, employing the most liberal prouision of corne and money, not

The IIII. booke.

X 3

A comparison of *Sinan* Bassa and *Mustaffa*, two ancient aduersaries.

Sinan accuseth *Mustaffa*

as rewards for wel-deserving men, nor to the foundation of such fabrikes as were needful, and might have bene builded therewithall, but only to his owne proper gaine, and to enrich himselfe with his peoples losses, to the great shame of the king, and endommagement of the publike treasurie: adding hereunto, that if those things which have bene executed by the said *Mustaffa*, were rightly searched, it would be found, that he had protermitted manie good opportunities, that he had attempted many things in vaine, and generally that he had not done anie good either to the king, or to his soldiers, but onely to himself. Whom rather than they would follow a-gaine as their Captaine, all his people being in an uprore, shewed themselves readie and willing to adventure themselves in any other far greater labour, that by their Lord and king shuld be commanded them. These and other such like complaints, which the king heard of *Mustaffa*, of whō (as we told you before) he had already conceived a hard opinion, because hee perceived that the affaires of *Georgia* were not in any great security, were the occasion why *Amurath* was resolved to put him from his place. Whereunto he did the more easily condescend, because he did alwaies think it very dangerous to suffer one and the selfsame General to be any long time the minister of so great an enterprise, and Captaine of so many Squadrons: and besides, that he alwayes deemed it to be a small honor to him, if he should stil imploy but only one man, and that it would be greater honour to him, to shew that he had variety of subiectes, that were worthy of so great a charge. And therefore being desirous to find out the truth of that, which was reported vnto him touching *Mustaffa*, he sent for him to the Court, causing also two of his *Destardari* or Treasurers to be brought with him, that they might shew the accounts of such moneys as he had received & laid out, and to be short, give vp an account of

The IIII. books.

*Mustaffa his
two Treasurers
brought
to the Court.*

their

whole office. *Mustaffa* came to *Constantinople* accordingly, where the two *Destardari* were committed to safe custody: and he in the mean while, vsing the mighty and potent mediation of diuers Ladies, laboured by all possible means, that *Amurath* might be perswaded to admit him to his presence and to receiue his honourable and rich presents: wherewithall the wrath and indignation of all angry hearts is wont to be appeased and extinguished, especially among the Barbarians, in whom Couetousnes subdueth humane reason and iustice, and doth in such impious maner over-rule the Mahometical Empires, & principally the empire of the Turks, that there remaineth not so much as the shadow of such a vertue, but it is altogether governed onlie by meere Tyranny. Further than this, was there no proceeding against *Mustaffa*, but yet he was neuer admitted to those honours, which in recompence of such actions as he had perfourmed both in peace and in warre, for the seruice of the *Ottomans*, he perswaded himself were due vnto him.

*Ladies mighty
mediators
with Amu-
rath.*

*A detestation
of the tur-
kish govern-
ment.*

In the time that *Mustaffa* remayned General at *Ertirum*, there departed out of this life *Mahamet* the principall Visier, who by a fraudulent & treacherous mad foole, while he sate to giue audience in an open place, within his owne house, was suddainly, and to the common astonishment of all the companie, stroke through the bodie with a sharp *Gangara* or (as we call it) a dagger. And after him dyed likewise of an infirmity *Agmat Bassa*, who succeeded in the place of *Mahamet* that was slaine, so that the said soueraigne dignity by rightfull succession was due to *Mustaffa*. But yet he was not thought woorthy of it by him that might and ought to haue gratified him therewithall, as wee shall declare vnto you a little hereafter, because I take it to be verie conuenient, in this place to insert the death of the said *Mahamet* the Visier: as a matter verie notable and

The IIII. books.

*The death of
Mahamet, the
principall
Vice-Roy.*

famous in those daies, & for an example of such, as administer iustice in such great offices, worthy to be registred not in one onely, but in a thousand and a thousand histories.

The occasi-
ons and ma-
ner of the
strange death
of Vic-Reoy
Mahamet.

Act. II. Sc. 1.

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

156

This foresaid Mahamet, in his greatest managing of the vniuersall gouernment of that empire, for certaine causes and respects, that seemed to him reasonable (whether they were so or no, the curious searchers of all particulars can tell) had deprived a certaine souldier of Constantinople of his yearly stipend, which with many labours and dangers hee had gotten to maintain himselfe withall, which stipend he had bestowed vpon another, who the said Mahamet either for friendship, or for bribe, or for desert had made capable of it and so, that other poore soul remained in miserie, and in deed altogether deprived of all meanes to sustain his life. To which miserable estate seeing himselfe now brought, & not guilty to himselfe of any fault that hee had committed, worthy of so great punishment, he determined with himselfe to reuenge the iniury with the blood of Mahamet the Bassa, & to bereaue him of his life, that had bereued him of his honour & living. And because he could not haue any fit means to put this his designment in execution, vnles hee might compasse some familiarity with Mahamet, by haunting his house, and conuersing domestically with him (for otherwise he could not be permitted to come neere him, that inioyeth that barbarous estate, by reason of the garde of slaves, that keep the person of the Visier) he resolved to apparel himselfe like an Eremit, which the Turks call *Dreus*, and to present himselfe euery morning before Mahamet to aske him his almes. And so he did, counterfeiting withal a certaine kinde of folly and lightnes of minde, to the end he might make the people beleue, that the same had hapned vnto him through the grief which he had conceaued for

The III. booke.

his

his money and his honour taken from him by the Visier. For in deed principallie and above all other things, those that take vpon them the life of a Dreus, do counterfet a certain kind of worldly foolishnes, and a contempt of all earthly things, whereby the variable and ignorant people is brought into a beleefe, that they are enamored and inspired only with heavenly cogitations. Mahamet, not only the first time, but also at all other times, that the counterfeited Eremit did present himselfe before him, caused him to be comforted with his good almes, and as it were with a kind of priuat stipend enioyned him, that euery morning he should come vnto him into the *Diana*, and there together with others (appointed for the same purpose) hee should say his deuout prayers, and singing praises to his wicked prophet, entreat God for his salvation. For it is the custome of all the Noble men, that at the ordinary houres of saluting (or rather blaspheming) God, all their impious and prophane priestes assemble themselves in the *Diana*, which are made ready for them, and there all together the Infidell wretches do number vpon with their vndeane monethes those their wicked blasphemies, whereby they do irritate and prouoke the bounty and Maiestie of God. By this meanes did the Eremit insinuate himselfe into very great familiarity, and this his practise endured so long, that the counterfeited foole went in and out of the *Diana* at his pleasure, without that euer any man gain sayd either his going in, or his coming out: and dayly he sat in the presence of the Visier, and so hauing saide his prayers and taken his almes in quiet and weloome manner, with all reuerence departed. At the last, when the crafty Begger thought that his time was come, when he might very fitly execute his purpose, without any feare of death, or of torment (which sometimes is more grievous and terrible than death itselfe) hauing attended vnto him.

The III. booke.

Y

selfe

A custome of
the Barbari-
ans.

selfe most willingly to die, so that he might satisfie the desire
 of reuenge, which priuily he had fostered in his hart: hauing
 put a verie sharpe *Gangrana* secretly in one of his sleeves, he
 went according to his custom to require his alms, with an
 assured resolution (when he had said his praier, & reached
 out his hand to receaue his wonted alms) speedily to charge
 vpon the Visier, and with his sharpe weapon once or twice
 to strike him to the heart. According to the accustomed
 manner, was the counterfet Priest (for who would euer haue
 feared so long a designment and so traiterous & fraudulent
 a mischief at his handes?) brought into the *Diuano*, where
Mahomet the Visier sate within his house for publike audi-
 ence, & after the vsuall manner, before any of the suters, that
 attended for answers & dispatch of their busines, did suspect
 any such deceit, he was admitted here vnto *Mahomet*, & sit-
 ting right against him, according to his old wont poured
 out those maledictions which those barbarians doe vse to
 muble vp in their vaine praier, which being finished, whiles
 the Visier of simplicity reached vnto him his wonted almes,
 the traiterous foole in stead of receiuing it, drew out his
 dagger with great speed, and thrust it once or twice into his
 breast, whereby there gushed out both his blood & his life.
 And therupon all the standers by, astonished with the stränge-
 nes of the fact, ran in vnto him, & saw this strange spectacle
 the olde hoary Visier all soyled in his own blood, & deadlie
 pale, breathing forth his last gasp, & yeelding vp his misera-
 ble ghost. Presently did they bind the malicious *Dreuis*
 with strong cords, & by and by did the rumor thereof flie to
 the kings eares, who suspecting that some of the chiefe Go-
 uernors, that they might mount into that high dignity, had
 prouoked the traitor to doe this detestable act, would needs
 vnderstand of the traiterous Murderer, what occasion had
 The IIII. booke.

moued him thus to betray his Visier. Who answered
 him againe, that he did it to deliuer the Citie of *Constantino-
 ple* from the tyranny of him, by whom he was vnderstandedly
 deprived of the stipende that hee had demerited, and of the
 honour that he had atchieued. But when the King coulde
 receiue no other answer from him, the Rebel was deliuered
 into the hands of the slaues belonging to the deade Visier,
 and so put to death with vnspeakable torments.

And thus died *Mahomet*, and a litle while after, *Agmat* al-
 so died of sicknes (as is aforesaid) so that it was *Mustaffa* his
 course to succeed in that chiefe roome: for hee was the third
 in the order of the *Bassas*. But, although he did vse all the pos-
 sible meanes hee could, that the saide charge (being due vnto
 him) might be bestowed vpon him, yet wold not the King
 grace him so much as to grant it him vnder scale, although
 in effect he made him sit as a Visier, and all matters of state
 were brought vnto him as the chiefe Visier: but in his stead
 the scale was sent to *Sinan-Bassa*, who was now made Gene-
 rall, & was on his way towards *Tessis*, as in due place it shall
 be shewed. Greatly was *Mustaffa* discontented herewithall,
 and much grieued at this iniustice of *Amurath*, neither
 was he altogether void of feare, least some other strange ac-
 cident should light vpon him. Howbeit notwithstanding all
 these malecontentments, he did not faile to purge himselfe
 thoroughly of the accusations laid against him, and caused al-
 so his two *Deftordars* to be enlarged, after their innocencie
 was made known, which whether it were so known to be in-
 deed, or whether it was made to seem so by the means of his
 presents & of gold which amongst the barbarous & corrupt
 people is wont to make vile matters to appear noble, & to
 couer & conceal all foule & dishonest practises, I will not define.

After the depriving of *Mustaffa* from the charge of the
 Generalship, *Amurath* was enforced to elect a new General

Mustaffa now
 thought woul-
 thy of the
 roome of the
 chief Visier.

Sinan chosen
 the chief Vi-
 sier.

Mustaffa and
 his two trea-
 surers quit.

aswel for the preservation of *Chars* and *Teflis*, as also, to reduce the enemy to some good conditions of peace, for which purpose finding *Sinan* to be a fit man, as one that ever shewed himselfe an envious imitator of *Mustaffa*, and one that peradventure would be glad to receive such a dignity, yea, and perhaps one that by some secret service had induced the King to make choyce of him, he nominated the said *Sinan* to be General for this expedition, and to him he gaue the soveraine authoritie to command, and to let in order all those preparations, which hee thought necessarie for such enterprises as he should think good to attempt in this his first year. But *Sinan* although by reason of this great favour he grew haughtie and glorious, yet did he not foreflowe to discourse thoroughly with himselfe vpon all his designmentes, and namely besides the succouring of *Teflis*, hee determined to build a Fort in *Tomani*, to assure the wayes that lead thither from *Chars*, and withall to attempt all the means he could to induce the Persia king to send Embassadors for peace, with such conditions as should be acceptable to *Amurath*. With these and such like discourses did he busie himselfe, whiles he was making preparation to passe towards *Erzurum*. Of all these changes and alterations, the Persian king was advertised, who employed himselfe (as we told you before) in preparing for the disturbance of his enemies, and to minister also matter himselfe of some attempts, that he likewise intended. And being certified (whether by the means of *Sinan* or of any other, the certainty is not yet come vnto vs) that this new Turkish General was a man greatly given to cogitations, how this war might be quieted, & these wrathful broiles reduced to a good peace, whiles he was setting all things in order & readines to send his army into *Georgia*, & to gather an army for the defence of his cities, he bethought himself

The IIII. booke.

Sinan chosen General.

The purposes of General Sinan.

that it was very convenient to put this matter in execution, being exhorted thereunto by *Leuentogli*, who although hee had bene injured by the Persians, yet he could not but think it a dangerous thing to haue these warres so neere him: and being likewise harrened in it by his Visier *Mirize Salmas*, who was more intentive towards the vniust suppressing of *Abas Mirize* of *Heri*, then he was for any sufficient reparations or due provisions for this warre, he resolved to send Ambassadors to *Constantinople* to demand peace of *Amurath*. And deeming *Maxut-Chan* to be a man very fit for that purpose, he made choyce of him to performe that businesse, adioyning vnto him for an Assistant an old Priest belonging to the said *Leuentagli*, as one that was a common friend to both parties, and very desirous of this quietnes. And so hee dispatched *Maxut-Chan*, with charge that hee should goe to *Sinan*, and of him receive guides, to conduct him to *Constantinople* with letters vnto the king: and that he should, as much as lay in him, labour for the pacifying of all these troubles, and in any case conclude vpon it, so that *Amurath* would be contented with *Chars* and *Teflis*. And thus being departed from *Casbin*, keeping the way of *Sultania*, *Zanga*, *Miana*, *Turcoman* and *Tauris*, leauing on his right hand *Chiusul*, *Nassuan*, *Reiuan*, and by *Coy* & *Van*, wher the Bassa appointed him one to guide him, he arriued at *Chars*. It is generally known, and I haue in particular vnderstood, how great the ioy was, which the Turks conceaued of the comming of this Ambassadors, and how *Cacala-Bassa* did with all diligence dispatch certain postes to the court with these good newes. From *Chars* the saide Ambassadors was sent by the way of *Hassan-Chalasi* to *Erzurum*, & from thence with new guides he went towards *Amazias*. But when he came to *Sinan*, there he found General *Sinan* encamped, gathering together his

The IIII. booke.

The Persian king resolued to send Ambassadors to Constantinople.

Maxut-Chan dispatched as Ambassador.

Conditions of peace offered by the Persian king.

Armie from the cities aboue named, to lead them with him to the execution of his designements.

The Persian Embassadour entourned *Sinan* of all that, whereof hee had to treat with the Turkish king on the behalfe of his king *Mahamet*: and laboured earnestly to perswade him of the honesty of the request, and the equitie of the cause, declaring vnto him, that as vnder the lawe of *Mahomet* their common Prophet, both the nations are conioyned together, so that they ought with one vnitie and speciall concord defend and encrease their Names, by subduing the Christian people, who professing to worship the true God and the true Prophet, do possesse the most noble Cities of *Europe*: so was it a matter very inconuenient to contend among themselues, and seeke to ouerthrow, yea and vtterly to destroy one another: it being a thing quite contrarye to that vnion, which should be among people of one & the selfe same religion: it being also rather the property of brute & savage beasts than of men, to driue & expulse out of their native nest, those that are the followers and worshippers of one & the selfe same Prophet. And although among so much people, and in such bredth & largenes of cuntries ther be found peraduenture some signe of contrariety, & some small shew of difference, yet for all that the matter is not so great, as that it shuld deserue such troublesom stirs, and kindle such ardent indignations, wherby he that is of greatest power shuld be moued to enter into another mans cuntries, & endommage his neighbours. And that therefore he did hope to obtaine at the hands of *Amurath* this desired peace, if hee had no other cause wherwith he did find himselfe agreeued, as in trouth there was not, no nor euer was there any such thought towards him. Wherefore he besought him, that he would conueigh him with trustie guides to *Amurath*, to the end,

The III. booke.

that

that, if it were possible, they might not suffer these bloody warres to goe forwards, at the report wherof, the most remote Nations of the East, yea and of all the whole worlde did reioyce, and stood wayting attentiuely to see what would be the issue of them.

Sinan entertained the Embassadour after the best maner, that the rudenesse of his nature would permit him: and thinking with himselfe, that not onelie the losses and disadvantage of the Persian king, but also the very fame of his valour in matters of warre, had wrought in the mindes of his enemies this resolution, to come and demaund peace (which he procured afterwards) he determined to pleasure the Embassadour in the request which hee made vnto him for the conueighing of him to the Court: and accompanying him with a sure conuoy to send him to *Constantinople*: And wrote to *Amurath* in his letters all that which (hee thought) was fit to be demanded, representing vnto him what great and important matters (he hoped) might now be obtained, and raising in him woonderfull expectation of all happie successe, rather than motioning vnto him any feare or suspicion of any vaine treatie. But before he dismissed the saide Embassadour, he thought it good to aduise him, not to go to *Amurath* without resolution to offer him some great good conditions, and to yeeld vnto him all those landes and all that countrey, which he with the valour of his Subiectes and with Armes had conquered, by ouercomming the forces of his enemies, by passing through the most hard and difficult waies, by climing the rough and craggiereckes, by vvading ouer the moste violent riuers, that are in all *Media* and *Iberia*: For hee knewe the minde of *Amurath* verie vvell, that hee vvvas resolved in himselfe, not to yeeld so much as one hande breadth of that ground which his

The III. booke.

Y 4

Sub.

Sinan recei-
ueth the Em-
bassadour.

Admonitiōs
of *Sinan* to
Maxut- chan
the Embassa-
dour.

The speech of
the Embassa-
dour to *Sinan*

subjects had valiantlie and worthyly won with the sword. This demaund did greatly trouble *Maxut-Chan*, so that he began to fancie within himself, that he should not be able to conclude any thing, and (if the said Embassadors son did not tell vs a lie, who diuers times did moste familiarly discourse with vs vpon euery particularitie, whiles we visited him in *Aleppo*) he was in a peraduenture to returne into *Persia* againe, and not to passe ouer to *Constantinople*. Notwithstanding considering better with himselfe what belonged to his dutie, and doubting that this protestation might bee but an ambitious demand of *Sinan* himselfe, and hoping to receaue more reasonable conditions of peace from the mouth of the Turkish king, and also to the end his own king might be the better certified, that he had not fayled fully to performe his duty in so waighty a businesse, he gaue large words to *Sinan*, and made him beleue that he had order and authority from *Mahamet* (his Lord) to conclude, what hee thought best and most conuenient, for the matter of peace. And so the Embassador departed, with a safe companie from *Sinan*, and keeping on the way of *Caisar*, leauing both *Conia* and *Angori*, he arriued at *Isnic* (in old time called *Nicea*) a ci- ty situate neere vnto the Moore, anciently called *Asodnia*, and from thence came to *Scutar*, passing ouer that litle gulfe which ioyneth those two seas together, and so was condu- cted to *Constantinople*.

In the meane time the Persian King withdrew himselfe out of *Cash*, and vpon the rumour of the Turkish notel- ries meant also himselfe to giue out a noyse of some impor- tant matters, which he likewise intended. Whereupon by his Royall commandement he called all the *Chans*, Gouver- nours of his Subject Cities, together with all their military forces to *Tauris*, and he himselfe with the Prince *Emirhamte* passed

Maxut-chan
feareth that
he shal not
conclude any
thing.

Maxut -chan
the Embassa-
dor come to
Constanti-
nople.

The Persian
king stirreth
and maketh
famous pre-
parations.

passed into *Sultania*, and hauing there visited certaine of his Ancestors sepulchers, hee went to *Zanga*, from thence to *Miana*, and then leauing *Giurgi Chalassi* on his left hand, and *Ardoul* on his right hand, he came to the place called *Turco- man*, from whence afterwards in foure dayes space hee arri- ued at *Tauris*. There he assembled together all his people, which came running in most obediently at his commande- ment, and there also had many consultations what he were best to do, For as yet he did not assuredly know, what *Sinan* meant to attempt, and therefore beganne to cast in his head diuers doubts, but all vncertaine, and as it were in the dark: but yet in the end, among a thousand ambiguities, hee re- solved with himselfe to send souldiers into *Georgia* towards the coaste of *Teflis*, where it was of necessitie that succours should be sent to those of the Fort: and withall determined also himselfe to goe forth with all his Armie from *Tauris* to *Caracach*, a place very commodious and neere to garde both *Tauris* and *Siruan*, being situate euen in the middest betweene the one and the other, and there to expect the re- mouing of *Sinan*: whose ambitious nature the king know- ing, did think it would fall out, that to surmount *Mustaffa* in glorie, he would haue enterprised to rune euen vpon *Tau- ris*, and to attempt some strange matter in those quarters. And so resting in this determination hee caused sufficient prouision to be made of corne, and of al other things need- full for the nourishment of cattell and men.

Among all the rest, that followed the kings Armie, a good company of the *Turcoman* Nation came vnto him also this yeare: so that the Persian host was verie great and suffici- ent, and able to attempt any famous enterprise. But when it came to the poynt, that he should send some of his Captaines into *Georgia*, he meant not to make choyce of any other for

The Persian
King at *Tau-
ris*.

The assem-
bly of the Per-
sian souldiers
The consul-
tations of the
Persian king.

Prouision of
necessaries.

The turcom
Nation fol-
loweth the
Armie of the
Persian King.

that purpose, but only of those, which by reason of their experience in those countries, and neare neighbourhood to the *Georgians*, both could, and by dusie were bound the rather to aide their neighbours, and endommage their enemies. And yet he made choice of *Tocomac*, and the rest, that hetherto in this warre had fought those battels, which before wee haue described, and comaunded them, that gathering their people together, they should depart into *Georgia*, and there ioyning themselves with *Simon* they shoulde worke the greatest annoyauce to the Turkish armie that possible they could: not sayling continually to aduertise him of their successe, and of the Turkes purposes: of whom if they shoulde learne either by the report of spies, or by any other means, that they would passe to *Tauris*, they shuld not sayle to pursue them, to the end they might ioyne together with him, and so encounter their enemies Armie. All these Captaines were most resolute men and most perfect in all militarie exercises, and being warned by the captivity of *Alycult-Chan*, they walked much more circumspectly & with the greater aduisement, but yet full of a thousand desires to attempt some great matter. They led with them about ten thousand persons, which being ioyned with the people of *Georgia*, amounted to the number of thirteene thousand; who presently as soone as they vnderstood of *Sinans* arriual at *Erzurum*, put themselves on their way towards *Tessis*. And to the end the Turkes should not heare any newes of them, they kept that way, which as yet was not discovered by the enemies, sauing only by the Tartarian spoylers and robbers, and that was the way of *Genge*, which is situate in a certaine Champayne, wherein there are neither Cities nor townes, but such as were either their friendes, or their subiectes, or their confederates, neither are there either any trecherous or

The III. Booke.

re

rebellious people between it and *Tauris*. And thus the Persians being arriued at *Genge*, sent word thereof to *Simon*, giuing him withal to vnderstande, that as soon as he perceaueth the Turkes to be remooued from *Chars*, he must sende them a watchword, for that they were ready to performe great matters in his behalfe, & keeping on the way of *Grim*, they wold come and ioyne themselves with him, and so being vnited together, they wold cause the Turkes to feel the disturbances and annoyances which were prepared for them.

But nowe was the Persian Embassador incountred and receaued in *Constantinople* with al due kind of honour, and after certain dayes brought in to do his embassage: wherein (as I vnderstood by many credible persons whiles I was in *Constantinople*, & afterward it was confirmed in by *Aleppo* the said Embassadors son, when rebelling against his king, and entertained by the Turke, he was placed in the gouernment of the said City of *Aleppo*) among other things, whereupon he did most eloquently discourse with the king, hee framed his speech in such sort, that it was sufficient to dissuade and withdraw him from this war, deliuering vnto him all those reasons, that might haue relation thereunto, and telling him, that his King *Mahamet*, who had but lately succeeded with great glorie in the happy kingdome of *Persia*, was alwayes greatlie grieved at these troubles of the wars, which if he thought hee coulde pacifie with the shedding of his blood and the spending of his life, he would not haue spared either the one or the other, and would also most willingly haue tryed all the remedies for it, that possibly he could. For he did at the first consider with himselfe howe contrarie it was to the mercifull nature of their common Prophete *Mahamet* to nourish contention, & much more to cause the publike spilling of the blood of his nations. Secondly he did

The III. booke.

Z 2

mant

The Persians at Genge aduertise Simon what he should do.

The Persian Embassador brought before King Amurath.

The speech of the Embassador.

Tocomac elected to go with an army into Georgia.

1600. Persians and Georgians,

The situation of the citie of Genge.

manifestly perceiue, how inconuenient a thing it was, that warre should succeed so suddenly vpon a peace, which was so royally and with so many sweere Capitulations concluded betweene *Tamas* and *Soliman*: after which peace Armes should neuer haue bene raised, but vpon some great quarrell and offence that should be offered. For certain it was, that the soule of him, who in his lyfe time was so readie and willing to sweare to peace and amity, was nowe for the violating and breach thereof much grieved and offended in that happy life (he might better haue saide in Hell) and was now also accused for the same before God by the elect soules of *Persia*. And yet at his first comming to the kingdome his Maiestie might well perceiue, how greatly *Persia* reioyced at his happinesse, hauing made publike declaration thereof, by sending vnto him an Embassage to that purpose by *Sultan Tocomac*, whereby hee might manifestly perceiue the good mind, and the maintenance of good faith and peace, on the behalfe of the Persian kings. And although in the shorte time of the raigne of ambitious *Ismahel* there was some rumour raised, that he meant to go into *Babylonia*, and some such like newes: yet it was but a youthly part, and an effect of that heat, which is commonly proper to such persons, as being kept a long while in strait prison, cannot vse their liberty with moderate termes, and as they ought, and therefore he had receiued due punishment for it by his sudden and v unexpected death. But the king that now is, aboue all other embraced amitie with his Maiesty, and did earnestly desire not only, that he might not make war against him, but also that he might find fauour to bee linked in friendship and loue with him, and so they two together might prosecute the noble and worthy enterprises against the Christian Nations: which warre could not be but iust and honest.

The III. booke.

for

for that it tended to the enlargement of their native religion, and to the suppression of the enemies & rebels to their own Prophet *Mahamet*. And that therefore his Maiesty would be pleased to temper and quench his anger conceaued, which had incensed him to take Armes against a king that was so friendly to him: and not to disturbe the peace of so many cities, that were nere vnto him not only in situation but also in religion; and more kind vnto him, then all the rest of the Nations in the world.

The King dismissed the Embassador without any other resolution at al: but only gaue order, that whatsoeuer he had to discourse touching this peace, he shoulde communicate it with his Visier. Many were the courses and discourses that happened in this businesse: for that the Turke required all those Cities and Countries, which till that time hee had conquered with the swoord: and the Embassadour on the other side had no warrant from his king to yeeld any more than was contained within *Georgia*, on this side the riuer *Araxis*, which hath bene so often mentioned heeretofore. Whereupon the said Ambassador coulde not but remaine in great feare, least he should be suspected for a spie, and so be ill entreated: wherewithall he did finde himselfe too manifestly charged by the speech that the Visier vsed towardes him. But hauing no further warrant, than is abouesaid, hee knewe not wherupon to resolue himselfe, or how he might remedie the euident danger of imprisonment or of some other sinister accident, and so finde meanes to be licensed to returne. In the end, when he perceiued himselfe straitned to the grant of these demands, receiuing also some threatnings withall, hee determined with himselfe to enlarge his speeches with the Visier in diuers & sundry particularities, and to giue him good hope, that he should be able to perswade

The III. booke.

Z3

with

The order, which Amurath gaue touching the Persian Embassador.

The demands of the Turkish King, for the conclusion of a peace.

The resolution of Maxut-Chan with himselfe,

with his king *Mahamet*, the velding vp of so much as *Amurath* had & did demand. And the rather to make the Turks beleene that he should obtain the same, they say, that he discouraged with *Mustaffa* and the other Visers vpon the late stirs, by occasiō wherof the Persia king was called to *Heri*, about the foresaid suspition, raised against *Abas Mirize* his son: and withall declared vnto the Turks, with what facilitie, vpon his return into Persia, he would acquaint the king with this demand, and so induce him to be contented with it: But whatsoeuer was then concluded betwixte them, (for in this point *Maxut-Chan* himself did alwayes forbear to tell the trueth either to me, or to any other, with whom he was familiar, And it is a very dangerous matter for an Historiographer to write diffusedly and at random of matters so secrete, for that in such extrauagations he may easily slip into a lie: the greatest monster & absurdity, that can be in one that writeth an historie) certaine it is, that *Maxut-Chan* was friendly and without any outrage sent from *Constantinople* to *Chars*, where *Sinan* was then with his army, & commissiō was giuen to *Sinan*, that without delay, and with all fidelitie he should cause the Persian to be accompanied to *Van*, and from thence into *Persia*, wheresoeuer the said Embassadour did especially desire: all which was vndoubtedly performed, as shall be set down in due place.

And now it is time to returne to *Sinan*, who from *Sinan* had sent the said Embassadour to the Court, & being departed from thence, arrived at the last in *Erzurum*, wher he took a survey of al his souldiers, of al his cornes, of al his munition, and to be brieft, of all that which was necessarie for this expedition: & when the fit season was come, wherein all these preparations were brought to their ripenesse, he withdrew himselfe from *Erzurum* with al his Army, and keeping on

The IIII. booke.

the way to *Hassan-Chalasi*, hee went towardes *Chars*, from whence he had dispatched the Persian Embassadour into *Persia*, as we haue told you, being verie fory and greatly discontented that no other conclusion could be wrought.

At the last *Maxut-Chan* arrived in *Persia* before the King, to whom he reported al that which hapned in this his Embassage: the sum whereof was, that the Turkish king would not otherwise condescend to any condition of peace, vnlesse there might be yeelded vnto him al the whole cuntry of *Siruan*, euen as far as *Demir-Capi* inclusiuely, presuming that all that cuntry belonged vnto him, which he had already gotten and conquered by his famous battels. Neither did olde *Maxut* forbear to tell him, that being growne into greatesuspition with the Turkish King, that he was come thither rather to spie how matters went, than to treat vpon any agreement of peace, and not knowing by what other means to auoid the manifest danger of imprisonment or death, but only by large offers & promises, he was faine to giue *Amurath* to vnderstand, that he was able to obtain of his Lord & master as much as *Amurath* demanded; but yet for all that, it now lay in his Maiesties power, either to cause the said conclusiō to be performed or not. The king for the present time remained very well satisfied with that which *Maxut* had done, & willed it should be signified vnto him, that he should require some reward of his trauell and trouble, for he was minded to requite him for it. *Maxut* requested nothing in particular, but referred all to the liberality and bounty of his king, who presentlie and without any delay bestowed vpon him the gouernement of a certaine small place nere vnto *Renan*, which notwithstanding, with the Kings fauour hee refused, desiring some greater rewarde, that might make him recompence for his greates expences. Wherein it pleased the King to fauour him, and gaue vnto

The IIII. booke.

Z 4

him.

Maxut-Chan telleth the K. what he had done.

The Persian king seemeth contented with the trauell of *Maxut*, and meaneth to rewarde him.

Maxut sent without any outrage to *Chars*.

Sinan in *Erzurum* surveyeth all his people, & provisions for warre.

Maxut-
made Cham-
berlaine of
Tauris by the
kings grant

him the charge of the chamber of *Tauris*, naming him the Chamberlaine, or as the *Turkes* call it, the *Defterdar* of that rich and large Citie.

But because one *Emir-Chan*, an ancient enemy and persecutor of *Maxut-Chan*, late in *Tauris* as chiefe Gouvernour, (whom the *Persians* call *Chan*, and the *Turkes* *Bassa*) he was not wel pleased with this new office, though verie honourable and of good importance, and yet without the displeasure and anger of his king he could not refuse it: wherof notwithstanding he perceaued he could haue but small ioy, in respect that he could not endure the neighbourhead of *Emir-Chan*, from whom hee greatly feared some pernicious treacherie. And therefore he resolved with himselfe to forsake *Tauris*, and to leaue a Vicegerent, there in his steed, and to withdraw himselfe to certaine lands of his own, about two small dayes iourney distant from *Salmas* towards *Tauris*, (the village or country, rearme it whether ye will, is called *Cassangich*, a pleasant and delightful place, and the ancient inheritance of *Maxut-Chan*) and there he meant to passe away the time, till it came into the Kings mind to dispose otherwise of him, as he should thinke good. But *Emir-Chan*, who still nourished the antike poyson of his anger and hatred against him, being not able to omit this occasion, which he thought to be most fit to bring him into disgrace with the king, caused the king to vnderstand, that *Maxut* was not contented most impudently to refuse the first office bestowed vpon him, but nowe also in contempt of his gifts & rewards, he had abandoned *Tauris*, & substituted in his place a most vile person, to represent the kinges Maiesty, and to manage his treasure: and that he himselfe remained absent, far from that citie & the Court there; hauing withdrawne himselfe into the confines of *Turky*, no doubt for some mischieuous

Maxut-Chan
forletheth
Tauris, and
withdraweth
himselfe to
Cassangich.

Emir-Chan
accuseth
Maxut-Chan.

The IIII. booke.

chieuous intent, either to yeeld himselfe vnto them, or els to haue intelligence with them touching this war, & peradventure he was guilty to himself, that he could not commit a greater error, then he had already committed, by offering *Siruan* to the *Turkish* king, & making promise of so large conditions. For the Emperor *Ottoman* might well make as importune & vnreasonable demands as he thought good, & might alwaies well hope to obtaine al good conditions of peace, but *Maxut-Chan* hauing done al this to rid himself out of the *Turks* hands, and hauing had such a safe and sure conuoy to guide him, it could be no otherwise but that he had discouered himselfe to be very familiar & partial on the *Turks* side, & a rebel to his own king. And that therefore it wer good to make trial of his inclination, & so peradventure auoyd som great change, tending to the losse and damage of *Persia*.

Very grieuously did the king take this refusal, that *Maxut* had made of these his rewards, & this his retire to *Cassangich* did put in his head a shadowe of that suspicion which *Emir-Chan* had motioned vnto him, & withal weighing in himself the foresaid reasons & considerations of *Emir-Chan*, he was the more confirmed in his hard conceit against *Maxut*, and in the end was perswaded to cal him before himself, & (if he could not by any other means, then) by torments and torture to vnderstand the trueth of matters how they went. And therefore he commanded *Emir-Chan*, that secretly he should send for him, & bring him before him. Exceeding great was the ioy of *Emir-Chan*, when he sawe that the king did not only go about vpon his request to punish his enemy, but also that it was to be done by his own hands: & therupon he thought long til he had brought this shame vpon *Maxut-Chan*, who hauing already heard some inklings and priuie whisperings of that which *Emir-Chan* intended, had vtterly resolved with himself to do any thing, rather than he wold

King Mahomet displeased with *Maxut-Chan*.

The king appointed *Emir-Chan* to bring *Maxut-Chan* to him.

The IIII. booke.

A a

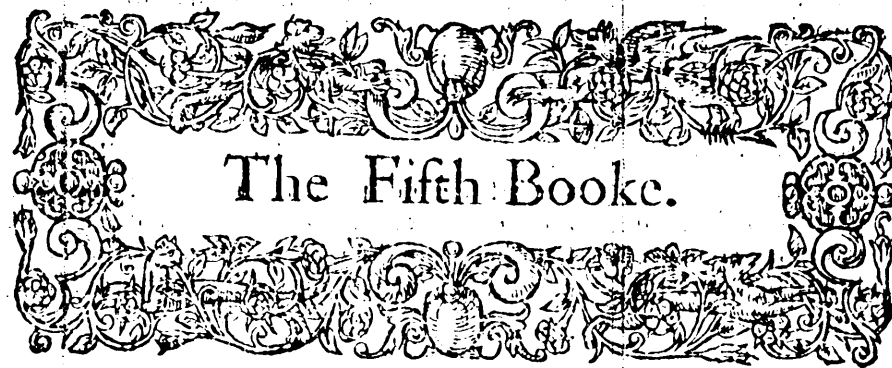
suffer

suffer himselfe to be deliuered into the kings hands. And therefore when there came vnto him frō *Emir-Chan*, xv. fellows for that purpose, who in the kings name summoned him to the court, without making any shewe that he took the matter otherwise then wel, he entertained the curteously, & made them great cheare, bestowing vpon them both words and meates most bountefully. But they being overcome with sleepe, which crept vpon them by reason of the good chear, which they took more liberally then they should haue done, were straitly bound, & with long cords hanged & let down into a deep wel, & there shut vp & secretly couered. And he himself, presently gathering together the most precious things that he had in his house, his gold, his siluer, his iewels, and his richest apparel, and setting his wives, his daughters, his sons, his brethren & his Neewes on horseback, & to be short, remoouing with him all his family, in the euening (for the day was not yet shut in) he put himself on the way towards *Salmas*, where the next day he arrived in very good time, and was there friendly entertained by the Turkish *Bassa*, & from him conueighed to *Van*, where he was also curteously welcomed by *Bassa Cicala*, and afterwards with an honorable cōpany of men, & large fauours of letters he was set on his way towards *Erzurum* to Generall *Sinan*: who being very glad of his coming; wrote by him to *Murath*, and so sent him vnto him with all diligence. And this was in effect the end of this first enterparlance of peace.

What afterwards became of *Maxut-Chan*, vpon his arrival at *Constantinople*, it shal be declared in due time and place, for that it is now requisite to return, where we left, to speak of *Sinan*, who (as we told you before) by the way of *Hassan-Chalasi* was come to *Chars*, and had dispatched away *Maxut-Chan*, who was sent vnto him from the king into *Persia*.

The end of the fourth Booke.

Tha



The Fifth Booke.

The Argument.

Sinan stayeth eight daies at *Chars*, and departeth for *reßis*.
Talogli and *Homar* are assaulted by *Simon*, by whom they are discomfited and *Homar* is slaine.
Sinan succoureth *Tchis*.
The Georgians and the Persians expect the Turkes to assault them: They assault the Turkes and discomfit them.
Sinan with all his Campe goeth against the Persians, who doe vtterly refuse to ioine battel with him.
Sinan goeth to *Chielder*, and mustreth his Armie.
He is mocked of his souldiers.
Sinan returneth to *Chars*, where he stayeth a moneth, and then returneth to *Erzurum*: and so is called to *Constantinople*.
Ebrain-Chan the new Embassador of *Persia* commeth to *Sinan*.
The Ambassadors at *Constantinople* with *Sinan*.
Solemne feasts for the circumcision of the Ottoman Prince.
Ebrain-Chan is sent prisoner to *Erzurum*.
Amurath committeth the succors for *reßis* to *Mahamet* the *Bassa*, who with twenty five thousand persons departeth in the latter end of August from *Erzurum*.
Mustassa the Georgian ioyneth with *Mahamet* at *Archelech*.
The Georgians and the Persians send to desie the Turkes, and to bid them to battell.
Mahamet the *Bassa* refuseth the Battell.
The Turkes passe ouer the riuer, and are assaulted by their enemies, and shamefullie discomfited.
The Turkes being so discomfited, retire themselves to *reßis*.
Mahamet the *Bassa* maketh a publike oration to his souldiers at *reßis*.

A a 2

Maha

The seruants of *Emir-Chan* let down into a wel by *Maxut-Chan*, and there couered.

Maxut-Chan flieth out of *Persia*, and goeth to the Turkes.
Maxut-Chan at *Salmas*.
Maxut-Chan at *Van*.

Maxut at *Constantinople*.

Mahamet leauieth a taske among his souldiers and so departeth.
A disorder in the departure among the Curdi.

At Altunchala a counterfeit Counsel-house called to betray Mustaffa, who woundeth the Lieutenant of Mahamet, the Bassa of Caracmit, and Mahamet himselfe.

Amurah being angry at these misfortunes; reproveth the Bassas of his court for their improvidence and follie: and particularlie findeth himselfe grieved with Sinan, who maketh a proud and an arrogant answer to the King: Whereupon he is banished from the Court, and Sciaus the Bassa, sonne in law to the King, is chosen chiefe Visier in the roome of Sinan.

THE

THE FIFTH BOOKE.



Sinan remayned at Chars eight dayes, during which time, hee surueighed againe all his souldiers, & al his corn, & the set himself on his way towards Tomanis, with resolution there to build a Fort, as I told you before. He passed by Archelech, and left behind him Peruana

Sinan at Chars 8. daies.

Giol & Triala, and in the end arrived at Tomanis; where, a litle before he came thither, was arrived also the Capiglarchechiafi from the Court, bringing with him the seal and the writ, whereby the king had named him to be chiefe Visier. For which good newes all the Bassas in the army shewed great signes of reioycing.

Sinan receiveth newes that he is chosen chiefe Visier by the King.

At Tomanis he consulted with al his chief Bassas, touching his designment for the Fort that was to be made, and euery one of them deliuered diuers Models of it: but none of them all could be put in execution, by reason of the raine, which fel so largely, so aboundantly, and so continually, that the souldiers had neither leasure nor meanes to employ themselves in that work, and especially because Sinan did greatly fear, that the enemy taking the oportunity of this rain, of the strait, and of the building, might peradventure assault the armie, and finding it out of order & in ill plight, might greatly endamage it. This raine continued falling for the space of eight daies, in all which time neither did beame of the Sun break out, nor the skie cleare: Howbeit waxing at the last somewhat lightsome, Sinan determined to remooue from thence, and to cary onwards his succours to Teflis.

Great raine at Tomanis.

As soone as the Army was raised, and presently after they

Talogli and
Homar goe
out to fetch
in corne and
cattell,

the prepara-
tion of Sinan

Simon al-
saleteth Ta-
logli and
Homar.

Homar the
Sangiaccio
slaine, and all
his people
discomfited.

they had passed the strait of *Tomanis*, *Talogli* the *Aga* or Cap-
taine of the *Ianizzaries* of *Damasco*, and *Homar* the *Sangiaccio*
or Lord of *Saffetto*, who had alwaies hether to kept com-
pany together in the Army, because they were neighbors,
whiles they dwelt at *Saffetto* and *Damasco*, had now also de-
termined to go together to seek their fortune. For they had
received priue intelligence, that hard by a little out of the
way there was good store of corne and cattell, and thereup-
on they resolved to fetch in that booty. And so gathering
together a company of souldiers, to the nūber of two thou-
sand, who were all very desirous of some refreshing, be-
cause they were in some necessity for corne, they went out
for this pray. But *Simon Chan*, who hauing aduertised the
Persians of the departure of *Sinan* from *Chars*, and ioynd
himself vnto them, had withdrawne himselfe to follow the
Army a far off, and had diuided his souldiers into such pla-
ces, where there was either corne, or water, or any such like
thing, that might allure the Turkes to scatter themselves
from the Campe: As soon as he was aware of them, that they
had carelessly run out to lay hold on this desired booty, being
accompanied with his owne people, & a fewe other Persi-
ans, he tel vpon them, & hewed them all to peeces, scarce leauing
the *Aga* of the *Ianizzaries* any leasure to fly, who being ay-
ded by the swiftnesse of his horse (or whether hee were in the
front marching before all the rest, I know not) put himselfe
to flight, and so escaped with his life. In so much as the *San-
giaccio* above named, and all the rest were there slaine, and in
briefe there escaped not one, but only the foresaid *Aga*.

Sinan pursued on his iourney, & in the space of two daies
came to *Teflis*, where presently he gathered together all the
chief of his Army, & calling also into the *Dinano* the *Capi-
tarchedragh*, he began to take order, that euery man vpon his
oath should depole the truth, touching the greatnes of that
cuntry.

cuntry. And all this was, but onely to make it euidently ap-
peare, that the information which *Mustaffa* had giuen to the
king, that *Teflis* was a citie lik to *Damasco*, was vtterly vn-
true, for that *Teflis* was but a small peece of ground, contain-
ing but a few houses, and few inhabitants in them, and not
only unequal to *Damasco*, but also vnworthy in any sort to
be compared vnto it, for that it did far surpass *Teflis* in all
things, aswel for riches and bignes, as for multitude of peo-
ple. At the same time also he distributed his treasure, and the
succors which he brought, among the souldiers of the fort,
comfoming them with good speeches, & with lustie & liuely
promises of great matters. And for as much as all the souldiers
there made great complaints against the Bassa, that was their
Captain in the fortresse, *Sinan* caused an information, or (as
the Turkes call it) a *Teflis* to be framed against him, & hauing
found him guilty that he had conuerted the souldiers pay to
his own vse, he condemned him in restitution thereof, and
discharging him immediately frō his office, he did substitute
in his place *Guissuf Bey*, one of the Georgian Lordes, who for
the ancient enmity between him and *Simon* had yeilded him
self to the Turkes, & was by them so welcommed, that *Sinan*
trusted him with the custody of that fort, which with so ma-
ny dangers had bene maintained and defended till that day.

When this was done, *Sinan* departed frō thence with all his
army, & while he was vpon his departure, ther arriued Em-
bassadors from *Leuentagli* lord of *Zaghen* (of whom we haue
oftentimes made mentiō before) who were very wel welcome
to *Sinan*, especially for that aswel by their relation, as also by
the testimony of the souldiers of *Teflis* themselves, he had bin
certified how much good *Leuentagli* had done vnto the, by
sending to the fort vittails, money, & whatsoeuer els he had,
that might be commodious for them in that their continual
necessity. Which an truth was so great, that it was an oc-
casion

Sinan enqui-
reth of the
greatnes of
Teflis, to the
reproch of
Mustaffa.

Sinan succor-
reth the Fort
at *Teflis*.

Guissuf Bey,
the Runegat
put in trust
with the kee-
ping of *Teflis*
fort.

Ambassadors
from *Leuen-
togli* to *Sinā*.

The rumour
prooued false
that Reffis
was yeelded.

Sinan hono-
reth the Em-
bassadors.

Mutafside to
General Sinā.

casion of spreading abroad a general fame, whereby it was reported, that the said Fort was yeelded by the Turks to the *Georgians*, yea and the rumor of it passed euen into *Italy*. But it was all false: For notwithstanding so great penurie of all things, and so great a siege, yet was the Fort still maintained and held in the possession of those fortunate people: Which was afterwarde the matter and occasion of continuing those motions and mutations, which after fell out so com- modious to the state of Christendom. The Embassadors excused their Lord, for not comining himselfe in person, to do reuerence to *Sinan*, for that his sicknesse and certen other priuat respects did hinder him from doing that, which hee both desired, and also ought to haue done. All which was most acceptable to *Sinan*, who in sign therof caused the Em- bassadors of *Leuentogli*, to be apparelled in cloth of gold, and sent vnto himselfe a battel-axe and sword all gilt and set with jewels, promising vnto him great matters, and with gallant words declaring vnto him his exceeding affection of loue & confederacie with him. Yea and some say, that *Sinan* sent letters to *Alesiandro* himself, wherein he made a motion vnto him for some treaty of peace, telling him, that hee being a friend both to the Turks and to the Persians, ought to trie al the means he could to pacifie these troubles, and to recon- cile the minds of the two kings. But in truth what was done in so secrete a matter, I could neuer yet learne any certenty to write: and therefore without any further speach of it, wee wil prosecute the progresse of *Sinans* armie.

The day following, *Sinan* & his army passed the strait of *Tomanis*, & then came before him *Mutafside Bassa*, borne in *Aleppo*, & now gouernor of the same city (whō I had often- times in eare) declaring vnto him, that not far frō them ther was great store of corne & cattell, and no body to keepe the same, but only a few *Georgians*, & therefore it would be wel if he

would

would send for the saide prairie, whereof (yea though it had beene much greater) his Armie stood in such need. *Sinan* did carrie a good affection to *Mutafside*, and therefore was easily induced to send for the bootie: but because he was in some feare, that if he should not send out a good Company of Souldiers for it, there might haue happened to his vntailers some accustomed mishap, & being prin- cipally moued with the fresh remembrance of the fini- ster accident that lighted vpon *Talagli* and *Homar*, he gaue order, that to fetch in this Corne and Cattell there should goe out ten thousand horsemen and their seruants: among whom was also the said *Mutafside*, as Captaine of them all.

Sinan appoin-
teth 10000.
souldiers to
goe with Mu-
taseide.

Now *Tocemac*, *Simon*, and other *Persian* Captaines had gathered themselves together, & stood waiting & watch- ing, when any band of the Turkish Souldiers should come down for the reliefes of Corne, & hiding themselves in certaine treacherous valleys neere vnto them, expected occasion, wherein they might make some notable disco- uery of themselves. Whereupon the foresaide Souldiers beeing come, according to the appointment of *Sinan*, to fetch away these vntailers, and beeing arrived at the place where they were, they beganne to load their beastes with- all: and whiles they were most delighted with the sweet- nes of their pray, and had now charged almost all their Mules and horses with that which it most pleased euery man to choose, the hidden *Persians*, al on a sodaine, issued out of their treacherous valley and eured among them. But *Mutafside*, as soone as he discovered the *Persians* in so great number, & in so good time to come vpon the, fore- seeing the vniuersall slaughter of all his people, was the first man that fled, and with an unhappie signe of ill lucke,

The Georgians
& the Persians
watch for the
Turkes, to set
vpon them.

The Persians
set vpon the
Turkes.
Mutsade flie
th first of al.

The W. Bouke.

Bb

bee

7000. Turkes
hewen in pec-
ces
Mutafade
bringeth
newes to Sinā
of the discom-
fiture.

Sinan with all
his Campe re-
moveth to set
vpon the Per-
sians.

The Persians
refuse to joine
battel, & retire
to their safe
places.

he left the rest, that either would not, or could not save
themselves by flight, to the furie of their enemies: who
pursuing their desired victorie, hewed in peeces seven
thousand of them; and some they carried away alive, lea-
ding with them their Mules and horses laden with their
stolen bootie. *Mutafade* was the first that brought to *Sinan*
the unhappie newes of the *Persians* treacherie; and after
him the slaughter that followed, was also reported
vnto him by the fugitives that escaped by flight. And
thereupon *Sinan* dispatched away the *Bassa* of *Caramania*,
and a great band of Souldiers with him, with commande-
ment that in what place soever, and in what sorte soever
he found them, hee shoulde ioyne battel with them. And
these squadrons of foote-runners being gone afore, he him-
selfe presently raising all his campe, with all speed followed
the said *Bassa* of *Caramania*. But in either the one nor the o-
ther arrived in time, for the *Persians* immediately after the
fore said victorie, without any staying, having recomened
their pray, had withdrawn themselves betwene the
Mountaines into certaine secure places, which were known
wen onely to such, as by daily experience had perfected
learned the diuerse & difficult passages of *Caucasia*. The ar-
my of *Sinan* marched on for the space of some miles; till
they ascended a certaine hill, from whence they discouered
the *Persians*, who having disposed of their pray in the
places before named, were now returned to pursue the ar-
my. & to watch some fit opportunity of new battell. As
soone as the *Persians* descried the whole army, they were
astart to meete with themselves and feared also least *Sinan*
would descende from the hill, and so assault them to their
exceeding great losse. For they did well remember, what
dangers and losses *Yusuf* had procured vnto them.
The V. Booke.

d 2

The V. Booke

when they too boldly & carelessly had suffered themselves
to be induced to carry for him, with so great a multitude
& so many fires, in the *campaine* of *Chieldon*. & therefore
they took a better course for their owne security, and so
resolved to returne backe into their strong places within
the mountaine. And yet they could not be so quick in this
their retreat, but that the *Turkes* who following *Sinan* were
now descended to pursue them, out tooke some fewe of
them, & destroyed about fifty or threescore of the whose
heads in signe of triumph they carried a good part of their
way vpon the point of their speares: and alive they took
not in all about threescore and ten. And about blow of
At the last *Sinan* with all his host passed these treacheries
of his enemies, & came to *Triala*, where he vnderstood by
diuers inhabitants of those villages, that of sundry *Persians*
& *Georgians* also which had trauelled that way, they had se-
cretly learned, how the king of *Persia*, in his owne person,
with an exceeding great army being departed out of *Tana-
is*, was coming to meete the *Turkish* host, & to bidde it
battel: & that his purpose was, that the 4 captaines which
were combined together with *Sinan*, keeping on their way
towards *Georgia*, should set vpon the hinder part of the *Tur-
kish* army, & at the very same instant, hee himselfe with his
forces would set vpon the forefront. At this newes he made
present proclamation throught his army, that al the hea-
uy carriages, & such as were vnprofitable for battell should
be sent before towards *Ardachan*, & that euery mā should
put himselfe in order & readines with his arms & munition
for the iage to *Tana*, whither he himselfe in battell, &
to meete with the king his enemy. In the meane while
as is reported by many as wel *Persians* as *Turks*, he dispatched
certain *watch* or posts to the *Persian* king being at *Ardachan*,
The V. Booke

B b 2

The V. Booke

The King
of Persia
is coming
against
him.

Sinan being
at Triala with
all his army,
vnderstandeth
that the King
of Persia with
a very great
army is com-
ming against
him.

Sinan procla-
meth, that all
his army
should make
ready to go to
Tana.

The King
of Persia
is coming
against
him.

Sinan with his
army in the
plaines of
Chielder.

The order of
the Army.

Sinan maketh
three shewes
with his army
& exerciset it
with fighting
& skirmishing

countrae him, that he would send our some Ambassador,
for a peac, thinking with himself (as some doe coniecture)
by these meanes he should remoue out of the Kings mind,
his resolution to come & assaile him, if any such meaning
hee had. The proclamation was put in execution accord-
ding to his appointment, and having sent away the saide
carriages & heauy burdens towards *Ardachan*, he himselfe
with certaine loads of corne & vittels, (so many onely as
were sufficient for the voiage) descended into the open &
large plaines of *Chielder*, where presently he mustred al his
people that caried weapons, and gaue notice, that before
he would settle himself towards *Tauris*, he meant to make
triall of the readines & nimblenes of al his army, & to set
forth such a shew, as though they ioyned battel with their
enemies: which presently the next morning without any
further delay he put in execution accordingly. For first he
set forward five hundred peeces of small artillery, placing
them in good order after the manner of a large trench, & af-
ter this shot, three rows of lanizzaries, & behind them he
tooke vp his own place. Then followed al the army which
he parted into two great & wide wings, which after the fa-
shion of a moone compassed about a great deale of ground
entermingling also heere and there some footemen, with
his horsemen, & some harcubuses among his darts & lar-
ces. Behind al the armie were placed al the carriages which
were requisite for the urgent necessity of vitaille, and be-
hind the carriages went the Arrieregarde conducted by
two Bassaes with viii. thousand men. The army being thus
ordered and disposed, hee sent out some fewe Turks, to
shewe themselves vpon the top of certaine hilles, and as
though they had bin enemies, that came to seize vpon his
army, he presently caused al his artillery to be discharged,
The V. Booke.

and commaunded euey man to bhirnish, & to bestir him-
selfe, after the same manner and also together with the same
kinde of behaviour, as if their ennemie were present before
them. And so the tempest of the Harguebuzes being ouer
passed, the launces or Indian canes discharged, & the ex-
ceeding thicke storme of arrowes ceased, there did shine
round about on all sides, such a brightnes of swords, hel-
mets, and breast-plates, yeclding forth great lightnings &
as it were fierie beames, that it enkindled the mindes of
them all to battel: and then againe the drums & trumpets
made such a noise, the Ensignes, creasts, lineries, and de-
uises were so turned and tossed, & the aire so replenished
with severall colours of blew and yellowe, & to be briefe
there was such a tumult of al things, as though it had been
the turmoile of a very battel indeed. After a while he cau-
sed the retrait to bee sounded, and then setting all his ar-
my in order againe, there was such another like shewe
commaunded the second time, and after that the third al-
so, which indeede was performed rather with the scorn
and derision of all his souldiers, who thought it to be as it
were but childrens play, then that any commendation
did indeed arise thereby to ambitious *Sinan*.
When these counterfeit shewes of war were finished, yet
did he not goe forwards towards *Tauris*, as he had apoin-
ted, but remained eight daies in those plaines of *Chielder*, at
which time there arriued out of *Persia* *Aidor* the Aga, as Am-
bassador from the King, who was entertained by the gene-
ral with great ioy. Diuerse and sundry things did this Em-
bassador propounde, which were likewise propounded by
the King, but the conclusion of al was, that the king of
Persia would voluntarily belinquish *Chars* and *Tessis*, and
remain (as hee did before) in amitie with *Amurath*:
The V. Booke.

Sinan derided
by his Souldi-
ers.

The King of
Persia offe-
reth *Chars* v-
pon conditi-
on of peace.

Sinan promi-
seth to intreat
a peace: & re-
quireth a
new embassa-
dor.

Sinan retur-
neth to Chars
& there remai-
neth in idle-
ness a whole
moneth.
Sinan repro-
ued by his sould-
iers.

Sinan depar-
teth from
Chars to re-
turne to Erzi-
rum.

and therefore hee desired *Sinan* that he would not faile to
conclude of a peace, because he himselfe had comma-
nded to returne back into *Persia*, *Sinan* promised to deale
with *Amir Arslan* for this peace, if king *Mahomet* would send
a new ambassador to *Constantinople*. Vpon which conclusi-
on the said *Aider* returned into *Persia*, & being accompani-
ed with sure guides arriued at *Chars* before his king to whom
he declared what things he had seene, & what promises
he had receiued of *Sinan*; and withal exhorted the king to
send a new ambassador to the *Turkish* Court, causing him
first to enter couenants with *Sinan* (as he had promised,) &
for so it would bee an easie matter to procure a good and
speedie resolution. After this, when the publike rumor
was found to be false, that was spread abroad of the com-
ming of the *Persian* king, *Sinan* instead of going to *Tauris*,
resolved to goe to *Chars* & so to returne into his confede-
rate Countries. At *Chars* he remained a whole month, in
very meere and absolute idleness, with the generall mar-
raile & murmur of his souldiers, who indeed were asto-
nished, when they perceiued they were come out, not to
fight, nor to passe into their enemies Countries; not to
make any conquest by war, but to be idle and to play, to
the great damage & expence of their Kings Reuenues,
and the disturbance of his whole kingdom.
At the last he departed from *Chars*, for that it was now
winter, & the frosts and snows round about had wrought
his souldiers vncustomed miseries. In *Hassan* *Chalassi* they
celebrated their most solemne feasts, and afterwarde with
all his Army hee withdrew himselfe to *Erzurum*, from
whence he did presently dismiss euery man to goe and
winter in his own Country, and he himselfe remained still
in the said Citie. From this place he sent diligent infor-

The V. Booke.

186

186

mation, as well as the departure of the *Capiguldrobeaschi*, as
also by certaine *Wahachi* dispatched away by post, of the
succours that he left at *Tefla*, of the losses that he recei-
ued by his enemies, of all that wherein he had found *Mu-
stafa* an atraiter, of the coming of the *Persian* embassa-
dor, of the promise made vnto him touching a newe em-
bassador, and to be short of al his whole actions. And be-
sides all these Narrations, he aduertised the king, that the
enterprize of *Persia* was a very hard, long, and difficult
matter, & such a one, as there needed another kind of pre-
paration, then as yet was appointed for it, & that if *Amu-
rah* did desire to subdue & overcome *Persia*, it was then
very necessary, that he should speake with him at large, &
discourse vpon many particularities, which neither might
he commit to paper, neither could they bee declared by
pen, without exceeding great tediousnes: & in this point
he did write very much, & shewed himselfe to be very pe-
titoric. And again, besides these first *Wahachi*, he dispa-
ched also new messengers, to be very instar & importunate
telling him, that it was not possible for him to signifie by
writing, what he purposed to report vnto him by word of
mouth, for the easie accomplishment of his commenced en-
terprize. Nothing in the world did *Sinan* hate more then this
war: & for the appeasing thereof he did not omit to accept
al possible meanes, having his mind altogether bent against
the affairs of the Christians in *Europe*, & for y^e diuerting of
these wars from the Christians to some other quarters, he vsed
& practised continually a thousand deuises. At the last he
wrought so much, he intreated so much, he writ so many
letters, & solicited the matter so earnestly, that the king was
persuaded to send for him to *Constantinople* as soon as euer he

Sinan sendeth
aduertisement
to the court, of
al that had
happened.

Sinan repor-
teth the enter-
prize of *Persia*
to be very
hard.

Sinan maketh
earnest request
to goe to *Cō-
stantinople*.

Sinan abhor-
reth the wars
in *Persia*, and
desireth that
they were tur-
ned against
the Christians.

Sinan called
to *Constanti-
nople*.

The V. Booke.

Bb 4

was

was certified of the arriual of the new embassador frō Persia, of whom *Sinan* had before aduertised him. For among the difficulties, which *Sinan* had propounded to *Amurath*, he was resolved vpon this conclusion, that it would be convenient, either to receiue the new embassador of Persia, if he came with honorable conditions; and so to grow to a peace, or if the embassador came not, or if after his coming they could not agree vpon the peace, then to put in execution those his conceits and designements, whereof he must needs in particular talke with him by word of mouth. The promised embassador, called *Ebram-Chan*, a man of great eloquence, and in Persia esteemed to bee of great valour came to *Sinan* accordingly: whereof *Sinan* presently gaue intelligence to *Amurath*, beseeching him againe, that he would permit him to come to *Constantinople*.

Ebram-Chan
the new Embassador of
Persia cometh to Sinā.

Sinan goeth
to Constantinople and fir-
teth in his
place of vicier

the
new
embassador

Ebram-Chan
speareth with
the king & ex-
horteth him to
peace.

Sinan obtained his desire, and hauing secretly sent forth of his Stratōs certaine discours to *Tessla*, which came vnto the in very fit time, he went himself to the court where he attended the vniuersall government of the whole empire. But at his first coming to the presence of the king, (wherein he neuer discoursed with him vpon any thing but onely of the coming of the Persian embassador) the conditions were established, which they had to require, for the reducing of the Capitulations of this peace to a good end. After which agreement the embassador being nowe come, & most magnificently receaued in Constantinople was brought in, who with magnifical & glorious speeches endeavored to persuaide *Amurath*, that his king had a most ardent desire to be reconciled and to ioine his forces with him, & that for this purpose hee was now specially come thither: & withal, that if he also would answere him with

The V. Booke.

the

the like mind, there would ensue thereof the greatest vni- tie & friendship, that euer was betweene the *Mahometans*, since the time that their great *Propher* had deliuered to the world that wicked law of theirs. *Amurath* caused answere to be giuen him, that hee should talke with his *Visier*, and with him treat of al the matter touching the peace: & so he was by the king entertained & dismissed, both at one time.

The answere
of Amurath to
the embassador
Ebram-Chan.

In the meane time, the *Turke* had resolved to cal to *Constantinople*, his eldest sonne *Mahamet*, who was to succede him in the Empire, and to circumcise him according to the custome of the *Barbarians*, following therein the inueterate Lawe of the *Hebrewes*. And for this purpose from al the prouinces of Christendome, by messengers dispatched in poste, were the catholike Princes solemnely inuited to the feastes, that vpon this occasion were prepared. According to this their inuiting there came thither embassadors out of many countries of *Europe* with great giftes and presentes in token of peace and confederacie. And among the rest the *Venetians* sent thither one *Giacomo Soranzo*, who by the great satisfaction, which he made to the king & all those of his court, reuiued the amity and friendship, which flourished betweene the king and that Senate.

Embassadors
of diuers prin-
ces come to
Constantino-
ple.

The Venetians
send Giaco-
mo Soranzo
to Constanti-
nople.

In the great market place of *Constantinople*, which the *Turkes* call *At Maidan*, there were rounde about in all places erected certen high Scaffoldes: where the multitude should sit to behold the pleasant sight, of firewoorkes, of bankets, of musikes, of wrastringes, and of whatsoever else, was there to be shewed for the declaration of so greate a ioy. The king himselfe was present at the said triumphs in a certen Palace, (situate in the most open place of all that large and broad streete,) where within a great lowpe or windowe aloft, all closed about and couered aboue with

The V. Booke.

Feastes at the
circumcision
of Prince Ot-
toman.

C c

planks

plancks and boards, through the transparent holes & lattises thereof, not beinge of any body, in the company of his wife, he discovered and beheld all things that were there performed. All the embassadors had their scaffolds prepared and furnished, & the *Persian* embassador had his scaffold also sentrall to himselfe, but yet with a farr different intent & respect then the rest: for that the other embassadors were honored & regarded, as it was convenient and agreeable to their degrees and estates, and receiued such entertainements as might be shewed in such kind of Barbarous spectacles. But the *Persian*, by reason of the scornes and injuries done unto him, did not onely not reioice at the saide feastes and triumphes, but also ministred himselfe great matter of laughter and sport to the beholders. For among sundrie other wrongs and outrages, that by the commandement of *Amurath* were done to the *Persian* nation, by hanging vp certaine counterfeited pictures of Persians made of limes and stickes, and then burning them, and in many scornefull sortes abusing them: the king, for the great disdain that he had taken against *Ebrahim Chan*, as one that not condescending to the conditions of peace which he expected, nor yielding any more then *Manus Chan* and *Adoro Agy* had done before, seemed to haue come as a spie to marke the Turkish affaires, or to mocke King *Amurath*, rather then to put in execution any good matter, that he had to pacifie the mindes of the two mightie princes: commaunded that the saide embassador, vnder sure and trustfull words should bee ledde prisoner to *Erzurum*, vntill further order were taken with him. And so *Amurath* for all this remained still in his office of Chief *Emir*, and attended the publicke gouernement of the *Turke* Booke.

Ebrahim Chan
sent prisoner
to Erzurum.

kingdome, without any intermission, vntill suche time, as those matters fell out, which in place conuenient shall be declared vnto you: so that now it is time to returne to *Tessis* and *Charr* where wee left, which two places without further succours must needes fall into the enemies hands. For *Sinan* beinge nowe gone to *Constantinople*, and the soldiers beinge besieged in *Tessis*, and hauing receiued none other reliefe, but onely that little, which in the beginning of the spring *Sinan* had secretly caused to be conueied vnto them, and which would scarce be sufficient for all that yeere, so that (it is to be thought) they were in verie great necessitie, there was no remedie, this other yeere, whiles *Sinan* remained at the court, but to send some new succours vnto the, & the rather for that it was not possible to meet with so good an occasion to send them any help, as he found before his departure from *Erzurum*. In this greates necessitie therefore he did boldlie & freely counsel the king, to send a new garrison of soldiers to *Van*, to the end that no *Persians* should passe on this side *Van* to endamage those countries: and next, that vnder the conduct of some fit Captaine he would send some succours to *Tessis*. Vpon which point the king asked *Sinan* his opinion, & willed him to bethinke himselfe of one, to whom this expedition might bee committed. *Sinan* propounded diuers and sundrie persons vnto him: but none of them pleased *Amurath*, who was minded to bestowe this charge vpon *Alahmet* the *Bassay* Nephew to *Alustaffa Bassa*, and at that respect equall and hated by *Sinan*, whom, albeit hee told the king that he was none of the best for such a seruice, yet would hee be made to employ him in this supplie, as it were in despite, and derision of the aduice, which *Sinan* gaue him. And therefore hee sent

Sinan aduise
seth *Amurath*
to send a gar-
rison to *Van*:
& succour to
Tessis, vnder
some good
Captaine.

Amurath com-
mitteth the
succours of
Teflis to Ma-
hamet Bassa.

25000. men
follow Maha-
met Bassa to
Teflis for suc-
cour thereof.

this *Mahamet* to *Erzurum*, with the title of the *Bassa* of that Province, displacing from thence *Kesun Bassa* the *Gouverneur* of that Region, and withal added therunto the honor & dignitie of the *Captainship* over the army for *Teflis*. Presently vpon this resolution commandement was giuen to the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, called *Hassa* the *Eunuke*, to *Mustaffa* sometime called by the name of *Manuechiar* the *Georgian*, who (as weetolde you before) exchanged his Native religion with the *Turkish* superstition, to all the *Sangiacchi*, the *Curdi*, & al the souldiers of *Erzurum*, that reducing themselves vnder the Standerd of *Mahamet Bassa*, they shoulde followe him to *Teflis*, and obey him in all thinges that hee should command them. Whereupon there assembled together out of all the saide places about five and twentie thousand persons, and treasure sufficient was appointed for the reliefe of the Souldiers in the besieged fort, together with Corne and all other necessarie prouisions for them, so that euery thing was put in readines for this enterprise, in such large and liberrall manner, that it might abundantly haue sufficed. Commandement likewise was giuen to the *Bassa* of *Atippo*, & to the *Bassa* of *Maras*, that with al their souldiers, which they had in pay, they should repaire to *Van*, and there abide till winter. These two *Bassas* performed the Kings commandement, and were not disturbed nor molested in any sort by the enemy. *Mahamet* the *Bassa* also performed it likewise, together with all his Souldiers aboue named, but yet with a farre different and contrarie fortune, for that there happened vnto him diuers grieuous & pernicious accidents, which made this enterprise vnfortunate and miserable, whereof it is now fit time to discourse in prosecuting the due course of our historie.

The V. Booke.

In

In the end of August *Mahamet* the *Bassa* departed from *Erzurum*, with the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, all the *Sangiacchi*, the *Curdi*, & all the souldiers subiect to his gouernement, carrying also with him money, corne, & all other necessarye munition. At the end of eight daies he arriued at *Chars*, & from thence passed to *Archelech*, being in the meane time neither assailed nor disturbed by any enemy. At *Archelech* he found *Mustaffa Bassa*, the *Widowes Sonne*, and al his souldiers belonging vnto him, who excusing himselfe with liuely reasons for that he came not to meete with him at *Erzurum* according to his duty, was most ioyfully entertained, & honored by *Mahamet* with Cloath of Golde, and Sworde and Target all guilte, and withal admonished to continue obedient and subiect to *Amurath*, not failing to conduct him with his garrison appointed for *Teflis*, and to choose that way, which he thought to be the shortest, the safest, and the most commodious for them: for that some were of opinion that it would be lesse danger to trauel by the way of *Tomanis*, & some other by the way of his country. Wherein after many discourses *Mustaffa* did readily resolue him, that the easiest and shortest way lay through his owne country, as being also the safest in his opinion. The counsell of *Mustaffa* pleased *Mahamet* greatly, who made choice of him to be the guide of his army, reposing himselfe wholly vpon his good aduise, and so they departed together from thence towards *Teflis*, passing through *Altunbala* & *Carachala*, both belonging now to the said *Georgians*, but in times past to the *Widow* his mother: abounding with all thinges necessary for the sustenance of man: neither were they ever disturbed by the enemies forces. From these quarters they went forward to a Castell called *Gori*, sometimes appertaining to the *Georgians*, & gouerned

Mahamet Bassa the General departeth from *Erzurum*.

Mustaffa the *Georgian* cometh to *Archelech* to meet with *Mahamet Bassa* going for *Teflis*.

By the aduise of *Mustaffa* General *Mahamet* resolued to goe to *Teflis* through the *Widowes* country.

The V. Booke.

C c 3

ned

ned by a brother of that *Ginsuf*, who had yeelded him-
selfe to the Turkes, but now by reason of that brothers
death it is fallen into the hands of the Turkes: from which
place they discouered in certaine fieldes a great army of
Georgians, mingled with *Persians*, but yet apparlled after
the manner of *Georgia*.

These were those Captains of *Persia* with *Simon-Chan*, so
often mentioned heertofore: who were sent from the *Per-
sia* king, (as in diuerse yeers before they also were) to succor
& aid the *Georgian* forces. For the king thought, that they
were sufficient enough to performe that busines, vnder-
standing, that the Turkes had sent no greater armie thither:
and so by their good helpe there might peraduenture ensue
a quiet end and pacification of all these troubles. And ther-
fore staying himselfe in *Tauris*, hee had sent the aforena-
med Captains into *Georgia*, who keeping on the way of
Genge and of *Grin* had secretly conioyned themselves with
Simon, and dissembled & counterfeited their apparel, only
because the meanes of peace should not bee disturbed, and
their king accompted a falsifier of his faith, who vnder the
vaile of a treaty vpon truce & amity, whiles *Amurat* atten-
ded nothing else but to succour and defend his conquered
Countries, without any annoyancce or disturbance to any o-
ther places, went about to procure the slaughter and ouer-
throw of the Turkes. These then, as soon as they saw the *Tur-
kish* army, & perceived that they themselves were also descried
by them, sent swift haraulds vnto the Turkes to bid them battell, &
with haughtie and iniurious words to defie them to fight.
Mahamet Bassa, who had no other desire, but onely to
bring his succors safe to *Tessia*, receiued this defiance with
great griefe of minde, and hauing dismissed the haraulds,
hee went about in the best manner he could, to delay the
The V. Booke.

The Persians
counterfeited
their apparel,
to the end the
meanes of a
peace should
not be distur-
bed.

the Georgians
and Persians
desire the
Turks to the
fight.

Mahamet Bas-
sa refuseth
battell.

execution of this their prouocatiō to battell. That euening
hee was fauored in his purpose by very great & continuall
raine, which couertly excused his delay & feare, euery man
thinking that it proceeded rather vpon some reasonable &
iust impediment then vpon his cowardise. But the next
morning, when the sun shined bright vpon the face of the
earth without any cloud at all, the *Georgians* & the *Persians*,
hauing vnted themselves, & waxen more resolute then e-
uer they were, drew neer to the Turkish armie, & followed
it while it marched. And so both the armies kept in sight
one of another, without any act at all or motion of war, vntil
about foure howrs & a halfe before night, at what time the
Turks arriued neer to a riuer, that separated the one army frō
the other. *Mahamet* and *Mustassa* fell into consultation be-
tweene themselves, whether they should passe ouer the ri-
uer, before night, or else without any further trauel to stay
on this side of the water vntill the next morning. *Mustassa*
the *Georgian* aduised him to stay and not to go ouer fearing
lest they coulde not possibly bee so readie, & haue all their
cōpanie together on the other side, so soone, but that their
enemies would be first vpon them, & finding the camp in
disarray & confusiō would greatly annoy them. Notwith-
standing *Mahamet* disliked this aduise of *Mustassa*, hauing ta-
ken a strong conceit, euen vpon the very first discouery of
the enemy, that there was some intelligence & agreement
between *Mustassa* & the *Persians*, & that maliciously to that
end he had perswaded him to come that way, & not by the
way of *Tomanis*; & therefore *Mahamet* thinking if there were
any deceit intended & plotted between *Mustassa* & his e-
nemies, to set it in some confusion and disturbance, would
not in any case follow the counsell of the *Georgian*, to
stay that night on this side of the riuer, but he commanded
The V. Booke.

Mustassa adu-
iseth not to
passe the riuer

Mustassa mis-
liketh the *Ge-
orgians* ad-
uise.

Mahamet com-
manderh to
passe the riuer
presently.

Some drow-
ned in the ri-
uer.

Georgians &
Persians set v-
pon Mahamet
Bassa.

The Turkes
discomfited
by the Persians
& Georgians.

that with all the greatest speede that might be all his souldiers with their *Casenda* and their *Nosul*, that is with their treasure and Corne should passe ouer, to the ende that before night they might lande on the other side of the water in some good place, to the scorne and derision of their enemies. The *Checaia* or the Lieutenant of *Mahamet Bassa*, a bolde young man and a hardie, was the first that went ouer, and after him the carriages of money, and of corne, & then al the whole Armie with verie great speed, although some of the confused multitude were drowned in the waters, being rather ouer troden with the horses & camels, then brought to their deathes either by the swiftnes of the waters course, or by the depth of the Channel. For indeede neither the one nor the other could possible be the cause or occasion of this mischaunce.

As soone as the *Georgians* perceined, that the *Turkes* had passed the Riuer, without any staying til they might settle themselves in any good order, in great haste & furie they ran to encounter them, & presently assailed them, whiles they were all in a confusion and out of array, by meanes whereof the *Turkes* durst not almost sustaine their furious assault. And yet was there not in them such basenesse of courage, but that they turned their faces, and ioyned battel with the, wherein within a verie short time you might see the bankes of the Riuer in manie places besprinkled with the *Turkish* bloud, and many carcases of the *Turkes* here and there scattered, without any apparance at all of any losse among the *Georgians* and the *Persians*, that could be perceined. Among those that fell in this slaughter, there were a number of *Sangiacchi*, *Curdi*, and certaine *Mesopotamians*: whereby it was manifestly discovered, that if the *Turkish* Squadrons had not vsed the greater valour,
The V. booke

out

out of all question they had bene all miserablie destroyed: with the rest of the *Sangiacchi*, *Curdi*, & *Mesopotamians* fearing and coniecturing by the ouerthrowe of their owne the losse also of the others, they turned their backes, and put themselves to flight: the like did the remnant also of *Caramit*, and after them at the last all the whole Armie. And because the *Georgians*, foreseeing this their flight, had made a great wing, and turning themselves vpon their enemies on the lands side, had left them no passage to flie, but sought by al meanes to driue them backe againe into the Riuer, the fugitiue cowards could not choose, but euē in their flight receiue verie great hurt intermingled with shame. Which notwithstanding some of the desiring to auoyd, thought it lesse harme to cast themselves into the riuer, and so escape (though hardly) with their liues, or else with desperation to bee drowned in the waters. Great was their shame, great was their confusion, but greatest was their losse, for that in the heat of the battell, the *Kings* money and the Corne was taken in pray by the *Georgians* and *Persians*, euery man sauing (onely) somuch for himself, as he could secretely hide vpon his owne bodie, or conuey by the meanes of some trustie slaue, which by the helpe of their swift horses, was preserued rather by fortune then by valor.

In this maner were the *Turks* handled who being thus discomfited, and wounded, full of shame and dishonour, & spoyled of all their reliefe, the next morning gathered themselves together again, one with another cursing the heauens, their king, & their aduersē fortune, some of the also threatening that *Georgian* rinegate, as though all this mischief had happened through his treachery & secrete intelligence with the enemy. Notwithstanding, when
The V. booke,

The Turkes
flie from the
battell.

The Turkes in
their flight
greatly dam-
nified.

The treasure
and corne ta-
ken from the
Turkes.

Mahamet Bas-
sa being dis-
comfited ga-
thereth toge-
ther his scat-
tered souldi-
ers.

Dd

they

they founde that they had still remaning so much money, and other easements, as might suffice to comfort the afflicted mindes of the souldiers besieged in the forte, they resolved to goe onwarde to *Teflis*, & the day following they made so good speed in their iourney, that for all the difficulties of the waies, which travellers do commonly find in those quarters, they arrived there in the evening. Greatly were all the souldiers of the fort astonied whē they saw the *Turks*, whom they had so long expected, arrived in such bad order & so ill furnished, & were wonderfully grieved at this common losse: by reason whereof they were all in a greate confusion and protested to *Mahamet*, that they would abandon the defence of that countrie, if they had not necessary provision made for the: yea their protestations were so vehement, & their mutinie so tumultuous, that therby was confirmed a certaine generall rumour which was already raised vpon this vnfortunate battel, that *Teflis* was recovered by the *Georgians*, the reporte whereof came also into *Italy*, as a thing most certaine and true, and yet proved to be but a lie. Besides which losse of the foresaide souldiers and provision, certaine other mischiefes were also like to ensue, which every reasonable man would expecte vpon so happie and fortunate a successe but that they were met withal. For *Mahamet* after he had with large promises pacified & mitigated their first furies & insolences, presentlie in the morning he caused a *Dinano* to be called within the castel, where hauing the multitude of the *Sargiacchi*, the *Bassas*, the *Zaini*, the *Spahini*, & the *Giannizaries* gathered together, he spake vnto them in this manner.

Forasmuch as it hath pleased GOD, that so great and so important an occasion of victorie, which was offered vnto vs for the exaltation and glorie of euerie

one

The besieged souldiers in *Teflis* protest to *Mahamet* Bassa, that they will abandon the fort.

The oration of *Mahamet* Bassa in the Castel of *Teflis*.

The V. Booke,

one of vs, is now fallen out so infortunately that it hath not onely not ministred vnto vs anye matter of triumphing ouer our enemies, as wee shoulde haue done, but rather it hath made them (I knowe not howe) to carrie away from vs both the triumph, and also our Armor, our Horses, our slaues, and our spoiles: yea and the remembrance wheof doth most grievously trouble & afflict me,) our *Sultans* money, and our publike munition and forces, solemnely deliuered to our conduct, is now become a booty and pray vnto them: that the honour which might haue made euerie one of vs to bee famous among Noble and valourous Souldiers, is now fallen from our foreheades, and to our great detriment doth adorne the heades of Strangers, or rather of our enemies. And that notwithstanding all this, wee are now come to these couragious Souldiers, which with their great labour and valour haue defended this forte euen in the midst of their enemies weapons and treacheries, & to whom wee should yeeld that aide and reliefe, which the vertue of euerie one of their minds doth deserue, & which king *Amurath* had put in our handes to bring hither vnto the: there is now no remedie but to resolve vpon some good means that we fall not wholly into the vtter disgrace of our Lord & King, & that is to maintaine these souldiers in the custody & defence of this forte, & though it bee with all our own wants & al our own dishonors, to comfort these that haue so long time looked for vs, & so wel deserved all manner of reliefe. We cannot excuse our selues, that our enemies were better then we, either in number or instrumēt of warre: (for both in the one and the other we were farre beyond the) neitheryet can we say, that they set vpo vs by night, or at vnawares: for when we saw their number, their

The V. Booke.

Dd 2

weapons

weapons, their horses, and finally their approach, and their
 manner of assault, yet we would needes passe ouer the Ri-
 uer, and ioyne battell with them: which we nowe knowe
 hath fallen out verie lamentable to vs, because wee were
 more readie to take our flight then to endure the fight, &
 to vse our secte then to occupie our handes.) And there-
 fore it is very requisite, aswel to satisfy the rigor of Iustice,
 as to performe the duetie of Souldiers, that we suffer not
 our Lorde and Kinge to loose his Money which hee tru-
 sted into our handes, and which is gone from vs, not by
 greater strength nor by any treacherous stratagem of our
 enemies, but through our owne tooo importunate
 feare, and too base a regarde of our liues, before which it
 was the duetie of euerie one of vs to haue preferred the
 care of our honour. For if by fighting and couragiously
 sustayning the assaults of our enemies, though they had
 bene stronger and better armed then we, this misfortune
 had happened vnto vs, & that we could in any sort haue
 represented to the King and the world an honourable &
 bloudie battell, wee should not now haue had anie neede
 to seeke meanes, howe to repaire this losse, and to restore
 the thing that violently was taken from vs by such as
 were more mightie then our selues, and these honorable
 souldiers also should more easilie haue digested with vs
 this lametable calamitie. But we haue lost that money, &
 in verie deed, hauing (as it were) willingly bestowed it v-
 pon the *Georgians & Persians* to redeeme our liues and to
 saue vs from their furie, wee are bound to repay it, or else
 for euer hereafter to be challenged as lawfull debtors to the
 King for it. And therefore, my good friends & compa-
 nions, if you will take a good course, let euerie one of vs
 without any further consultation put his hand to his pri-
 uate

uate purse (if he haue not foolishly cast that also into the
 handes of his rauorous enemy) and with our owne mo-
 nie let vs succour the necessitie of the souldiers, and haue
 regard to the honor of our King. So shall wee make our
 flight lesse blame-worthie, wee shall iustifie our actions
 the more honestly, and (that which is of greatest impor-
 tance) we shall the better pacifie the wrath of King *Amu-
rath*, which most iustly he might conceiue against vs. I my
 self, before you al, am most ready to disburse fower thou-
 sand Duckats towards it: if it please you al to followe mee
 accordingly, wee shall deliuer these Souldiers from their
 great necessitie, and acquite our selues from the intricate
 bonds of most troublesome displeasures.

A man might there haue seene a thousand countenan-
 ces chaunged a thousand maner of wayes: for one softly
 whispered many a curse and shame vpon the King, vpon
Mahamet, vpon God: another denied to disburse any thing,
 another determined priuile to steale away, and some
 practised one thing & some another, but in the end euerie
 man was induced to follow the purpose and example of
Mahamet: and therevpon hauing made a purse according
 to euerie mans habilitie, there was collected thirtie thou-
 sand Duckats among them. Presently after this, word was
 sent to *Leuentogli* at *Zaghen*, that he should send the grain,
 Muttons and other necessarie prouisions, that they might
 the better continue the defense of the Fort.

Two onely dayes did they remaine in *Tessis*, and then
 hauing chaunged such souldiers as desired to bee dismis-
 sed, and hauing also appointed for that gouernement *Ho-
mar Bassa* in the rowme of *Giusuf*, that was in it before,
Mahamet departed. But before his departure, consulta-
 tion was had whether they shoulde keepe the way of *To-
The V. Booke.*

The Turkes
 make a purse
 among them-
 selues in *Tessis*
 of 30000. du-
 kats.

Mahamet de-
 parted from
Tessis.

Mahamet goeth order to passe the river to returne by the way of Tomanis.

Mahamet reuoketh his order: but is not obeyed by the Curdi.

manis, or the other through the Countrey of the Georgian *Mustaffa* and in the end they resolved, that it was better to keepe the way of *Tomanis*, and thereupon order was taken that they shoulde all passe ouer the river, for that they were determined to goe that way. The *Sangiacchi Curdi* were the first that went ouer, and had already pitched their tents vpon the further side of the water, when *Mahamet* beganne to reuoke his former order, and sente the word that they should return, because he was now determined to leaue the way of *Tomanis*, & to go back by the same way that he came by *Carachala* & *Altunchala*. All the *Sangiacchi* were in a great rage at this message, being already exceedingly greued as well for the losse of their friends, as also for disbursing their Money, and in plaine and expresse termes, sente him answer, that they were accustomed to warre, and to great exploits, fitt for men and not for boyes: and that these mutabilites seemed to them to bee rather childrens plaie then manly resolutions: and as for themselves, that they were not minded to chaunge their journey, but as they had already separated themselves, so would they goe forwardes, and followe on their voiage. Verie hotely and earnestlie did *Mahamet* entreate them to returne backe, but no meanes could hee find to reuoke them from their obstinate purpose, but forwardes they went the same way and arrived at *Charis*, long before *Mahamet*, who was much greued at the & greatly reproued their disobedience. But when he perceiued he could not otherwise do, he with the *Bassa* of *Caracmit* and the *Bassa* of *Altunchala* put themselves on their Iourney, euen in the same waies, wherein they had receiued their shamefull and ignominious discomfiture.

At the last *Mahamet* arrived at *Altun-Chala*. And for
The V. Booke.

asmuch as partly by his own earnest desire, partly through the secret prouocation of the other chiefe *Bassas*, he was vrged to seeke some meanes, how hee might reuenge the treasons and losses, which the *Georgians* had wrought and brought vpon them, yea euen with the death of *Mustaffa*, who was now suspected of all men. *Mahamet* and the rest thinking (as wee tolde you before) that *Mustaffa* had had some priuie intelligence with them, and that they together had plotted this treacherie: Or at the least (for that was thought to bee the principall intent of *Mahamet*) forasmuch as hee was minded by this meanes to make *Amurath* beleue, that in tructh all the mischiefes that lighted vpon them, did not happen through their cowardise, but through the treacherous treasons, and malicious aduises of the *Georgians*, and so make their receiued losses seeme more worthy of excuse, and their flight more pardonable: hee deuised with himselfe how to finde out such an artificiall plot, as without any stirre hee might bring to effect what hee had intended. And that which he had in his minde was this: To call a *Dinano* vnder his owne Pavilion, faining that hee had receiued some commaundement from the Counte, and then hauing caused *Mustaffa* to come into that rowme, whiles the said commaundement shoulde bee in reading, to cause his *Checaia* or Lieutenant with those chiefe of his bande that stood about him, to fall vpon him and presently cutte off his heade. So *Mahamet* called the said *Dinano*, wherein there sat with him the *Bassa Eunike* of *Caracmit*, certaine *Sangiacchi* subiect to the Iurisdiction of *Erzurum* the *Capit Bassi* (that is, the chiefe Gentleman vsher) and the *Checaia* of the saide *Mahamet*: with all whome vpon the Lawe of a solemne oath hee had

Mahamet deuiferth howe to betray *Mustaffa* the Georgian in *Altunchala*.

Mahamet calleth a fained counsel.

The V. Booke.

Dd 4

communi-

The Curdi come to *Charis* long before *Mahamet Bassa*.

Mahamet at *Altunchala*.

communicated his intended deceyte. The *Georgian* *Mustaffa* was called accordingly, who, both because he was beloued of moethen one, and also because hee vsed all diligence and forecast, and specially because euen in the army he had perceiued some priuie whisperings of such a matter, knew full wel, that a' this was deuised against him, and imagined that the conspiracie had beene farre greater then indeede it was: whereupon he also prepared for his owne defence. And touching his going to the *Diuano*, he thought he might not deny so to doe, lest by his absence he should be condemned for contumacy, & so he himselfe shoulde make himselfe guilty and culpable of the fault, that (peraduēture not without reason) was imputed vnto him, and thereby leaue his cities for a pray to their enemies. But seeing that he must needes goe, hee deuised a very safe and sure meanes, how he might escape the hands of the *Turkes*, and peraduenture to the great damage of *Mahamet* and example of the beholders, giue a taste of his owne vertue and valor. And therefore hauing chosen out fiftie of his most faithfull Souldiers, he gaue them to vnderstande, that there was no remedie but they must needes follow him to the *Diuano*, that was appointed with in the *Paullion* of *Mahamet*, and being come thither they must there stay ready and attentiuē, to the end that at his first & one onely call, they should all sodainely & forcibly rush into the *paullion* with their weapons, and rather then any wrong should be done vnto him, they should exercise their strength against the *Turkes* without exception of any person. They being by nature verie great enemies to the *Turkish* bloude, and vnderstanding full well what he had said vnto them, settled themselues to put it in execution, and hauing gathered vnto them other of their

Mustaffa the Georgian prepareth his gard to defend himselfe from Mahamet.

The V. booke.

owne

owne faithfull and trustie friendes also, they set *Mustaffa* before them and so followed him euen to the *Paullion* of *Mahamet*. *Mustaffa* entred into the *Diuano*, and standing vppon his feete required *Mahamet* to tell him what hee had to say to him: who presently caused the counterfeit commaundement to be read, whereunto hee gaue an attentiuē care. But when the other *Sangiacchi* and *Bassas* beganne to sit downe (for it is the manner of the *Turkes* whensoever anie of the *Kinges* commandementes are in reading, alwaies to stande vp, and not to sit downe vntill it bee fully read,) the *Georgian* tooke his leaue, promising that hee woulde euer bee readie, not onely to performe that order of the *Kinge*, but whatsoever else hee shoulde commaund, how hard and difficult so euer it were. While he was retiring out of the *Paullion*, the *Capigi Bassi* (or gentleman Vsher) of *Mahamet Bassa*, came vnto him, and plucking him by the sleeue of his garment, (adding deeds also to his wordes,) willed him to sit downe. When *Mustaffa* felt himselfe plucked by the sleeue, he cried out aloud, and drewe his sworde: wherewith hee stroke *Mahamets Checaia* that was right against him, and with his left hande hauing raught his roll from his pate, with his right hand, sodenly, to the great astonishment of all that were present, at one onely blowe, he parted his heade, his necke and his brest in twaine, euen to his verie stomacke, so that hee died (a strange spectacle to beholde) being thus cut in sunder, with his two shoulders hanging downe vpon their seuerall sides. After this first hee redoubled his seconde stroke, and ayimed at the heade of the *Eunuk Bassa*, but it beeing defended by the writhen Rolles of his *Turbant*, it slipped downe by his eare, and besides a peece of his saide *Turbant* caried his care quite away, with a little also of his

Mustaffa the Georgian at the tent of the Diuano.

The custome of the Turkes, whe the Kings commandementes are in reading, to stand vp.

Mustaffa cryeth out and woundeth Mahamets Lieutenent.

Mahamets lieutenent dieth, being cut in sunder downe to the stomacke.

Mustaffa cutteth of the care of the Bassa of Caranie.

The V. booke.

E c

flesh

Mustassa would
deth Mahamet
with fine
mortal wounds

Mahamet being
wounded
retired to
Chars with
his people.

Mustassa ad-
uerteth King
Amurath of
all that had
happened.

Mahamet also
informeth the
King howe
matters had
fallen out.

flesh of his checke. Then being all enraged, & eagerlie enflamed with desire of reuenge he did set vpon *Mahamet Bassa* (who being now alinia confusiō was risen at this tumult) & wounded him with fine mortall wounds: two whereof notwithstanding, being the deepest and the sorest, although they brought him euen to the extreme poynt of death, yet by cunning hand were healed. At the cry of this Rinegate *Georgian* all his people had runne in together: vpon whose confused tumult and the feare that *Mustassa* through his finie had put into them, the Campe was raysed, and euery man with all speede departing from thence, set himselfe on his way towards *Chars*, whither also were brought the two wounded *Bassas*, and the rest, that were ill handled and greatlie scarred with these sudden and vncouth stirres.

Mustassa sent present information to the King, of all that was practised and wrought against him, finding himselfe greatly greened at the false suspicion that *Mahamet* had conceyued of him, to his great dishonour: wherein he did so conuincingly write, and so much dissemble, by shadowing the truth with lying and cogging, that hee perswaded the King to shewe him a manifest token of his good liking and contentment, by sending vnto him both cloth of gold, and a battell Axe all guilt. *Mahamet* also, entermingling here and there, with all the arte that possiblie hee could devise, all hatefull and inuious rearmes, sent large aduertisements of all the misfortunes that had happened, and aggravated to the King both the treacheries of *Mustassa*, and also the vnder security of those wayes and countries.

As soone as King *Amurath* vnderstood the calamitie of his souldiers, the losse of his money, the great dishonour

Lib. V. Booke.

35

of

of his people, and the apparent danger, wherein the Fort of *Teflis* stood, when it was like to bee abandoned: being all inflamed with rage and anger, hee called vnto him the *Bassas* of his Court, among whom sate as chiefe the proud and haughtie *Sinan*, and rated them all diuerse and sundrie wayes, reproouing their leawde counsell, and recounting the losses that he had receyued, as though they had happened through their defaultes, and especially *Sinan*, the principall occasion of all these mischietes, who like an improuident foole would needs relinguish the charge of his Armie, and like a King sitte idle at *Constantinople*, standing (as it were) at some publike triumph, to beholde and heare the miseries and misfortunes of others. *Sinan* could doe no lesse, but make answer to the wrathfull King, yet not with such mildenesse and modestie, as in so sinister an occasion he shoulde peraduenture haue doone, but rather in all proude and arrogant manner, without any reuerence or regard, hee tolde him plainly, That as the last yeare, (being the fifth yeare of this warre) whiles hee was ready and prepared to returne to *Constantinople*, the succors were brought into *Teflis* so with great quiet and ease, that euen his owne subiects (much lesse his enemies) scarce knewe of it, the *Persians* and the *Georgians* in the meane time occupying their mindes about anie other thing rather then about this, (whereof we haue not in deed made any mention at all in his due place, for that there fel out nothing worthie to be written, sauing that the sayd supplie of money & corne (vndoubtedly to the iust commendation of *Sinan*) was so safely & warely conducted to *Teflis*, that neither the *Turks* made any preparatiō of souldiers for the conuoy of it, nor yet the enemies had any suspitiō of such a matter, neither was there any shew of battell or cōtention about it.)

The VI. Booke.

E 62

Euen

Amurath being
angrie
reprooueth
the Bassas of
the Court.

Sinan answereth
the king
proudly and
arrogantly.

Succours
brought to
Teflis, with-
out any thing
else worth
the writing.

Even so it would haue fallen out this yeare also, if the King had put his aduise in execution, as much as hee despised & contemned it: For he did then giue him to vnderstand that *Mahamet Bassa* could not be a fit man for the leading of those succours, especially to such a station or place, and that it was very necessary to haue chose in his rowm, some other person of valor, of worth, and of wisdom: but seeing he would needs make choice of the same *Mahamet*, hee was not now to blame any other for this error, but onely himselfe. And touching his comming to *Constantinople*, it was a thing long before thought to bee very needfull, not onely for his aduise howe the matter of peace might bee brought to some good passe, but also because (if that treatie came not to the desired issue,) then hee had to talke with him, howe hee might easily compasse the overthrow of his enemy: which matter as yet he had no fitt time to declare vnto him, but was now most readie to reueale it, if it would so please him. Wonderfully was *Amurath* greeued with this his answer, when hee considered that a slaue of his owne, should thus reproch him with a matter that was so odious, and so manifestly touched his follie and improuidence: notwithstanding he dissembled his discontentment conceiued against him, and was verie desirous to know of him, what that secrete and important matter was, which he had to reueale vnto him, for the easie compassing of this commenced enterprise: and therefore after he had framed him a glosing reple, he commanded *Sinan* to display all his conceits, and to disclose those his deuises, which he had to utter. All the rest of the *Bassas* helde their peace, & every one of them, omitting the ouersights of *Sinan*, were content also to omit the occasiō of answering the king, al of the being wholly bent against him

The V. booke.

Amurath
greuously
offended with
Sinan.

& ioined with the king (as it were) in disdain & scorne of his arrogancie, who for a brieve of al his aduises propounded these two thinges. First, his counsaile was, that they should not proceede in this warre as they had hitherto done, that is to say, by seeking with fortes and fortresses to hold and keepe their enemies countries. For (as in the verie beginning of this war, whiles consultation was had in what manner and sorte it should be made, hee had expressly protested) he did manifestly foresee, that their *Casende* or treasuries were not able to yeeld such store of moneys, as was sufficient for the maintenance of necessarie garrisons, and so the error of *Mustaffa* (that nowe is dead) was evidently conuincd, who so obstinately had perswaded such a dangerous and difficult manner of warfare. His second aduise was, that the true meanes to bring these stirs to a wished ende consisted especiallie in the resolution of the king himselfe, whom if it would please but to remoue a little from *Constantinople*, for three or foure daies iourneys onely, and to passe either into *Caraemit*, or into *Aleppo*, or at least into *Amasia*, hee might assuredly promise to himselfe all speedie & honourable victory: for at the onelie name of his remoue, either the *Persians* would not stande too obstinately vpon conditions of peace, but would easily come to any agreement, or els he might continue his wars, & so obtaine great conquests. These were the reasons that *Sinan* propounded: whereof it seemeth no other thing followed but onelie an enuious affectiō of the king against him, quite contrarie to the conceit which before hee had of him, & (which was a matter of greater importāce) a further suspition (fostered by these mightie Ladies,) that *Sinan* had thus counselled the king himselfe to goe in person from *Constantinople*, not for any good that coulde arise by

The V. booke.

The first ad-
uise of Sinan.

The second
aduise of Si-
nan.

Women are
of gret might
with Amurath

Sinan discharged from the Court and Constantinople, & banished to Marmara for euer.

Sciaus the chiefe Visier, and his manners.

The Persians at their places of residence

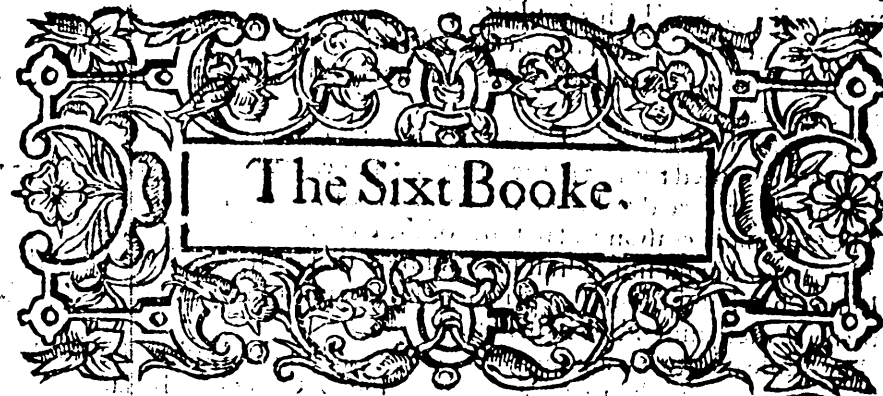
The 5. and 7. yeere of this warre

his departur, but onely that so hee might finde meanes for the Prince his Sonne to make himselfe King & driue out his father. This suspiciō was in such sort nourished in the minde of *Amurath*, especially being assured of the great affection which the prince carried towards *Sinan*, that he was enforced to ridd him out of his sight, and to deprive him of al charge, driuing him presentlie out of the court and out of Constantinople, and banishing him into *Damotica*, a place neere to *Andrinopolis*: from whence afterwarde, through speciall fauour which by humble supplication hee obtained, he was sent into *Marmara* a little beyond *Siliurea*, where he yet liueth. And into his place of *Viceroyship* was assumed *Sciaus Bassa*, the Kings Sonne in lawe, by contrey an *Hungarian*, a man verie gracious of countenance, and of honourable iudgemente, but aboue all the men in the worlde, a seller of lustice and benefites, and yet a great friend to the peace with Christian Princes which *Sinan* did so wickedlie maligne.

In the meane time the *Persian* captaines had withdrawn themselves to their places of Residence, and by verie speedie Postes had imparted to their King their obtained victories, and so euery man for this season had made an end of those great stirs that were raised in the years. 1580. 1581. and a good parte of 1582. wherein also followed the election of a newe generall, who notwithstanding went not forward in his troublesome busines, vntil the beginning of the yeare, 1583. as in the next booke we will declare vnto you.

The ende of the fift Booke.

The



The Argument.

The *Persian* King resolueth to ride to *Heri*, against his Sonne *Abas*.
 Emir *Chari* promisseth the King to defend his Territories from the *Turkes*.
 The *Gouernour* of *Sasuar* beheaded.
 The King attempteth to get his Sonne *Abas* into his handes.
Abas writeth to his Father, and the Tenor of his Letters.
 The two *Persian* Princes reconcile themselves one to the other.
Salmas accused and beheaded.
 The *Persian* King, and the Prince his Sonne returne to *Casbin*.
Ferat chosen Generall of the *Turkish* Armie.
Ferat repaireth *Aggi-ch-lasi*, and *Reisan*.
Tocomac seeketh meanes to bee reuenged of the iniuries of the *Turkes*.
Ferat returneth to *Chars*, and causeth a *Sangiaco* of the *Curdi* to be beheaded.
Manucchi the *Georgian* beheadeth the *Messengers* and *Gentlemen-ushers* of *Amurath* and deuiderh the Treasure betweene himselfe, and his colin *Simon*.
Hassan goeth to succour *Tellis*.
Ferat is at *Erzurum*, and dismisseth his Armie.
 The *Persian* King is affraide of newe stirres, and commeth to *Tauris* with a great Armie.
 Generall *Ferat* gathereth a newe Armie at *Chars*: he goeth to *Lery*: he passeth to the streites of *Tomanis*, and cutteth down the woods.
Daur Chan yeeldeth himselfe to the *Turkes*.
Simon goeth to assault *Resuan* the *Bassa*: he hath his horse slaine vnder him and is stranglie deluered from extreame daunger.
Tomanis defended by *Hassan*.
 A great dearth in the army of *Ferat*.

Ferat

Ferat is threatened by his Souldiers.

Ferat goeth to *Clisea*, and meaneth to fortifie it.

Resuan is hardly entreated by the Souldiers, who also threaten their General againe.

The Generalls life is saued by Amurath the Bassa of *Caramania*.

A most confused tumult in the Armie, and Ferat the Generall is enforced shamefully to yeeld to his Souldiers, and returneth to *Erzurum*.

The Originall occasion and manner of the escape of *Alyculi-Chan*.

The *Persian* king dismisseth all his Souldiers, that he had gathered together. Emir-Chan is imprisoned, and hauing his eyes put out, by the kings appointment, he dieth miserablie in prison.

New displeasures arise among the *Turcomannes* for the death of Emir-Chan. Amurath conceiueth great hope of the valour of Osman the Bassa.

Sciaus writeth to the *Tartarian* of the comming of Osman to Constantinople.

Osman with foure thousand souldiers putteth himselfe in the way to Constantinople.

Osman is assaulted by the *Tartarians*, but Osman ouercommeth them.

Osman putteth the *Tartarian* king to death, and appointeth his brother to be his successor.

Osman departeth from *Cassa* by *Gallies*, and arriueh at Constantinople.

Osman is chosen chiefe *Vizer* in the rowme of *Sciaus*, and Generall in the rowme of Ferat.

Osman departeth from Constantinople, and goeth to *Erzurum*.

Osman gathereth a greater armie, then all those that haue boene hitherto gathered in these warres, besides the Souldiers of *Egypt* and *Damasco*, who did not goe with Osman.

The sixt Booke.



After that these victorious Warriours, laden with spoiles and diuerse of their Enemies ensignes, were with great ioy receiued at home in *Persia*, at the last to the greater comfort of the *Persians*, the discord also that fell out between *Mahomet Bassa*, & *Mustaffa* the *Georgian* was declared vnto thō, whereat they did no lesse reioyce, then they did before for their obtrayned victories. And euerie man thought with himselfe that this newes might greatly further the matter of peace, or at least if that came not to the wished ende, yet it might hinder the *Turkes* from passing to anie place that was neere vnto them, & might also keepe them occupied, as *Teslis* had hitherto done, in such places as are farre distant from their Royall Cities. Which coniecture of theirs might verie well be grounded vpon a reasonable foundation, as well because the iniurie was verie great, that *Mustaffa* had done to *Mahomet* the Generall of the *Turkish* Camps, as also for that the Territories of the saide *Mustaffa* were no lesse replenished with places most fit for treacheries and ambushes, then the Territories of *Sinon*. In these and such like good hopes remayned the *Persians*, when by the way of *Georgia* there came tydinges to them that *Sinon* was displaced from his Office of Generallshippe, and therefore the *Turkes* must of necessitie send forth some newe Captaine, if they were minded still to continue this warre. With great grieve of minde did the *Persians* receiue this aduertisement, knowing full well how much *Osman* was inclined to peace, & how deadly he hated

The *Persians* reioyce & are full of good hopes.

The *Persians* are sorie for displacing of *Sinon*.

The Persians
grieved at
the indignitie
done to their
Embassador.

The Persians
are still in
good hope.

Mahamet the
Persian King
resolueth to
ride to Heri
against his
sonne Abas
Mirize.

the continuance of these long and troublesome contentions. But much more greivous was it vnto them, when they vnderstoode withall, how their treaties of peace were all in vayne, and howe besides those indignities that so dishonestly were offered to the *Persian Nation* at *Constantinople*, their Embassador was also at the last sent prisoner to *Erzurum*. And yet notwithstanding all these forie newes the *Persians* chaunged not their former hopes, but verilie perswaded themselves that these discords, & the outrages committed vpon the *Turkes* by *Manucchiar*, might happen kinder their enterprise, which this yeare they minded to attempt to the great preiudise of *Nassiman* and *Tauris*. For they imagined, that seeing their newe Generall must needs be sent as farre as from *Constantinople*, the new yere could not serue their turne to any other purpose, but onely to succour *Teflis*, and to reuenge the shame receyued by the outrageous furie of *Manucchiar*. In which poynt they discoursed also with themselves, that euen in that respect *Manucchiar* and *Simon* would make a league together, as well because they were neighbors in Territorie, and were likely both of them to run one and the selfe same course of fortune, yea & so much the rather because *Manucchiar* hauing taken to wife a sister of *Simons*, they could do no lesse in these innouations but ioyne themselves together, & one of them be a protector and defender of the other, and so vniing their forces together they shuld be able to annoy as much as should be sent to conuayle new succors to *Teflis*. Vpon these occasions the *Persian King*, perceyuing that he could not haue a fitter oportunitie to employe himselfe against *Abas Mirize* his sonne, determined with himselfe to leaue the matters of this side of his kingdom in their present state, and to march towards *Heri*, wherunto hee was

The VI booke.

earnestly solicited by his elder son *Emirhamze Mirize*, but principally by *Mirize Salmas* his *Viser*, whom his said son in lawe did likewise dayly animate to this resolution, and could not well brooke that anie other thing shoulde bee in speech, but onely this, And therefore seeing there was no other remedie, but that the king must needs satisfie the request of these mightie entercessers, and also establish all thinges in as good securitie as possibly hee might (besides the great confidence and trust which he reposed as we told you, in his cosins the *Georgians*) he called vnto him *Emir-Chan* being at that time the *Gouernour* of *Tauris*, and opened vnto him the resolution which he had to ride into *Heri*, declaring vnto him withall, that he meant not to take this viage vpon him, and quite to leaue at randon all these his Cities that were so neere and commodious for the fury of the *Turkes*, but he would set a trustie garde to keepe them, and make choice of such a person to attende them, as shoulde be able to yeelde him a good account of them, whensoever the *Turks* should aduenture to endamage those countries. And forsomuch as *Emanguli-Chan* had taken vpon him the charge to defend *Siruan*, & not to suffer that *Osman Bassa* should proceed anie further in his conquestes there, but to keepe him strait and to restraine him within the narrow bounds & holds of *Demir-Capi*, he had found out also another person that had promised him, whensoever occasiō required to gather an armie together, and to vse all other good meanes to resist the *Turkes*, if they should at any time seeke to annoy these borders of *Tauris*, *Nassiman*, *Reivan*, & such lik. And further signified vnto him, That he was minded to discharge him of the Office that hee had, namely the *Gouernourshippe* of *Tauris*, and would substitute in his place the mā that had so readily offered himself to this seruice, bestowing vpon him the name and title of the *Gouernour* ouer

The speech of
the Persian
king to Emir-
Chan.

The VI. Booke.

F f 2

Reivan

Reinan and Nassuan, and ouer all the other places and Cap-
talties in those quarters. But if *Emir-Chan* himselfe woulde
promise the like, and besides other helpes, would vse also
the seruice of the mightie *Turcoman* Nation, when neede
should so require, he would not onely suffer him stil to in-
ioie his charge, but also, not harkening to the promises
of the other man, he would honour him further, with the
dignitie of *Captaine Generall* against the Turkish Armie.

A long time did *Emir-Chan* remaine in suspence hereat,
not knowing wherupon to resolue himself. For on the one
side, he knew that he had many aduersaries & cōpetitors,
who no doubt would very boldly haue made the like offer
to the king, of purpose to oppresse him, and to hoist him
out of his possessed dignitie: & on the other side he saw
the promise was verie difficult, for he vnderstood ful wel
what great power the Turkish Armie had, against which
he could not promise to make any resistance, no nor to
looke them in the face, with so slender and weake prouisi-
ons as he had. Neuerthelesse, he being deceiued as wel as
the rest with those common hopes, that whiles the King
himselfe might be busied about the winning of *Heri*, the
Turkes neither could nor would attende any other thing,
but onely to reuenge the iniuries of the *Georgians*, to cha-
stise those troublesome and treacherous people, and to
succor *Teflis*: couragiously at last promised the King that
he would not suffer the *Turkes*, no not so much as to
approch, either to *Reinan* or *Nassuan*, but would maintaine
and keepe him and his landes safe and vntouched from
any of their forces. And if it shoulde fall out that
through some extra-vagant or extraordinary resolu-
tion of the Turkish Captaines, the enemies should come
into those borders, hee would then gather together the

The VI. Booke.

Turcor

Turcomans and all their confederates, and so imploy his
whole power and forces against them, to the ende, that
such iniuries should not bee attempted, at the least with-
out reuenge.

This resolution beeing concluded, King *Mahamet sette*
himselfe forwardes towards *Casbin*, with an Armie of
twentie thousande persons, and leauing on his left hande
Ghedan and the *Caspian* sea, and on his right hande *Sirat*
and *Cassan*, and beyond all that, euen vpon the coast of
the saide Sea *Massandran*, *Saru*, *Pangiazar*, and *Gulbat*, by
the way of *Terrachan*, *Imamadulafis*, *Cur*, *Sembran*, *Bestan*, &
Dagman, he arriued at the Citie of *Sasuar*, being on that sid
the chiefe of all the Cities that are subiect to the iurisdic-
tion of *Heri*. Nowe the gouernour of this Citie had
fortified himselfe, by keeping the gates locked, and main-
taining a vigilant garde about it, hoping that delaying
the King and so auoiding his first assaulte, hee might also
peraduenture perswade him, that this his coming was
not necessarie, and purge himselfe before him of any ac-
cusation or fault, wherewithall he might be charged. But
this his designement, though indeed both iust and reason-
able could not fall out according to his desire. For *Mi-
tize Salmes*, who in the delay of this their besieging, had
continuallie among other surmises, entremingled also
some feare and suspition of Nouelties, did still sollicite
and hasten the enterprise, and himselfe encouraging the
Souldiers thereunto, with ladders, with ropes, with
timber, and with other engines did fortuelt, that in a
shorte time the Garde of the Citie was taken, and
the Gates opened to the King, who swarming in with
all his Armie, leste no leasure for *Chan* the Gouernor
to escape, but presently caused him to bee beheaded,

The VI. Booke.

If 3

Although

King Mahamet with an armie of 20000 persons rideth towards Heri.

Mahamet at Sasuar.

The gouernour of Sasuar beheaded by the Kings commandment.

Emir-Chan wondereth at the speech of his King.

Emir-Chan promiseth the king to garde his Frontiers from the Turkes furie.

210 *The Warres betweene*
 although he alledged a thousand excuses for himselfe,
 and objected a thousand accusations against the seditious
Kiser. The King after this departed from *Sasnar*, and ioyn-
 ing vnto him all the strength of the cities of *Nisaur*, *Mas-*
fat, *Turfa*, *Turbat*, *Giem*, *Mulan*, and *Coran*, hauing also
 put to death certaine captaines and Sultans, that were ac-
 cused by the *Kiser* to be *Confederates* in the rebellion of his
 Sonne, hee arrived at last at the desired Citie of *Heri*. Ve-
 ry strong is this Citie by situation, compassed about with
 a good wal, and watered with deepe channells of running
 springes, conueighed into it by *Tamerlane* their *Founder*
 or *Restorer*: so that the winning thereof could not but
 prooue very long and difficult: especiallye because
 there were in it many valiaunt Captaines, all enuious
 enemies to *Mirize-Salmas*, and readye to attempt any
 notable enterprise, for the defence of themselves and
 of their Lord. Alsoone as the King had discovered
 the faide Citie, hee felte a rising in his minde
 the diuerse affections of grieve, and of pietie: and
 indeede greater was the grieve which hee conceiued,
 in respect of the businesse that hee wente about, then
 his pietie was. For hee greeued woonderfullye at his
 owne unhappinesse and miserie, that hee shoulde
 cause such a one to bee borne into the lighte of the
 worlde, as in steede of maintaining his Fathers ho-
 nour, and ioyning his forces with the forces of his
 Father to the destruction of his Enemies, shoulde
 rather bee a meanes for his arrant enemies to enter
 into his confederate Countreyes, and hee himselfe
 prooue the very ouerthrowe of him, from whom he
 receiued his being, and present dignitie. It gree-
 ued him likewise and that with affectionate passions,
The VI. Booke.

The Gouvernor
of Sasnar be-
headed by the
kings com-
mandement.

King Maha-
met at Heri.
The Situation
of Heri.

The winning
of Heri diffi-
cult.

King Maha-
met soroweth
his unhappy
and euill for-
tune.

the Turkes & Persians. 219
 to remember the blood of his subiectes, that had heere-
 tofore bene spilt vpon so straunge an occasion: yea
 and scarcely durste hee enter into cogitation with
 himselfe, thence forward to shedde any more of the
 bloude of his peoples. Neuerthelesse, with all these
 his conceites and vnhappye fortune, beeing more and
 more sollicitated by the *Kiser*, hee attempted to vnder-
 stande (if hee coulde) the minde of his Sonne, and
 (if it might bee possible) to gette him into his
 handes. *Mahamet seeketh to get his Sonne A-bas into his handes.*
 But the Citie of *Heri* was well fenced, (as we haue said) *Abas writeth to the king his father.*
 and therefore it must needes require the spending of ma-
 ny daies, before it could be obtained: which *Abas-Mirize*
 knowing full well, thought it good in the meane time to
 write diuers letters to his Father and his Brother, wherein
 hee besought them, that they would make knowne vnto
 him the occasions of this their stirre. For if desire of rule
 had moued them to desire the deprivation of him bee-
 ing their Sonne and Brother, from the honour which
 hee lawfully possessed, and which his Father himselfe
 had procured for him, they ought to abandon that i-
 magination, and not to seeke the disturbance of their
 peace, for that hee was alwaies to spende his wealth,
 and his bloude together with his estate, in their seruice,
 and acknowledged his Father to bee his good Father
 and King, who rather then hee shoulde pursue this
 resolution, shoulde bee encouraged to encrease his
 Dominion ouer his neighbours the *Indians* and *Bactria-*
ns, which woulde bee more honourable and profitable
 for that Empire, and much more commodious for
 all *Persia*: And if they were not induced heereunto for
 this cause, but by a desire to reuenge some wronge
The VI. booke *Ff 4*

Mahamet seeketh to get his Sonne A-bas into his handes.
Abas writeth to the king his father.
The tenor of the letters of Abas Mirize.

hee had committed in prejudice either of the Crowne of Persia, or his Fathers honour, hee was most readie to submit himselfe to any amendes, and with all reason to yelde vnto them the kingdome, yea the worlde, and euen his owne life also, the rather to satisfie their mindes with a more full contentation.

With wise and thrise reading ouer, were these affectionate and reuerent letters considered and digested, and at last both the Brother and the father, perceyuing in the such liberalitie of wordes, and beeing overcome with pittie, or (if not with pittie yet) with great admiration and contentment, they determined to put the matter in practise, and moderating their wicked desires of bloud, ruine and death, to attempt the reducing of the young mans minde to some good passe. Wherevpon they wrote backe vnto him, That no greedie desire to vsurpe his gouernement (*An affection that was onely raysed in the gluttonous mind of prophane Salmas*) had induced them to make so great a voyage, to trouble so much the people, and to shed such aboundaunce of bloud. For rather then they would deprive him of that gouernement, they would be readie to bestowe vpon him newe benefices and honours of greater esteeme. But onely his disobedience and impudencie, in that hee caused himselfe to bee called the King of all Persia, and would not sende so much as one Captaine to ayde them against the Turkes, these were the causes, why they proceeded to these great inconueniencies: because they thought their durtie to roote vp such wicked and obstinate desires out of their kingdome, and in Persia to preferre an vniuersall obedience and common tranquillitie among their subiectes.

The young man, when hee vnderstood the accusations

The VI. Booke.

that were laied against him, was greatly comforted, & hoped to make it manifest before al men, how the king & his brother were misinformed in these particularities & therefore incontinently did write back againe vnto them, That if they would inuiolably promise, not to put to death, nor doe any outrage to any his embassadors, he would send vnto the such euident matter, & so cleere informatiō touching those his accusations, as they should not onely plainly perceiue there was neuer any such kind of thought in him, but also that he had alwaies desired & laboured the contrary: & peradventure he should open vnto the such a matter, as in respect of other men and not of himselfe, would cause their comming to proue profitable and commodious to all the kingdome of Persia. Whereupon they both promised all good entertainment, and were now become very desirous to vnderstand, what those straunge nouelties should be: and so when they had yeelded their consent, and with solemne oath had offered to receiue the said embassadors with all friendly curtesie and regarde: Abas sent vnto them two of his chiefe counsellours, men of good accompt and reuerence both for their yeares and wisdom, with commaundement, That they should declare, how all these stirres did arise from none other man, but onely from the Visier Mirza-Salmas: who as he had already laboured this dangerous plot against Abas-Mirza the kings own son, so (if this his designment should bee brought to passe) he would not sticke to doe the like against the King himselfe, to satisfie the greedy and ambitious desire which hee had to place his Sonne in lawe Emir-hamze in the soueraigne seate, and himselfe to bee the man, that (as Lieutenant to the King) shoulde commaunde the whole Empire. Which notwithstanding they

Abas hopeth wel, and writeth backe to his father and his brother.

The promises that passed friendly betweene the Princes.

King Mahamet the father & Emirhamze the Prince writ backe to Abas.

The accusations against Abas Mirza.

they were to reueale without any blame or accusation of *Emir-Hamza*, and to make it knowen to his old father, that neuer any such conceits or affections were kindled in the Prince, but that he was also vnwares induced thereunto by the crafte and fittlerie of malignant *Salmas*.

The excuses
of the embaf-
sadors in the
behalf of A-
bas Mirize.

The Embassa-
dors of the
King and the
Prince are re-
cused.

The two Embassadours came accordingly, and after many speeches, in the ende, swearing (according to their custome) by the Creator that spread out the Aire, that founded the earth vppon the deepes, that adorned the heauen with starres, that powred abroad the water, that made the fire, and briefly of nothing brought forth all things: swearing by the heade of their vaine Master *Aly*, and by the false religion of their impious Prophet *Mahamet*: swearing by their children, by their wiues, by their own souls, That such peruers thoughts neuer entred into the head of *Abas-Mirize*: They alledged many testimonies and euident proofes, that most loyally and faithfully, in all due time, as well when hee was aduanced to the soueraigne degree of a king, as also in his battels against the Turkes, his Sonne had alwaies caused deuout prayers and supplications to bee made to God for his prosperitie, neither euer desired to heare any other but happy and fortunate successe of him. They brought with them a thousande and a thousand Precepts and Royall Letters, which the younge man had caused to be written, as occasions required, to the Gouvernours that were his Subiectes for the gouernement of the state, wherein hee neuer named himselfe the King of *Persia*, but onely your King and Gouvernour of *Heri*. They prayed the King also that hee would cause a diligent processe (which the Turkes call a *Tefis*) to be framed against his Sonne, and if there shoulde bee founde

The VI booke.

founde in him any signe or shadowe of so wicked a suspicion, that then hee would take from him his estate and libertie. For they would remaine as hostages for him. But when all this shoulde be done, and *Abas-Mirize* shoulde bee founde altogether free from these vniust and impious calumniationes, then (falling euen to the earth and kissing it,) they besought him and coniured him, that hee would not leaue the matter thus imperfect, to the preiudice of his bloude: but returning to his counsellor, he would likewise take information, vppon what minde or consideration it was well known that he had aduised the King to take vpon him this vnorderly and dangerous visage. For without doubt hee shoulde finde nothing in him but malignant, ambitious, and wicked affections, and such as euery deserued, that with his bloud there shoulde be reuenged all the bloud of those, which till that houre had bene brought to their vnworthie and vnderdeserued death. And forasmuch as there remained one onely difficulty to be cancelled & cleared, wherof the *Visier* had informed the king, touching a commaundement that was giuen by *Abas-Mirize* to the gouernours that were vnder him, as namely to the gouernour of *Sasnar* and of other places, that they shoulde not goe to the warre against the Turkes: they confessed in tructh, that such an order was taken in deede, but not to that vniust and slanderous end, as it was related to the king by the *Visier*, but onely in respect of the warres, that were reported to be begun in those quarters by the *Tartarian Iesseltas*, who by diuers inroades hauing robbed the Cities, the Townes, and the Fieldes of *Heri*, had put such a feare in younge *Abas-Mirize*, and all his Counsellours, that they durste not emptye their

The Embassa-
dors accusati-
ons against
Mirize Salmas.

The VI booke

G g 2

Cities

Cities of their guardes and forces, and thereupon (as they should finde it true, if they would enquire thereof) the saide Gouvernours were commanded that they should not goe to the war against the Turks, but that they should expect further direction, whereof they shoulde haue notice, if they should be called for. And that all this was signified by writing to the *Visier* himselfe, but that hee of a malignant minde had concealed the same: onely to try, if in these common troubles hee could bring it to passe, that *Abas-Mirize* and the king might bee bereaued of their liues, and *Emir-hamze* succeed in their place, and so hee himselfe remaine the Super-intendent of his sonne in law, and Moderator of rather the Tyrant of that happy and famous kingdome. Which (they saide) they made known vnto him, not because they thought *Emir-hamze* to bee acquainted with so treacherous a traine, (for they knewe very well, how greatly in imitation of his Fathers pietie, hee hated dissension among kinsfolkes, & shedding of bloude) but onely because it was throughly discovered to bee the most vnlawful and vnreasonable desire of the wicked traitor *Mirize-Salmas*.

Verie graue and strange cogitations did these auncient Orators raise in the mindes of the two Princes: and *Mahamet* the Father, beeing by nature credulous and inconstant beyond measure, began to make great construction of their speeches, and deeply to consider of their so earnest and important requestes, whose offers also seemed vnto him so vpright and equall, that he could not choose but accept thereof. And therefore calling vnto him the Gouvernours, the Captaines, the Iudges and Treasurers of all the Cities that were subiecte to *Heri*, hee demaunded of them, how and in what sorte they esteemed

The 22. Booke.

of *Abas-Mirize*, and how & in what degree of honour he desired to be esteemed of them. And of them all he receiued an vniforme aunswere, that they helde him for their Lord, as the Lieutenant to the king of *Cas-bin*, and that he himselfe did alwaies desire so to be taken & thought of. And euerie of them brought in diuers Letters, Precepts, and Orders, wherein hee neuer caused himselfe to bee honoured with any other title, but onely, your king of *Heri*. Hee demaunded further, whether those tumults of warres were indeede attempted by the *Tartarian Iesselbas* or no: whereof hee receiued also a large and soleimne information, that so it was, to the great detriment of all those territories. And thus the king was throughly perswaded of the innocencie of his son, who before was noted vnto him by his *Visier* to bee an obdinate rebell. Vpon which occasion onely, although he might iustly haue put his *Visier* to death, as one that had beene the cause of the slaughters that happened, and of the bloud of so many valorous Captaines that was shed so iniurioullie: yet because he would be better informed of the trueth of the accusations laid against him by the Embassadours of *Heri*, the rather to ridd himselfe from so important and so iust a feare: and because he doubted also peraduenture, least there had beene some conspiracie plotted against him betwene the *Visier* and *Emir-hamze*: hee resolved to make a curious and diligent inquisition thereof. And therefore first of all, in great secrecie, calling vnto him *Emir-hamze*, and demaunding of him by all faire meanes, howe and wherefore hee had aduised and procured this iourney against *Abas-Mirize*, Son to himselfe & Brother to him, where-as indeede he had founde him innocent of all those crimes

The V I. booke.

G g 3

that

King Mahamet perswaded of the innocencie of his Sonne.

King Mahamet trieth the Princes mind.

The offers of the Embassadors accepted by the King and the Prince.

All the mis-
chiefes light
vpon Salmas
the Visier.

Mirize Sal-
mas accused
by all.

that were layde to his charge: he receaued aunswere from the Prince that hee had no other certeyntie of the pretended ill behauiour of his brother, but onely that which proceeded from the greate credite that hee alwayes bare towards his Father in Lawe *Mirize Salmas*, to whome, as to a Visier, and as to his Father in Lawe, and as to a Protectour of the Kingdome, and finally as to a person that had bene tryed in a thousande matters to bee true and trustie, hee had alwayes yeelded assured credence, in all such matters, as daylye were in speech betweene them. Insomuch that hee discharged the whole Tempest of all these mischiefs vpon the Visier, Touching whome the King made diligent inquisition aswell among those of the Courte as of the Armie, and thereby founde verye straunge and v unexpected Nouelties. For there was not a man almost, that did not accuse him, for a seditious man, for a Cruell man, for an vnjust man, and for a Tyrant, and to bee brieife that did not make him guiltie of very haynous crimes, and in particular for the accusation layd against him by the Embassadours of *Heri*, they all declared, that in trueth hee was alwayes made acquainted with the true occasions, which did restrayne the Gouvernours subiecte to *Abas Mirize* (from going to the Warre against the Turkes,) but that hee most maliciously had concealed the same, of purpose onely to hatch such a straunge and dangerous stirre, in hope to aduance his owne estate by the destruction of others. And so at last *Mirize Salmas* was detected for guiltie, & rewarded with that punishment, which he desired vnjustly to conuert vpo others.

The VI. Booke.

For

For the King, who had nowe founde such impietie in him, as besides that hee had caused manie Sultans of accompt to bee vnjustly and vnworthely put to death, he also went about to procure, that the Father shoulde desyle himselfe with the bloude of his owne Sonne, (athing so odious both to the King himselfe and all his kingdome, as euer anie cruell Action coulde possible bee,) the King (I saye) coulde not suffer this impietie, but acknowledging a fresh the innocencie of the one, and the guylte of the other, the one hee deliuered and embraced as his Sonne, the other hee auainted out of his presence, and punishing him as an impious person, hee caused his heade to bee cutte from his Carcase. In this manner, the ambitious Visier, as though hee had voluntarily gone to his owne death, roured all these angers and tumultes against himselfe, and with his owne destruction pacified the dissentions and hatredes that were fostered in the two Princes mindes. And *Emirhamze*, when hee had nowe discovered the wickednesse of his Father in Lawe, tooke it also in verie good parte that hee was depriued both of his state and life. And so the two brethren beeing reconcyled together, and the Sonne to the Father, after that *Abas Mirize* had agayne promised his wished obedience (which hee afterwarde willinglie performed,) Kinge *Mahamet* returned with the Prince towards *Casbin*, where by reason of sodayne and v unexpected newes hee had nowe a long time bene looked for and desired.

Mirize Salmas
beheaded by
the Kings or-
der.

K. Mahamet
with the
Prince retur-
neth to *Cas-*
bin.

Amurath, through the roughe speeches, and unluckie prognostications of *Sinan*, was more and more settled in his purpose to continue this Warre, hopinge that hee woulde cause all the threateninge

The VI. Booke.

Gg 4

of

of *Sinan* to bee but vaine, and to reape so much the more glorie by his happie successe in such an enterprise, as it should fall out contrarie to the common opinion of all men. And thereupon began to bethinke himselfe whome he might choose for his Generall, and to him not onelie to commit such a charge, but also to communicate all his deuises. Till that time, *Osman Bassa* was appoynted bee the man, but *Amurath* thinking that *Osman* might prooue more seruiceable in *Siruan*, and thereby the better assure and establish the conquest of that Region, durste not so soone remoue him from thence. Among the *Bassas* of the Court there was one *Ferat*, a man of ripe yeares, but yet fierce of courage, tough in opinion, in counsell as hardie as might bebecome his age, ready for all sodeine and strange aduentures, but aboue all a vassall most deuoted to the King, and happely he had performed some good office, why he was the rather now called forth by *Amurath* to this seruice. Of this man at the last hee was resolved to make choyce to bee the Captaine of his Arnie. And therefore hee called him to him, and communicated with him all his priue designements and secreete deuises necessarie for this warre, encouraging him to take paynes, to fight battels, to obayne victories, and to doe all thinges else agreeable to so worthis an enterprise. Verie willingly did *Ferat* accept of this newe Office, and thought himselfe to bee highly fauoured by the King, and so disposed himselfe to performe the same, so farre as he coule employ his strength, his wit and his diligence therein: and thereupon made him a large promise, that hee woulde put in execution, whatsoeuer shoulde be offered vnto him either by occasion, or by his Royall commaundement. Which although the King should not haue

The VI. Booke.

vrged

Ferat Bassa of the Court.

Ferat Bassa elected generall of the Arnie in Sinans place.

vrged any further, but onely to assure the passage to *Teflis*, and all *Georgia*, and principally to destroye the countrie of *Mustaffa* the *Georgian*, who had so audaciousslie iniured the Lieutenant of *Amurath* and set his whole Armie in confusion, yet beeing certified by *Maxut-Chan* the Rebelle of *Persia*, and being aduertised by his subiecte *Bassas* that remained neere to *Tauris*, howe King *Mahamet* was departed, or at least was vpon the poynt of departing to *Heri*, to trie his Sonnes minde, hee chaunged his purpose, and deliberating the matter with himselfe, hee commaunded *Ferat* to employ all his Force and diligence to erect a Fabrike at *Reiuan*, a place belonging to *Tocomac*, and to assure the passage that leadeth from *Chars* to *Raiuan*. For so they shoulde bereuenged of manie treacheries and dammages which they had receyued by *Tocomac*, and the way to the Citie of *Tauris* shoulde bee made open, to the great glory of *Amurath*. Hee aduised *Ferat* also, that although hee knew verie well, it were his ducie to chastize *Mustaffa* the *Georgian* for his rash attempt against *Mahamet Bassa*, being then his Generall: yet he thought it better, that hee should dissemble and conceale his ill opinion of him, and (if it might bee possible) to worke so, as hee might conueigh the treasure and succours to *Teflis*. For by this meanes, the passage beeing made safe and secure, without anye moe Fortresses or Fabrikes, all *Georgia* woulde bee subdued, and the next yeare they might attempt the enterprise of *Tauris*.

Verie highlie did *Ferat* commend the deuises of *Amurath*, and shewed himselfe readie for anie attempt. And now was the time come, wherein it behoued them to set on foote these their important designements: and therefore in the beginning of the yeare 1583. commaunde-

The VI. Booke.

Hh

dements

Amurath de liberareth what should be done towards this expedition of Ferat.

Commande-
ment sent out
for the expe-
dition of Ge-
nerall Ferat

The Prouin-
ces sent their
souldiers and
prouision this
yeere.

Ferat depar-
teth from
Constantino-
ple, and by
Calcedon &
Cius cometh
to Erzurum,

Ferat being
guided by the
rebell Maxut-
Chā arriueth
at Chars.

Ferat repay-
reth Aggia-
Chala.

230 *The warres betweene*
dements were sent out of all the Cities of the Empire,
which were wont to make their apperance at these wars,
that vpon fresh summons they should be readie to re-
turne against the *Persians*, and to put in execution, that
which should be enioyned the by their new captain: the
Fame whereof flew as far as to *Tripoli* in *Soria*, to *Damasc-*
co, to *Aleppo*, to all *Iurie*, to *Palestina*, to *Mesopotamia*, to
Babylonia, to *Balsara*, to *Sinas*, to *Maras*, to all *Bithynia*,
to *Cappadocia*, to *Cilicia*, to *Armenia*, and to all the *San-*
giacchi and *Curdi* of them, yea and beyond *Constantino-*
ple, to the borders of *Hungarie*, and of *Greece*, and to
bee brieft to all their subiecte Regions, that were
wont to come to this Warre. All which sent their
Captaynes and Souldiers accordingly, all readie and
willing to performe the pleasure of their Lorde. And
so at the last, Generall *Ferat* departing from *Constanti-*
nople, and passing to *Chalcedon* by the way of *Amasia*, and
of *Sinas*, hee came to *Erzurum*, where hee tooke a view
of all his Souldiers, all his Pioners, his Buylers, his
Treasure, his prouision of Corne, his Munitions of
Warre, and leading with him the ordinarie Number
of Artillarie, hee gathered al together vnder his Stan-
dard. Afterwardes in due time hee remooued from
Erzurum, and in the space of eight dayes arriued at
Chars: (in which his journey hee vsed the seruice of the
rebell *Maxut-Chan*, as his Guide, who in the Turkish
language is called a *Calans*:) and from *Chars* hee sette
himselfe on his waye towards *Rein*. Three dayes
before hee came to *Rein*, of certayne ruines of an
olde and steepe Castle, which the *Turkes* called *Ag-*
gia-Chalash, hee erected a newe Fortresse, and left in it
a Garrison of fower hundred Souldiers, together
The VI. booke.

with a *Sangiachō* and certayne peeces of Ordinance, and
then went to *Rein*.

This Countrey lyeth neere to a Mountaine, whose
toppe reaching aboue the clouldes, seemeth to touch
the heauens, and is continually charged with snowe
and yce. At the foote of this heigh and starke moun-
taine there lie fayre fieldes abounding with Corne
and Cattell, and watered with diuers brookes, that fal-
ling downe from a losse discharged themselues into *A-*
raxis. It is distant from *Tauris*, eight or nine dayes
journey: betweene which two places are situate *Nas-*
shūn, *Chinfall*, *Marant*, and *Sassian*, all enriched with
goodly Gardens, and pleasaunt Greenes: but in the
way many craggie mountaynes to bee clymed, and
sundrie harde passages either for Armie or Traueller.
It hath vppon the coast towards the North, *Teslis*:
vppon the South the playnes of *Caldaran*: and a little
higher towards the *Tropike* of *Capricorne*, *Van* and the
Marash.

Here then did *Ferat Bassa* encampe himselfe with
all his Armie, and taking the aduise of his chiefe
Captaynes, where hee shoulde bulde the Forte, they
all with one consent aduised him to seaze vppon the
houses and Gardens of *Tacemir*, and to enuiron them
with Ditches, with Walles, and with Ordinaunce
for defense, and in the midst as it were in a Center
within the Walles to erecte a highe Castle, which
on euerie side rounde about might discotter both the
hilles and the playnes, and being well fensed with
store of good Ordenance might threaten destruction
and ruine to all those that durst attempt to endam-
page them. And so they enclosed the gardens with
The VI. Booke.

Ferat at Rei-
uan, and the
description of
the situation
therof.

A Consultati-
on touching
the principall
place
where the
Fort should
bee erected.

The forte of Reiuuan 750. yards about Within the space of 15. dayes the works at Reiuuan, the ditches and all were finished.

walles accordingly, and hauing digged ditches rounde about them, they conueyed water into them from a certayne riuer, that came downe from the hilles and ranne into *Araxis*, and in this manner within the space of fiftene dayes they finished the Fort.

Tocomac seeketh meanes to reuenge the losse of his owne citie by annoying of Ferat.

Tocomac neuer ceaseth to annoy the Turkes.

It was a great affliction to *Tocomac* thus to loose his own Countrie, yea and so much the more grieuous it was vnto him, because it happened so sodenly and as it were vnllooked for: he himselfe, presently as soone as he vnderstood that the Turkish Armie was comming towards that coast, hauing withdrawne himselfe and his men of war out of the Citie, and leauing the impotent to the mercie of the Conquerors, seeking by all meanes to bee reuenged, if not altogether, yet at the least in some part of this great iniurie. And therefore hee wrote to the King in *Corazan*, he wrote to *Emir-Chan* in *Tauris*, hee wrote to *Simon* in *Georgia*, hee gathered souldiers out of the villages, and vsed all his possible indeuour to make himselfe meete and able to annoy the enemies Armie. But neither from *Georgia* coule hee receaue anie helpe, because they were too much troubled with hindering any succours to bee brought for the reliefe of the besieged in *Teslis*; (as in due place it shall be declared.) Neither from *Tauris* was hee releued with so much as one Souldier: either because *Emir-Chan* would not, or coule not stirre, or else because hee had some secreete intelligence with Generall *Ferat*, not to disturbe him in this his Fabrike. And so *Tocomac* could not haue the lucke to be fauoured with any poore ayde, that might at the least haue mittigated the bitterness of his griefe. And therefore being not able to doe anie thing, but onely with those few Souldiers which he had, to lay some priuie ambushes for the Turkes, hee neuer ceased to sleie some-
The VI. Booke.

times a hundred of them, sometimes a hundred and fiftie, and sometimes more, and in that manner to coole the heat of his heart, which swelled with the burning desires of reuenge. And the better to ease his stomacke, which was infected with the poyson of hatred against *Emir-Chan*, who sitting still as it were to beholde his miseries, would not so much as shake a sword to annoy these spoyleing Turkes, and thereby performing his promise made to the King, hee spared not to dispatch verie many horse men to the saide King in *Corazan*, and by eloquent letters to amplify the vilenesse and cowardize of *Emir-Chan*, discouraging vnto him some shadowe of suspicion, and intermingling with all some causes of ialousie to be conceined in his minde, that *Emir-Chan* had some secreete intelligence with the Turkish Generall. And to be short he omitted no occasion, whereby hee might any way qualifie the griefe that he had taken for the losse of his Citie.

The Turkish Captaine at last departed from his newe Forte, and returned to *Charr*, and for the custodie of the said Fortresse he appointed there as Captaine *Sinan Bassa*, sonne to that *Cicala*, who by misfortune was lately taken prisoner, whiles with great fame hee scowred and waited the *Tyrrhene Sea*. And therefore this his Sonne, who was afterwards cured and healed by mee of a certaine disease that hee had at *Aleppo*) partly for the goodlinesse of his person, and partly for the hope that hee rayed of his valour, was so greatly fauoured by *Selim* the late Tyrant of *Constantinople*, and the Arrant Enemy of the Italian name, that hauing scarce passed the flower of his youth, in which age he was decreely beloued of him, hee was created the Aga or Captain of the *Gammisaries*, and after this his first degree of Honour sent to bee gouernour of certayne Cities, and in
The VI. Booke.

Tocomac hateth *Emir-Chan*.

Tocomac accuteth *Emir-Chan* to the King.

Ferat departed from *Reiuuan*.

Bassa Cicala left for the custodie of *Reiuuan*.

Bassa Cicala cured by the author at *Aleppo*.

phet, that is dead, abandoning and forsaking the religion of that God, which is the onelie true and one God, in Trinitye. And that with these and such like speeches, which very eloquently and with great zeale flowed from the mouth of *Simon*, he was perswaded to relinquish that infamous and wicked slaverye, and in any fute occasion that God, (who is most mercifull towards sinners and offenders) should minister vnto him, to reuenge the oppression, that *Amurath* had vsed towards him, and openlie to declare to the whole world, that he scorned and repouned the Diabolicall pompes and infernall riches of the Tyrant, thereby disclosing himselfe to bee indeede of greate courage and a true Christian. His cosin not ceasing in the meane time to repeate often vnto him, That God would not faile in peculiar and familiar manner to take knowledge of his Actions, and to fauour them, yea and at all times to sende vnto him all happie and wished successesse whereas on the contrarie side, if he would not resolute with himselfe so to doe, hee might well bee assured, that after manye labours and trauels, which hee should indure for the seruice of *Amurath*, he should obtaine none other recompence, but a harde and infamous captiuitie, and in the ende some fraudulent and treacherous death. Vpon which wordes *Mustaffa* being thoroughly moued, he caused the two *Capigi* and the *Chiaus* to be apprehended, and presentlie beheaded, and so *Simon* and hee, besides the bande of their kindred hauing solemnly vowed a perpetuall confederacie & strict friendship to bee inuiolablie kept betweene them, deuided the treasure, and withdrew themselves to their wonted passages, there to annoy and endamage, whosoever should be sent for the succouring of *Tissu*.

These and such other particularities when *Ferat* understood, being all in a furye, and inflamed with rage, he did swear that he would not returne to *Erzurum*, vntill all the Country of *Mustaffa* were put to fire and sword: but yet in the meane time he bechought himselfe that vrgent necessity did shrewdly vrge him to send conuenient strength to the place that was in daunger: and for that purpose made choise of *Hassan Bassa*, who already in the last yeere of the Generall shippe of *Mustaffa* had very couragiously conueighed the sayde succours and taken *Alyculi-Chan* prisoner. To him therefore did the Generall assigne fourty thousande Duckates, with other prouision necessarye for that enterpryse, and for suretie appointed him fiftene thousand persons of the best choise and valour in all the Armye. In tenne daies space *Hassan Bassa* wente and came from *Tessis*: In whose iourneye too and fro, the *Georgians* made manye skirmishes with them, where in there were slaine of the Turkes sometimes tenne, and sometimes twenty, and sometimes their mules and sometimes their horses were taken from them, but no matter at all of any great moment. After this, the Generall elected one *Resuan Bassa* to bee Captaine of six thousand Souldiers to goe to *Alumhala*, *Carichala*, and other places and villages of *Mustaffa* the laterinogato, nowe become a rebel to the Turkes, and relapsed to the obstinate religion of the Greekes. Which *Resuan* without any long stay, ouerran all his Territorye, but in his towne and his lands, and committed vnto his outrages, euery vpon the poore insensible trocke. *Resuan* brought home with him manye Captiue soules, with much Corne and Cattell, and to bee breefe where soeuer hee wente, hee wasted and destroyed like a Tempest, The VI. Booke.

Ferat sweareth that hee will destroye all the country of *Manuechi*. *Hassan Bassa* chosen to carry the succours to *Tessis*. 15000. Souldiers assigned to *Hassan*. with the reliefe.

In 10. daies *Hassan* goeth & cometh with the succours. The *Georgians* annoy the people of *Hassan Bassa*.

Resuan Bassa chosen Captaine to endamage the country of *Manuechi*: The harmes done by *Resuan*.

Ferat at Ardashan.

Ferat by the way of Olti returneth to Erzurum, and dismisseth his Armie. Hassan Bassa rewarded by the king.

Ferat spreadeth a rumor that he would goe to Nassiman.

whatsoever was before him: and if in any place he seemed to be any thing fauourable, and his fury pacified, it was because there was no resistance made by any vpon whom he might exercise his forces. The Generall was now also retyred to *Ardashan*, and thither came *Reshan* to meete him with his foresaide booty. But because there remained nothing else to bee done in those quarters, and the winter perswaded their returne, they remoued from *Ardashan*, and by the way of *Olti* retyred to *Erzurum*: from whence all the souldiers were licensed to departe to their severall places of abode: and an *Arz* or *Memoriall* sente to the King of all the Actions that had beene performed, & principally of the good enterprise of *Hassan Bassa*, who for the same was now also once againe honoured by the King with cloath of gold, and a battell axe and Target al guilt. And this end had the troubles of the yeere 1583. of mans saluation, being the seauenth yeere of this warre.

All the rest of the yeere 1583. the Generall wintered at *Erzurum*, and afterward sent out his ordenary commandementes over all his accustomed Cities, to summon the souldiers against the next spring of the yeere 1584. appointing the taxes and remedies to bee somewhat greater then they were wont to bee, and gathering together a greater number of pishers & enginers then euer had been gathered hetheretofore, and withall published a rumor: a-broade that they shoulde goe to *Nassiman*, and there doe great matters. At the report whereof the *Perlians* were much remoued, and began to cast many things in their heades about it. Glad they were for the union and amity lately concluded betweene the two *Casim* *Sultan* and *Manuchiar*: for now being againe reclaimed and become a Champion of his former faith, as may call him

The VI. Booke. II

no

no longer *Mustaffa*, the name that he had giuen him by *Amurath* at his Circumcision, but *Manuchiar*, where by hee was Christened by the Priestes at his Baptisme.) The estate & expectations of the Persians, vpon occasions that fell out. And they wel hoped, that by the diligence of them both, the way of *Tomanis* would be sufficiently kept & guarded, or at the leaste that which they were not able to doe, the rest of the *Persian* Captaines woulde performe for their partes.

But aboue all others. the king who was now arriued at *Casbin*, and had vnderstoode the confirmation of the vnhappy successe at *Roman*, and the newe preparations of the Turkes, beganne to thinke vpon further matters, and entred into many discourses with himselfe, all entermingled with a very great feare of some strange alterations. The fabrik erected the last yeere at *Roman* afore-said, & the repaire of the castle called *Aggia-Chalasi*, had perswaded him, that the Turkes this yeere would passe to *Tauris*, or at least as the repotte was to *Nassiman*, and build new fortresses in those borders. Which thing the king neither would nor could endure by any meanes, for that it might proue a shrewd introduction to the ruine of *Persia*, and to the bringinge downe of so mightye an Empire. And therefore hee retayned still those Forces which hee brought home with him, and out of all the Cities that were Subiecte vnto him hee caused as many moe to come as hee coulde, commaunding withall, that all the Chaus vpon paine of Death shoulde followe him to *Tauris*, and so not longe after the arriual of *Ferat Bassa* at *Erzurum*, hee also arriued at *Tauris*, being withal obedience accompanied be all his said Armie.

The VI. Booke.

II 2

This

Mahamet the Perlian king gathereth a great army. The Persian king at Tauris.

The coming
of the Persiā
king to Tauris
breedeth
great conceits

This v unexpected coming of the Persian to Tauris, as it engendred expectation of verie good successe in the mindes of all men, insomuch as the voice went ouer all Italye, that the Persian ment to haue meruailous conflicts with the Turke, whereat Christendome did not a little reioyce for the good hope that it bred of some happy euent in prejudice of the Turkes: so Ferat Bassa beeing certified thereof, before he proceeded any further, beeing thereunto aduised by Maxus Chan his Guide, (as afterwarde hee confessed at Aleppo) he thought good to aduertise Amurath of the matter, declaring vnto him, That his desire was to goe to Nassian, and there to build a fortresse according to his commandement, (a worke in his opinion verie necessarie, to make the passage for Tauris safe and secure.) But forsomuch as he had receiued intelligence by trustye Souldiers, that the Persian king was remoued to Tauris with a verie huge Army, and was viterly resolved to come and encounter him, he thought it his dutye not to put in execution his foresaide determination, without the Kings expresse commandement, Amurath presentlie wrote back vnto him, that if it were so as he had written, he should imploy himselfe about nothing els, but to quier the passage of Tomanik and Lori, to the ende that the next yeere following there should be no neede to send any newe Army, to conuey the succors, but some small bande might be sufficient, as traouelling through a country, that wels at amity and confederacye with them. Which order Amurath did the more willingly set down, for that he saw the rebellion of Manuchhar, and knewe full well, that the Fort of Tash by reason of his Treacherie should haue more neede nowe, then euer it had, to be sustained and releued. And with-

Ferat writeth
to Amurath.

Amurath writeth
again to Ferat, not
to goe to Nassian
but to Lori & Tomanik
in Georgia

standing, Ferat would not publish his newe chimaerical conceits, but caused the rumour to be continued (more then hee did before) that hee would goe to Nassian, of purpose to feede the opinion, that the Persians had formerly conceaued in their mindes of his going thither, & socluding them hee might without any disturbance, of the enimie attend the building of the forts, which he had intended for the quieting of the most dangerous passages of Lori and Tomanik.

Ferat having concluded vpon this resolution, and gathered together his people with all things that were necessarie for his purpose, remoued at last with his Armie from Chars, towards Chars, where he arrived by the way of Hissar Chelassi, not meeting with any antioiance or hinderance, & there he staid the space of ten dayes, to the end that all his companies of Souldiers and heape of provision might be newlie suruoyed. And then departing from Chars, hee iournied towards Lori, and presently dispatched Hassan Bassa with five thousand valiant light horsemen to scoure the Countrey, and passing euen to Tomanik to retourne him newes, of all that hee should see or heare in those quarters, and to bring home his Captiues with him, that hee might the better make diligent enquiry of the affaires of Georgia. This commandement of the Grapell Hassan performed dutifully, and making haste on his iourney passed to Lori, and from Lori to Tomanik, & speedily scoured ouer all the woodles opening and closing all the passages round about, without any decrease of his strength, or diminution of his valour, and at the last hauing met with certaine Cosaks, (which wee may terme Robbers by the highway) he slew them all, and setting their heads on the toppes of his Lances, The VI. Booke.

A stratagem
wrought by
the Turkes vpon
a false
rumor.

General Ferat
at Chars,
where he staid
for his Armie
ten dayes

Ferat departed
from
Chars, send-
ing out
Hassan Bassa,
as a forerun-
ner before
himselfe

Colonus
theus name
by Hassan

he made his returne towards Leri. Where having staid
 one whole day, they discovered from thence all the whole
 Turkish Armie, with a great and fearfull shew comming
 and approching towards them. Whereupon *Hassan*
 went to meet the Generall, & to reporte vnto him the ex-
 cursiō that he had made, declaring withal, that he had not
 encountered any other but onely certaine *Cassaks*, whose
 heades he might beholde vppon their Launces, for that
 hee thought it not necessarie to bring them alive, because
 they were altogether ignoraunt of the *Georgian* and *Persian*
 affaires, and therefore were not able to deliuer any in-
 formation thereof at all. And so they arrived at Col-
 gether at *Leri* afore said, and there encamped them-
 selves. This place did sometime belong to *Simon*, well
 strengthened with a high Castell, compassed about
 with very deepe ditches, and a thicke wall almost a
 mile in circuit, but at this present somewhat weaker
 and wasted by time. It is distant from *Tiflis* two
 dayes iourney, of a *Carion* place. Generall *Ferats* fel-
 ed vppon this, and having repaired the walles in such pla-
 ces as they had most neede of reparations, and streng-
 thened all the breaches, he planted therein season-
 eight thousand persons, of the *Armenians*, the *Georgians*,
 the *Spahis* and the *Zais*, and for the guid or Captaine
 ouer them hee appointed *Ali Bassa* of Greece, and vpon
 the Castell and the Walles hee distributed two hun-
 dred peeces of small ordnance. All these prouisi-
 ons being made, hee wrote to *Tomanis*, leauing or-
 der with the said *Ali Bassa*, that when hee thought hee
 might take some opportunitie, hee shoulde not faile to
 fortifie *Saitan Chalasi*, about ten miles distant from *Leri*,
 & to place therein a convenient garison of Souldiers
The VI. Booke.

Generall Ferat at Leri.
 The Situation
 of Leri.

The walles of
 Leri repaired.
 7000 souldiers
 in Leri.
 Ali Bassa of
 Greece cap-
 taine of Leri.

200 peeces of
 ordinance in
 Leri.
 Ferat goeth
 to Tomanis.
 Order to for-
 tifie Saitan-
 Chalasi neer
 adioining

and Artillarie. For soothly the best builded waye
 Forer daies long were they going to *Tomanis*, for the
 Generall would needs make it forer daies iourney, being
 ordinarily but one daies woorke from the one place to the
 other, to the ende that those fieldes being very rich of
 Come, of fruite, and of Cattell shoulde every where be
 wasted and burned by his spoiling Armye, and that the
 Countrey Inhabitants besides their other losses shoulde
 also endure the losse of their Rents. Now *Tomanis* in times
 past was also a Castell, whither *Simas* used ofentimes to
 make his repayre, and when the heate of these Warres
 beganne, the *Georgians* themselves were in a consul-
 tation to raze it, to the ende that it shoulde not be sur-
 prized by the Turkes, and thereby that benefite
 shoulde redounde to them, which it shoulde not yeelde
 vnto the *Georgians* for their want of Ordnance. And
 heere was greate aduise taken, howe and where the
 Fort shoulde be erected for the defence of the coun-
 trey. But after many discourses at laste it was con-
 cluded, that a Castell shoulde be built in that
 place but a little further, and that for this reason, because
Tomanis standing so good long waye from this side the
 Straite, if they shoulde build the Fort there, then
 could they not make that passage safe and secure,
 and therefore it was more useful for them to proceede fur-
 ther euen to the very mouth of it, and there to plant the
 Fort. And so the Armye marched forwards
 a certaine foure Miles, vntill being arrived at the ve-
 ry issue of the narrowe passage, they found the Ruines
 of an other castel, and heere they came they stayed them-
 selves. This stoep headed long Castell was compassed
 round about with a very thicke row of beeches, pines, and
The VI. Booke.

The State of
 Tomanis.

Consultati-
 ons about the
 erecting of a
 fort at Tomanis.

The State of
 Tomanis.

A Castell
 in the
 mouth of the
 Straite.

Simon deluded by the lying spies meane-
th to assaulte
Resuan.

Simon with
4000. Souldiers goeth
to encounter
Resuan Bassa.

The Bassaes
of Caramania
& Maras dis-
patched for
aide.

Simon repen-
teth that hee
went to set
vpon Resuan.

that *Resuan* was gone, not with twentie thousande persons, but with a far lesse number of people, then indeede hee was. At which good newes hee tooke courage to encounter *Resuan*, and setting vpon him to ioine a bloudye and mortall battell with him. Which his resolution hee caused presentlie to bee put in practise: for without any further delaye, beeing accompanied with fower thousand *Georgians*, partly Subiectes of his owne, and partly of *Manuachiar*, with all speed possible hee wente against *Resuan*. But whiles *Simon* was going thitherwardes, Generall *Ferat* (either because he was falsely informed that there were a greater number of *Georgian* Souldiers, or else because without any other aduertisement, he was of himselfe affraide that the Enemies Army was bigger then it was) had already by chaunce dispatched away the two Bassaes of *Caramania* and of *Maras* with tennethousand persons, to the end that ioyning themselves with the Souldiers of *Resuan*, they shoulde bee so much the safer and stronger at all aduentures. Nowe *Simon* came vpon *Resuan*, being encamped with six thousand Souldiers onely at the roote of a certaine Hill, on the backside whereof were all the rest of his people, neere to a certaine water, and presentlie made an assault vpon him. The Souldiers, behinde the Hill, beeing aware of *Simons* approach, were readie all at once with their weapons to annoy *Simon*, who nowe was exceeding sory for his error in beleeuing the false newes, and repenting himselfe, that hee had assaulted his Enemies, hee perceiued that hee was vndoone. But when hee sawe, that by flight hee could not but increase his griefe, and make the issue more lamentable and miserable, with those fewe Souldiers which hee

The VI. booke.

had, hee endured the fury of the populous Armye of *Resuan*, and on both sides there was ioyned a moste cruell Battell: Wherein on the one side you mighte haue seene a straunge and vnusuall valour, and on the other a tumultuous superfluitie of a multitude, that in the encounter were rather sore wounded, then able to carrie away the Victorie: Howbeit in the end the huge number of the Turkish swordes and Speares did overcome the small number of the *Georgians*, and the Barbarian fires and Artillarie did bring the Christian forces to an vnhappye estate. But *Simon* himselfe, whose Horse in the Medley was quite thrust thorough, fell downe headlong to the ground, and his gilt *Torbant* with his Golden Horne from his Heade, and in his fall was verie neere to haue been taken prisoner. Which misfortune, as it happened to his Lieutenaunt and to his Generall, and to many other his followers, so must it needes also haue lighted vpon him, if hee had not bene relieved by an vnexpected and (as it were) a meruailous fauor. For whiles the battell was euen at the greatest heat betweene them, *Resuan* discouraged the two Bassaes of *Caramania* and *Maras*, who (as wee told you) were newly sent by Generall *Ferat* to succor him, but both by the said *Resuan*, and also by the rest of the Turkish armie were indeed thought to be *Persians*. Whereupon they were incontinently surprized with a sodaine feare insomuch that all of them waxing fainte and hanging in suspence, the victory, which before was sure their owne, became nowe very doubtfull, and the Turkes themselves feared, that they should bee the loosers. In this suspence & doubtfullnes of minde, the battell also was intermitted, & by those very frinds, which were sent thither to

The VI. booke

Kk 2

further

A cruel battell
betweene the
Turkes and
the Georgians.

Simons horse
thrust through

An vnexpected
chaunce
deliuereth
Simon from
present destruction.

further this enterprife, it was vna waies disturbed where- by the *Georgians* and specially *Simon*, whose estate was almost desperate, tooke the opportunitie & benefite to escape & saue themselves, and to leaue behinde them many infallible signes of their valour among the *Turks*: of whom manie remained there slaine, many wounded, and manie replenished with verie great maruell and vnexpected feare. Thus escaped *Simon*, and thus remayned *Resuan*, who after that hee had discovered his welwilling *Bassaes* approaching neerer towards him, and knewe them particularly to bee his Confederates and Furderers, could not bee quiet with himselfe for the escape of *Simon*, who without all doubt had beene vtterly ouerthrowne and all his people, if as hee feared great harme, by the coming of the two *Bassaes*, so hee had expected that helpe which hee shoulde haue expected. For without anye further trouble or difficultie, all the Forces of the *Georgians* had either beene taken prisoners, or miserablie destroyed. But poore *Simon* saued himself in the places neere therabouts, which hee knewe by their situation to bee verie safe and secure, and there beganne a freshe to bee greeued at the false information that hee had receaued by the lying spies touching his Armies, bewayling the deathes and captiuitie of his subiectes, and yeelding thanks to God for the preservation of his life and libertie.

The *Turkes* in this meane time were come to *Tomanis*, with all iollitie and triumph, drawing the standerdes of *Simon* all along the ground, and bearing manie heades of the *Georgians* vpon their Launces to the great ioy of Generall *Ferat*, to whome also there were deliuered all the prisoners taken in the battell, and impious *Dag-Chan*, likewise presented, who hauing in times past abandoned

his

his first faith was become a *Persian*, and now againe despising the vaine and wicked woorshippe of the *Persians*, had yeelded himselfe for a pray to the impure filthinesse of the *Turkes*, and made himselfe a voluntarie slaue to *Amurath*

The season of the yeere was now so farre spent, that euery man beganne to feare the winter approaching, and therefore the Generall determined to remoue from those partes, and to withdrawe himselfe into some safer places: and so hauing set in Order all the Garrisons of the newe Forte, in such sorte as we tolde you before, hee appointed *Hassan* to bee the *Bassa* of *Tomanis*, and leste with him eight thousand souldiers, which he had chosen out of the rest, for that enterprife.

Very deeply in his minde had *Ferat* layed-vp the outrage committed by *Mustaffa* the *Georgian*, (beeing now returned to his old name of *Manucchiar*), in taking away the Kings treasure, and killing the two *Capigi* and the *Chianu*: neither could hee finde any rest, nor time to ease his stomacke beeing all inflamed and boiling with anger for the same. And therefore hee resolved with himselfe not to returne to *Chars* or *Erzurum*, vnlesse he had first passed into the countries of the said *Georgian*, and by annoying the same in the cruelest manner he coulde, reuenged the intollerable iniuries that were receiued. In three daies he arriued at *Triala*, where all the Turkish Army encamped themselves, and where they endured a very strange and vnwonred dearth and scarfitie of all thinges, and principally the want of ordinary vittailles grew so excessiue, that after the rate of the *Venetian Statio* or *Bushell*, they paid five hundred Duckates for euerye five *Bushels* and a halfe (which amounteth to the measure of a *Sorian Machco*) to the vniuersall calamitye of the whole Army, Barley also

Feare of winter approaching.

Hassan left as *Bassa* at *Tomanis* with 8000.

Ferat arriued at *Triala*. A dearth such as was neuer heard of among the Army.

Simon escapeth out of the *Turkes* handes.

Simon thanketh God for preservation of his life.

Resuan at *Tomanis* againe.

his

was happilie solde at a higher price, as *Hala Bey* (of whom I made mention before) did for a trueth giue mee to vnderstand, and confirmed it by the testimonie of diuers others.

Bassa Veis
commeth be-
fore General
Ferat, and
speaketh to
him.

Ferat reproo-
ueth Veis the
Bassa.

Ferat at Ar-
chelech.

From this place the Generall was minded to goe on forwardes, towards the countrie of *Manucchiar*: but whiles hee was vpon the raising of his tentes, one *Veis*, beeing then the *Bassa* of *Aleppo*, came against him, and aduertised him, that it was not good now to spend the time in wandring about those coutries, for that there were three verie great enemies, which were confederate together, to make this enterprise very difficult, and almost impossible & desperate. One was the season of the yeer, beeing now full of snows, frosts, and tempests, which in those Regions are continually noysome to traouellers. Another was the want & scarcitie of all things necessarie for vitaille, without which no doubt the Armie would make an insurrection, and abandon all the enterprises that should bee attempted, & so in the greatest heat of their labors, their designements being put in practice, should be hindred and interrupted. And the third was the people of *Georgia*, who peraduenture might find opportunity to procure the ioynt helpe of the *Persians* in their fauour, and by a common vnitng of themselues together, to worke some notable mischiefe against their armie. But *Ferat* did most sharply rebuke the *Bassa*, & reproued him with bitter termes, telling him flatly, that hee wel perceiued he was brought vp among mountains & villages, & of a villain (as hee was) aduanced to the honor of a *Bassa*, vpon some od conceit & foolish importunity: and that therefore he should not haue presumed so much as to thinke it lawfull for him, so impudently & shamelesly to come & giue him such aduertisements: but rather it had beene his duty to haue held his peace, and to harken to the commandements of his betters, & superiors, yeelding himselfe obedient & deuoted to performe the same with all his power. With this rebuke the General passed on to *Archelech*: in al which passage he destroyed & in a manner burnt vp al the plat countrie, though indeed it were in amitie & confederacie with the Turkes. But the inhabitants of *Archelech* had withdrawn themselues into the mountaine, abandoning the Citie, the Castels, and Villages, and leauing them open to the furie of the armie, to the great astonishment & maruell of al men, who thought that they beeing subiectes, rather then they

should

The VI. Booke.

should flie into the mountains, should haue run with al ioy & gladnes to salute the victorious Captaine, & to admire the armies, the deuises, the forces & the ensigns of their good friend the Generall.

In *Archelech* *Ferat* encamped & staid the space of fower daies, among the rockie crags, & in a barren soyle, where neither cattel nor men had any store of necessarie sustenance, but rather euery man endured vnspcakable miseries. Howbeit for fower whole daies the souldiers were content to beare this great calamity. But in the end thereof, the fall of a huge snow being added to these extremities did so greatly entcrease their griefes, that all the *Giannizzaries* & *Spagolins* of *Constantinople* arose in a tumult, and comming before *Ferat*, in despiteful & contemptuous manner, with very haughtie and resolute termes they said vnto him, And how long shall we endure this thy tedious and insolent gouernment? where is the due commiseration that thou oughtest to beare towards the vassels of our soueraigne Lord, thou rustical & vnreasonable captaine? Dost thou think happye, that we keep with our harlots, as thou doest, vnder thy sumptuous pavilions, all fat & in good plight with delicate viandes, whiles others ~~live~~ in miserie? Dost thou beleue, that we haue, as thou hast, our dauntie Sugers, spices, and conserues, wherby to restore vs in the common calamities of others? And that we haue at commaund our neate & pretious wines, which thou minglest with thy cleere & pleasant waters, partly provided for thee by the Arte of the cunning Doctors, & partly brought vnto thee from farre places? From this daie foreward, it wil bee no longer endured, that so much people should continue in this famine & cold lying vpon the hard ground, and afflicted with nakednes and many other inconueniencies: and therefore get thy selfe vp, and retorne towards *Erzurum*: or else we shall be enforced to doo that, which wil breed more displeasure to thee, then to any man else.

The miseries
of the Turkish
Armie.
The souldiers
being in a tu-
mult speake
despitefully to
the general.

The general, being in a great agony & confusio within himself, presently caused a *Dimano* to be assembled, wherein it was concluded, that they should all send their strong sumpter horses towards *Ardachan*, & all follow him into y widows countrey, whither he had appointed to go, only to make an Inrode to giue the occasio of spoile & bootie, & to refresh the minds of the al, that were afflicted with the miseries both past & present. At the comendement of the general they al readely

Tch VI. Booke. Kk 4

obeyed,

Ferat promi-
seth the spoile
of Manucchi-
ar his coun-
tries.

obeyed, aswell because he promised them a speedy viorage as also for that euerie man desired the sacke of *Altun-Chala*, & other the territories of *Manucchiar*: & therefore they al verie willingly followed the Standerdes of *Ferat*, who holding-on his iourneye through certaine lowe valleyes, betweene the high and difficult mountaines (which could be none other but the Rockes of *Periardo*) and beeing continually accompanied with a verie great dearth and scarcitie, brought his Army to *Clisca*, a place belonging to the sayd *Manucchiar*, but now quite abandoned & forsaken by all the inhabitants, who at the onely voice of the Generalles comming, hauing gotten together all the best stuffe that they had, together with their wiues, their children, & al their deereft iewels, were departed from thence, & remooued into remote and safe places, till the furye of the victor should be ouerpasse. In the fields neere vnto this place there was good store of Rie, Barley, & other corne wherewith they might quench the hunger of the Cattell, yea and the souldiers themselves through the aboundance of fruite and flesh were greatly comforted and refreshed. So that the Generall being encouraged by these commodities, and hoping that the whole Armie woulde take it well to stay a while in such good ease, determined with himselfe to erect a newe Forte in the place, and to strengthen it with Armour and Souldiers: and with this resolution gaue commandement to *Resuan Bassa*, that he should goe vp to the towre, and in the top thereof plant a banner, with a proclamation and publike reporte, that he woulde fence that Fortresse, and in the name of *Amurath* Fortifie it, as other Fortes were woont to bee. *Resuan* being accompanied with the Bassa of *Caramania*, who was also called *Amurath*, executed the commandement of the

General Ferat at Clisca.

The armie refreshed with plenty of vittales.

The Generall commandeth that Clisca should bee fortified.

Generall

Generall, in the toppe of the Towre planted one or two Banners accordingly, whereat assoone as the Souldiers espied them, the forenamed *Giannizzaries* and the *Spagiani*, sodainelye tooke great indignation, because they thought themselves to be too much abused by their captaine, and thereupon arising againe all in an vprore, replenished with furie and confused in tumult, with great despite and rage, they ranne vp to take downe the Banners that were planted vpon the Fort, and taking them in their handes, they strooke the saide *Resuan Bassa* once or twice about the pate withall, discharging a thousand iniurious and reprochful wordes vpon him, and sharply rebuking him. And then returning to the Generall, who was nowe also come thither himselfe to countenance the Action of *Resuan*, and from that high place the better to behold the situation thereof, with gestures full of contempt and disdain, reuiling him with many shamefull and scornfull termes, they protested vnto him, That they were not come to the Warres to exercise the occupation of Masters and Dawbers, and to bee employed in such vile and dishonourable offices, but onely to Manage their weapons, and thereby to demerite their ordinary wages, and to purchase to themselves glorie and renoune at their Kings handes. And therefore, if hee loued his heade, and woulde not shortly see those Armes turned against him, which hitherto had beene the Reuengers of the enemies iniuries, hee shoulde resolute with himselfe to leaue these newe Buildinges, and these vnseasonable designementes, and giuing place to the contrary season of the yeere, hee shoulde haue due care of their common desires and necessities. And whiles they were thus talking vnto him, there was one more bolde

Resuan Bassa ill handled by the souldiers.

The souldiers reuile General Ferat.

The VI. Booke.

L I

then

The souldiers
in a tumult
threaten the
General.
Amurath the
Bassa of Cara-
mania saueh
the Generalls
life.

The expresse
protestations
of the Souldi-
ers against
the General.

The answer
of Generall
Ferat to the
Souldiers.

A reply to the
answere.

then the rest and beyond his dutie, that did not sticke to assault the Generall, and to threaten him, that he would wreake his fury vpon him, and chastise him with impious hands & cruell blows withall. But the forenamed *Bassa* of *Caramania* was readie to lende the Generall his owne Horse, and so rescuing him from the rage and tumulte of the Souldiers to conduct him to his Paultion. Howbeit *Ferat* was pursued by the tumultuous Souldiers, and sharply accused againe for the stay that hee hadde made there, and for not resolving presently to remooue from thence: yea and after they had often repeated their contumelious speeches, and reprochful villanies against him, they vttered also at the last their manifest & expresse protestations, that if the next morning he did not remooue from those Quarters, without all faile, hee shoulde loose his life for it. *Ferat*, who could not abide to yeeld to them, that shoulde of duetie haue beene ready and obedient at euery becke that hee should make, seeking by all meanes (notwithstanding all this stirre) to staye there for so long time, as woulde bee sufficiente to builde a Forte, that woulde bee so noysome and iniurious to *Alamuchiar*, coulde doe no lesse but aunswere these Protestations, telling them, that he made no accompte of their threatening him with his life, which hee had alwaies offered as readie for any seruice of *Amurath* his King: But if they had no care to serue their Soueraigntie in this newe Building, they might goe their waies: for as for himselfe, he was vtterly minded to obey his Lorde, in whatsoever hee had commaunded him, for the honour of whome euery man bught to thinke his life very well bestowed. Vpon this aunswere there followed diuerse railings, *That I. Booke.*

and curses against the king, against the General, against them all: and in a most confused tumulte, that was raised, euery man betooke himselfe to his weapons, and in euery corner there were heard gromnellings, & whisperinges, full of wrath and fiercenesse, so that there was great feare of some dangerous conflict, but greater was the suspicion of the Generalls life. For nowe euery man had withdrawen himselfe to the guarding of suche things as he esteemed most deerely, when as sodainelye and in a trice they sawe the paultions of the Captaines and of all the *Bassas* fall downe to the grounde, al the cordes thereof beeing cut by the wrathfull souldiers, and as it were in a Moment all the Muttons and other Cattell, which the Generall and *Bassas* led with them for their ordinary vse, were seized vpon, and guarded with all diligence possible. And so farre off was it, that any man durste challenge or reuenge this their rashnesse, that they themselves returning a freshe vpon their Captaine, beeing nowe all in a maze and frightfull feare, they repeated the thirde time the protestations which they had twyse alreadye made vnto him, that if hee woulde not remooue from those Countries, and turne his Iourneye towards *Erzerum*, without all faile those Valleyes and Fieldes shoulde become the Sepulchers of the *Bassas*, and those Hilles shoulde retayne an eternall memotie of so famous a day.

The Generall might haue done with this people whatsoever hee had listid, if with a little liberallitye hee had bestowed but a small Quantitie of Money amonge them: but beeing loath to shewe, euen the leaste token of a gratefull minde towards them, he was enforced to performe

A most confused vprore, & manifest comon feare.

All the cordes of the tents sodainely cut.

The last protestations to the Generall.

Generall Ferat shamefully obeieth his souldiers.

Ferat at Ardachan.

Generall Ferat his women stolen away from him.

The shame of General Ferat

A muster at Ardachan.

performe their proud and arrogant demaundes, and to his great shame to obey them, whome hee might haue made obedient to him, rather with mildnesse then with rigor. And therefore the Captaine was constrained to yeelde and obey his Souldiers, and to auoide their despitefull and sharpe threatens, to his exceeding great reproach, euen as they had commaunded, to remooue from those quarters. The first day hee arriued at *Ardachan*, with the verie great annoyance and trouble of all the souldiers: for whereas the journey was wont to bee two daies worke ordinarilie, as well in respecte of the long waie, as also of the passage ouer a verie tough and difficult mountaine, the Generall woulde needes haue it dispatched in one onely daie, the rather thereby to afflict and grieve the Souldiers. But for this his reuenge hee receiued euen the selfesame daie his due reward, for that the Chariots, wherein his women rode were conueyed away, together with their *Eunuchs* that were their keepers: some saie, by the *Georgians*, that in those woodes and craggies of the mountaine lay in ambushe, waiting for some such occasion: and others say, by the *Glantzaries*, who altogether to dishonour the Captaine, wrought him this iniurie. A Great was the reproach which *Ferat* receiued, not onely in the Armie, but also, yea & farre greater at Constantinople, when these newes were knowen there: so that hee was continually replenished and inflamed with shame: and yet notwithstanding all this his wrath and ardent indignation, hee was compelled to endure the losse of his deereft Jewels, and in case as he was to journey towards *Erzurum*.

In *Ardachan* hee tooke a surueigh of his Armie, and before hee commaunded any remooue, hee gaue them
The V. Booke.

all leaue to departe, himselfe afterward arriuing at *Erzurum*, hated of all his Souldiers, enuyed by *Veis Bassa* and others the Captaines of the hoast, delamed for the losse of his women, and fallen into the disgrace of euery man. But no lesse then the rest, was the *Turkish* king discontented with him, for two verie mightie and weightie considerations. First, for that he was not able to make anie vaunt of any action that hee had done in reuenge of the exceeding great iniurie of the *Georgian*: neither was it possible for him to learne the way how to behaue himselfe towards the souldiers, that they might become obedient & friendly vnto him. Secondly for that without any care, he had suffered *Alyculi-Chan* to escape away: about whose flight he could not choose but haue some intelligence and conference, as heeing the onely man, that in all the strange haps which happened in the former yeers of this warre had continually celebrated & renewed the fresh memory of his seruiceable actions. For *Ferat*, who (as we told you before) by the new order, which he receiued from the Court, was to diuert his journey from *Nassuan*, to the straites and narrow passages of *Georgia*, beeing desirous to bee thoroughly informed in all those waies, that with most ease might leade him into those places, and withall to bee acquainted with all those difficult & perilous corners, where the *Georgians* were wont to hide themselves in ambushes, and prepare their treacheries, resolved with himselfe (in the second yeare when hee remoued from *Erzurum*) to take *Alyculi-Chan* out of prison, who was apprehended by *Massan Bassa*, and caused to bee imprisoned by General *Mustaffa* (as it is aboue writton in the fourth booke.) This *Alyculi-Chan* did *Ferat* purpose to vse as his guid & counsellor in this voyage, & to take his advice in such difficult resolutions, as might
The VI. Booke.

King Amurath discontented with Ferat.

The Originals of the escape of Alyculi-Chan, late prisoner in Erzurum.

happen vnto him in those narrow straites, and thereby to auoid the perils, that are ordinarily found in euery corner of those Regions. And therefore he caried him with him, vnder a certain guard (whatsoever it was afterwards) of his most faithfull vassels, & caused him to be wel intreated, by yelding vnto him the benefit & enioying of whatsoever he needed. At the last they arriued in *Georgia*, at the streits of *Tomanis*, where we told you the forenamed Castell was erected, and from thence hee escaped secretly into *Persia*. The manner of his escape is diuersly reported. For some say, that *Ferat* vpon this condition brought him from *Erzurum*, to set him at libertie whensoever hee should yeeld him any good aduise in this voyage: and that when he had so doone, for the discharge of his promise (which notwithstanding is a hard matter to beleue in a Turkish Infidel:) hee gratified him with his libertie. Others say, that *Ferat* for the exceeding great bribes, which hee had taken of *Alyculi*, granted him opportunitie to escape. But what bribes or rewards could a poore prisoner giue, that was spoiled of all his substance in the battel, and left scarce able to sustaine himselfe: And to bee briefe, others some say, that this escape was made neither for reward of money, nor discharge of promise, but by the onely vigilance of *Alyculi* himselfe, and the sleepines of his keepers, and that watching the opportunitie of the night, which is a friende to all escapes, hee started away. But whether this or that were the manner of his escape, in fine hee was then deliuered from the Turkish captiuitie, and returned into *Persia*, to the performing of those enterprises, which shall bee told you, when wee shall come to their fit times in this our Historie, for that now it is not amisse to declare a certaine particuclaritie, that happened before some of these

The manner of the escape of Alyculi-Chan the Persian.

Alyculi-Chan flieth againe into Persia.

The VI. Booke.

actions that wee haue already described, and that indeed may not be passed ouer in silence, and that is, the execution of the commaundementes that *Ferat* gaue to *Aly Bassa*, before hee departed from *Georgia*.

This *Aly*, who (as wee tolde you) remained in the Fort at *Lory*, founde his opportunitie to issue out of the Fortresse, and descending downie a certaine hill, at the foote whereof there was a Castell called *Saitan-Chalasi*, (which in our language may bee interpreted the Castell of the Diuel:) with great diligence hee fortified the same: Hee left therein fiftie peeces of Artillorie, and a thousand men, vnder the charge of a *Sangiaccio*, and so quieted the passages from forte to forte, in such sorte, as all the waies from *Reiuan* to *Chars*, and from *Chars* to *Teflis* were made easie and safe, and so all the enemies treacheries were discovered, and all their meanes taken away, whereby they might be able to plot any newe.

In this meane time, the King of *Persia*, who (as wee told you before) was arriued at *Tauris* with all those his forces, perceiuing that the *Turkes* had changed their purpose from *Nassian* to *Georgia*, so that there was no further need to employ his Armie against them in defense of *Tauris* or *Nassian*, at the last resolved with himselfe to licence his souldiers to depart, which he had brought thither with him for the repressing of those publike stirs: and to apply himselfe to more priuate reuenges. For calling *Emir-Chan* vnto him, whom he had lately left for gouernour of *Tauris*, & General ouer all the Cities & Captains abouenamed he enquired of him the occasion, why he performed not the great promises which he had made vnto him before his departure to *Heri*, & did not his endeuor to hinder the Turkish fabrik at *Reiua*, or at least why he went not out with other souldiers

The Castell of Satan fortinied.

The waies of Reiuan, Tomanis, Lory and Teflis made secure.

King Mahamet licenst all his souldiers of Tauris to depart home.

King Mahamet quarrelleth with Emir-Chan the Gouernour of Tauris.

The VI. Booke.

appointed for that purpose, and namely with the *Turcomannes* (as hee had promised) to reuenge so great an iniurie, and in the best manner hee could to endamage the Turkish forces. For if there had beene none other promise to binde him, yet that had beene the duetie of euery *Persian* Captaine, much more had it beene his parte, who had tyed himselfe thereto by a solemne promise. Sundrie excuses did *Emir-Chan* alledge for his manifest faulte, and principallie the speedie departure of the Turkish Armie for that in so short a time, as the enemies Armie staid vnder *Reiuan*, hee had not leasure enough to call together either the *Turcomannes*, or the other Souldiers for that seruice: but for himselfe, hee was alwaies most readie to employ all his power and his life therein. These and other like excuses *Emir-Chan* alleadged to discharge himselfe from the burthen of the Crime, which the King and the Sultans had layed vpon him. But the king perceiuing too manifestlie, that there was no excuse sufficient to acquite *Emir-Chan* from so grieuous a faulte, and adding also peraduenture to these indignities, some auncient hatred, which hee had taken of old, and retained against *Emir-Chan*, euer since the death of *Ismael*, determined with himselfe to bereaue him of his sight, & so commaunded, that with a hot burning Iron, applied to the eyes of the wicked *Chan*, all the humor that maintained his sight should be dried vp, and afterwardes being thus blinded and despoiled of all his goods hee shoulde be shut vp in prison: which accordinglye without any further delay was put in execution, and was the occasion, that within the space of a few moneths hee died miserably in prison.

Thus was *Persia* deprived of a famous and courageous
The VI. Booke.

Excuses al-
ledged by E-
mir Chan.

King Maha-
met com-
mandeth that
Emir Chan
should haue
his eyes put
out.
Emir Chan be-
ing blinded
dieth miser-
ably in prison.

man, and amonge other her losses shee felte this also to be of that moment, as although it were of it selfe of some importance, yet in respecte of the circumstances it was exceeding great. For the *Turcoman Nation*, who among other Captaines, (from whence *Persia* receiued her protection and dignities) made great accompt of *Emir-Chan*, and by him was greatly honoured, at this death of his became highly offended, and were notably discontented, yea, & their indignatiō encreased so at the last that being become rebellious and an vtter enemy to that Crowne, they did absolutely denie their forces to the publike defence thereof. This their wrath and anger was also much more aggrauated, when they hearde that the King had bestowed the rowme of *Emir-Chan*, vpon *Alyculi* the fugitive, who was escaped out of prison from *Ferat*, as is aboue shewed. Which *Alyculi*, although in respect of the great perilles, wherein he had beene, deserued all preferment, yet for that he was an auncient Enemy to certaine *Turcoman Captaines*, they could not in any wise endure that hee should be exalted to so great an honour. And therefore they waxed more disdainfull & ill affected towardes the king, and thereby the *Persians* forces became the more weakened and deuided. And these were the euent of this season of the yeare. 1584. An end whereof wee made, at the returne of *Ferat Bassa* the Generall to *Erzurum*, whose successes also doe nowe call vpon vs, after we haue thus briefly described the nouelties of *Persia*.

From *Erzurum* hee sente a large aduertisement to *Amurath* of all things that had happened, and besoughte him to commaund what shoulde bee attempted at the nexte Springe. But besides the information of *Ferat*, there wanted not many other that did the like also, although in
The VI. Booke.

The Turcoman
Nation great-
ly offended
for the death
of Emir Chan
their captaine

Newe discon-
tentments of
of the Turco-
mannes.

The Persian
forces weak-
ened.

Ferat infor-
meth the king
of that which
had happened
this yeere.

M m

another

Others in-
forme the
king more
Particularly
of the over-
sightes of Fe-
rat.

Osman Bassa
thought by
Amurath to
be a worthy
Captaine.

another manner. For the King was aduertised, and that in an odious sorte, of all the whole proceedings of *Ferat*, the escape of *Alyculi-Chan*, the shamefull losse of his women, his quarrels with the *Giannizzaries*, the disorders that fell out, through his want of wisdom, amonge all the *Bassas* of the whole Campe, especially his enimity with *Veis Bassa*, who by the king himselfe was thought to be a man of valour and prudence, and to bee shorte all the particulars of the actions, that had not altogether so honorably beene performed in that yeere: which in truth of themselves onely were causes sufficiente to induce the king to remooue the saide *Ferat* from the Office that he exercised. To these occasions there were also added sundry other priuate respectes. For euer sithens the departure of *Ferat* out of *Erzurum* to builde the Fortresses at *Lory* and *Tomanis*, *Amurath* had it still in his heade the next yeer following to attempt the enterprile of *Tauris*, and therein to make triall of the most famous Captaines that hee had: thinking with himselfe, that the estate of *Reiuan* and *Chars* being so safely settled, there was no reason any longer to delaye or slacke the passage to *Tauris* and thereby to stirre vppe through all the worlde a famous reporte of greate exploytes, and a glorie correspondent to so daungerous an attempte. Nowe among the Captaines, whom *Amurath* esteemed to be worrhy men, to whom he might with trust commit this enterprile, he bethought himselfe of *Osman Bassa* who (wee tolde you) was lefte at *Symachia* in *Siruan* by Generall *Mustaffa*, the first yeere of this warre, and whose journey to *Demir-Capi* we described afterwards, together with suche other matters as hee performed againste *Ares-Chan* and *Sahamal*, in assuring the Conquest of that

The V. l. booke.

Citie

Citie. The good opinion, that *Amurath* had thus conceiued of *Osman*, did springe & arise in his head, not onely for the exploits done by him, which wee haue sufficiently aboue declared, but also, yea and much the rather, for that hee maintained so greate an Armie, in a Countrey so farre distant, without any expences at all to the king, hauing nowe a good while leauied the Souldiers Stipendes vppon the landes and territories of that Region, and still exercised a kinde of gouernement and soueraigntie ouer those places. Of all which his good proceedings, *Osman* caused intelligence to be sent to the Court sundrie times in the yeare, discoursing vppon the State of all thinges, and howe without any helpe of the *Tartarians*, who since the death of *Adilcherai* neuer came to assist him, hee had assured and confirmed the Conquest for euer. By these meanes, and by other fauours which *Osman* had about the king, there was fostered in the minde of *Amurath* a wonderfull good opinion of him, but although (as wee haue sayd) euer since the departure of *Ferat* out of *Erzurum* the second yeere, hee was throughly perswaded of the vertue of *Osman*, yet was he not resolued (as then) to call vpon him, for that hee was hindered by the Nouelties that arose in *Georgia*, and stayed by a kinde of hope, that hee had conceiued of some better establishmente in the affaiers of *Siruan*. And nowe hauing settled all those borders, in such sorte as wee haue described, and opened the passage in manner aforesaide, he thought it good to stay no longer, but resolued with himselfe to cut of all further delay, & to cause him to come to him, to *Constantinople*: & for that purpose, before, that *Ferat* was ariued at *Erzurum*, the king had dispatched certen *Capigi* &

Amurath
hath great
hope of the
valour of *Os-*
man Bassa.

The VI. Booke.

M m 2

Chians

Certaine mes-
sengers and
gentlemen
vithers dis-
patched to
call Osman to
Constantino-
ple.

Chiaus to call this famous warriour vnto him: and thereu-
pon, in the next spring, they began to make prouision of
new attempts and new Captaines.

But there wanted not some, that went about to hinder
both his comming & also these dissignements that were of
great importance. At that time by reason of the death
of the three *Visiers* before named, and the banishment of
Sinan aboue also declared, there had succeeded in the place
of the chiefe *Visier*, *Sciaus Bassa*, son in law to *Amurath*, next
vnto whom it was *Osman's* course to sit in the order of those
Bassas, that were aduanced to that honor. But *Sciaus*, who
rather for the comeliness of his person, and alliance with
the king, then for anie other thing was mounted to those
highe rowmes, did greatly feare, least partely for his ex-
perience in matters of warre, and particularly for the good
affection and trust which the king did beare to *Osman*, at
this his coming to Constantinople he might perswade the
king to what hee listed: and so peradventure it might fall
out, that he would take from him the chiefeft office, and
get the vniuersal gouernment of the whole Empyre, wher
by so great wealth was to bee gained and purchased. And
therefore hee had euerie daie new stinges arising in his
mind, and sundrie cogitations how hee might ridde him-
selfe of these feares, and finde meanes to auoide his com-
ming to the Court. And because it was a verie dangerous
matter openly to attempt the same, and might peradven-
ture be an easie meanes to make him forgoe his life, hee
thought it better to make triall of a more commodious &
trustie meane. This *Sciaus*, in consideration of many gifts
and rewards, which the *Cuman Tartarian* had often bestow-
ed vpon him, had continually endeavored to cleere him be-
fore the king of diuers accusations, which *Osman* by his let-

The VI. Booke,

ters

ters was wont to lay to his charge, & for all his ouersights
to alledge such reasons in his behalf, as if they did not per-
swade *Amurath* to bee altogether kinde and courteous to-
wards him, yet at the least not to carrie a malicious & en-
uious conceit against him. And so farre had hee procee-
ded in countenancing and fauouring the *Tartarian*, that
there was established and confirmed an enterchaungea-
ble amitie and mutuall confederacie betweene them: but
besids this their reciprocall friendship, there quickened in
the heart of *Sciaus* a certaine assured imagination, that the
said *Tartarian* king would vse al the waies and meanes pos-
sible, to hinder the comming of *Osman* to Constantinople,
ys hee were but made acquainted with his comming. And
therefore *Sciaus*, alsoone as hee vnderstoode the cer-
taine resolution of *Amurath*, to call *Osman* to the Court,
before he saw the *Chiaus* and the *Capigi* dispatched, which
went with the Kinges commaundement to fetch him, se-
cretly wrote to the *Cuman Tartar*, who lay encamped neere
to the haue of *Cassa* vpon the Moore of *Mocotis*, certi-
fying him that *Osman* was to come to the Courte: and
that therefore hee woulde call to minde how great an e-
nemie hee had beene to him, and how much hee had en-
deuored by letters to *Amurath*, to turne all his hatred and
displeasure against him: and withall, that if hee was able
to doo so much by letters, as if *Sciaus* had not defended
him with verie reasonable excuses, the king had execu-
ted his wrathfall minde vpon him to his greate losse and
detrimente, hee shoulde then imagine with himselfe,
what *Osman* woulde bee able to doe, when hee shoulde
come in person to the presence of *Amurath*, and without
anie mediatour determine betweene themselues of all
matters, whatsoeuer they shoulde thinke to bee conue-

The VI. Booke.

Mm 3

nient

Freindship
betweene *Sci-*
aus the *Visier*,
& the *Cuman*
Tartarian.

Sciaus writ-
teth to the
Tartar of *Os-*
mans com-
ming to the
Court.

nient for the common quiet. These & peraduentur worse were the letters, which *Scianus* wrote to the *Tartar*, which ministred matter enough vnto him, to encourage him to his barbarous and cruell designement: and hauing fully resolved with himselfe, not to suffer so pernicious an enemy of his owne to arriue at *Constantinople*, and also to rid his mind of so great a feare, and especially perceiuing that *Scianus*, in whose breast he reposed all his hope and all his protection, did so greatly feare his comming, he commaunded, that twelue thousand souldiers, chaunging their weapons and apparrell, should goe and lie in await for *Osman*, in the borders betweene *Colchis* and *Iberia*, towards the *Tartarian Nomades*, and so making an assault vpon him, to bereeue him of his life, hoping that such an outrage either could not or would not bee imputed to his procurement, but rather either to the *Tartar Nomades*, or to the *Mengrellians*, or to the *Georgians*, or to the *Moscouites*, or to the *Theenes* by the high way: and to bee short, rather to any bodie else then to him. The commaundementes of the *Tartar* king were put in practise by them accordingly, and without any further stay they ioyned themselves all together, and so rode towards the place appointed.

The, *Volacchi*, and the *Capigi*, which were sent from the king, were now come to *Osman*, who readily had put himselfe on his way towards *Constantinople*, hauing left behind him at *Derbent*, and at *Sumachia* two *Bassas*, which he thought to bee the most sufficient men and the best of all those that were in *Siruania*: hauing also appointed verie good orders in the same, and an assured establishment of all those Countries and places, which *Mustaffa* first had subdued, and hee himselfe afterward had mainteined and kept vnder the obedience of *Amurath*. Hee had also made

good

good prouision for the naughtie and dangerous passages, through which hee was to iourney, by chosing out fower thousand souldiers, which hee had tried in diuers battels, and brought vp (as a man may say) vnder his owne custody and militarie discipline: by meanes of whose valour hee was in good hope he might passe safely through the treacheries of the *Albanians*, and the populous Squadrons as well of the *Tartarians* as of the *Mengrellians*: so that hee perswaded himselfe to bee safe and sure from all daunger and feare. And to bee short, hee was not troubled with any other care (as those which were neere of counsel with him, had told me a thousand times) but onely the exceding desire, wherein hee liued, that he might be able to reuenge the wrong, which the *Cuman Tartar* had doone to *Amurath* and to him, by failing in his promises that he had made vnto them, and omitting to sende any more souldiers into *Media* for these appointed enterprises.

Thus departed he from *Derbent* or *Demircapi*, as we may call it, and coasting along the rockes of *Caucasus*, (*Caucasus* I say, that in all seasons of the yeare is all white and hoarie with continuall snowes,) Leauing on his left hand *Media*, *Iberia*, and *Colchis*, and on his right hand the two famous riuers of *Tanais*, and *Volga*, euen as his entrance into the first shores of the *Euxine* sea, hee was by the abouenameed twelue thousand *Tartarians*, being apparrelled like the *Cassachi* or *Theenes* that kept by the high waies, sodenly assailed and fought withall. But, like a huge rocke lying open to tempestes and waues, standing fast & vnmoueable in it selfe, resisteth the thundrings and rushings of the vaste and fearefull billowes, so stode *Osman* sounde and firme and couragiously sustained this treacherous assaulte, neither was there anie in all his bande,

The VI. Booke.

M m 4

that

Osman set forth forward with 4000. souldiers.

Osman desired to bee reuenged on the *Cuman Tartarian*.

The iourney of *Osman* Bassa.

Osman assaulted & fought withall by the 12000. *Tartarians* apparrelled like *Cassachi*.

The order, which the *Tartarian* taketh to prohibite *Osman* comming to *Constantinople*.

The *Tartarian* souldiers ride to the enterprise against *Osman*.

Osman departed from *Derbent*, and leaueth two *Bassas* in it and at *Sumachia*.

The Tartarians
at first shewe
great valour,
but afterward
withdrew
themselves.

The Tartarians
discontented.

Great losse of
the Tartari-
ans.

The Tartari-
ans destroyed
and put to
flight.

The prisoners
reueale the
treacherie
plotted a-
gainst Osman.

that to auoide this vnexpected onfet, resolved to fly vpon it: but al of them, turning their bold countenances against the rebellious multitude of those Traiterous Squadrons, endured the shock of the Assailants, who (as indeede it is their custome in the beginning to vse great force, but afterwards lightly to languish and withdrawe themselves) finding so stoute a resistance in those fewe, which they thought with their onely lookes and shoutings to haue put to flight, became verie sorrowfull and fowlye discontented. Howbeit forsomuch as they were the Assailants themselves, they could not resolue to flie, and shamefully to abandon their ducties, in pursuing so vnequal a battaile: Whereunto the Souldiers of *Osman* were alreadye in such sort inflamed, and he himselfe also so enkindled, that with a verie small losse of his owne, and in a verie shorte space of time, hee sawe the great discomfiture of them. Whereby taking fresh force as it were at this conflict, and sweetned in the taste of victorie and bloud, they were also encouraged and reuiued, that the battaile was not abandoned by them, vntill partely by taking a number of the *Tartarians* as prisoners, partely hewing others in peeces, and partely driuing a many of them to shamefull flight, they had obtained a most happy victory, and found themselves not onely free from this deepe danger, but also Conquerors and Reuengers of an iniurie so fraudulently contriued against them. By the Prisoners that were taken in sundry sortes, and by meanes of diuers tormentes which he put them too, he was informed that for the feare which their king had conceiued, least when he came to constantinople he would procure his destruction from *Amurath*, he was come downe with this Army to seeke his death. Assoone as *Osman* had receiued certaine

The VI. booke.

in-

intelligence of this treason of the *Tartar*, hauing caused a perfect processe to bee made of it, together with the dispositions of the saide *Tartarian* prisoners, he sent the same by the shortest, safest, and easiest wayes, that hee coulde deuise to *Amurath* at *Constantinople*. Which processe accompanied also with his Letters, wherein he gaue aduertisement of the treacheries most vniustly contriued against him, and of the battaile that ensued thereupon, prouoking and inflaming him to reuenge so grievous an iniurie, and so wicked a rebellion. *Amurath* hauing receiued these reportes, according as the necessity of the matter required, secretly and resolutely tooke order, that certaine Galleyes should bee sente to the ha- uen of *Cassa*, to fetch *Osman Bassa*, and withall that there shoulde bee conueighed thither a brother of the saide *Tartar*, commanding *Osman* by Letters that he should put to death the *Cuman* Traitor, and substitute this his Brother in his place, to the ende hee might serue for an example to all men, that such wicked and mischievous offences doe neuer passe without due punishment.

Osman aduertiseth *Amurath* of euerie particular.

Amurath taketh order that gallies should be sent to *Cassa*.

Amurath writeth to *Osman* to slay the *Tartarian* King and to substitute his Brother in his rowme.

But that wee may the better vnderstand, why this *Cuman* Brother was at this time so readye for this businesse, it shal be wel in brieft to set down some of the particulars that may open the light of this truth. Among other potēt Princes, that cowardly & basely yeelding to the *Ottoman* power doe lead a very vile & troublesome life vnder them, the Kings of the *Cuman Tartarians* called *Precopeni* did also submit themselves, and gouerned those peoples that were subiecte vnto them, according to the wicked and damnable pleasures of the *Ottomans* whom they serued. Amonge the rest of these *Cuman* Kings this

The VI. Booke.

N n

present

present King, who beeing wholly deuoted vnto them, was placed in this kingdome, besides the slaughter of his parents had himselfe also indured diuers & sundry afflictions, so that he greatly feared to be remoued from that gouernement and committed to prison. And therefore this his brother, who as we told you was now so ready for this action, as one that for the constitution of his bodie, and for the giustes of his minde, beeing adorned with the knowledge of Astrologye and Philosophie, was better esteemed by the Subiects, then his brother nowe raining was, (for that by reason of his excessiue tributes, and besides his tributs, of his Ordinarie bribes that he often bestowed at the Court, he was become most odious to his Subiects, from whome he sucked those Reuenues and presents) this his brother (I say) beeing rauished with the conceite of himselfe, and perswaded by the comfortable woordes of his best friendes, resolved to passe to *Constantinople*: and although hee were younger in yeares, and naked and bare of money and wealth, whereby he might haue obtained that, which hee hoped for, ouer his Brother: yet trusting vpon the common voice and reporte of the people, from whome hee had carried with him verie earnest supplications and intercessions to the *Ottoman* king, and also relying greatly vpon his owne eloquence, and other vertues whereby he thought he was able to purchase the fauour of the king, hee imagined it to be a reasonable suit and easie to bee graunted, to require that thing of *Amurath* which age and riches had denyed him: that is to say, that hee would driue his Brother out of the kingdome, and to substitute him in his place. And thus wente the good young man to the courte, where hauing bestowed a few small presentes, he did not sticke to shew himselfe

The VI. Booke.

to

to bee a suiter for the reuome of his Brother: who hauing had intelligence before, of his going to *Constantinople*, had presently written to his Embassadours there, that they should not regarde any expences, they should not omit any duety or intreatie, they should not forget any Art or diligence, to retain him stil established in his possessed dignity, & to procure his foolish & audacious Brother to be clapt vp in some place, where he might not disturb him in his kingdom. And so whiles the one labored with the power of his tounge, and by meanes thereof conioyned with the other ornamentes of his mind hoped to haue become his Brothers superiour, the Agentes of the other did not cease to imploy also the force of their giustes and Stratagems: and in the end it fell out, that neither learning nor beauty of person, nor good reporte, could preuaile so much for the one as rich presentes and crafty deceites legitimated by gold, could doe for the other, notwithstanding a number of filthy vices that were in him. (And what is it, that money cannot doe amonge couetous people at this day, if it bee bestowed in measure and in time, and distributed in fitte occasions? The young man was committed prisoner, & sent by safe watch to *Gogna*, sometimes called *Iconium* a City of *Licaonia*, and his Brother stil confirmed in his possessed kingdome. With great patience did the vnhappy young man remaine at *Gogna*, apparelled like an *Eremit*, and in that his captiuitie liued a life altogether conformable to his miserye, and (as al men iustified it vnto me, at my passage through that Cytye, when I went to *Constantinople*) by his continuall and treacherous execrations, and a kinde of externall innocencye, hee made shewe that hee was voide of all hope or ambitious desire to be brought to a kingdome,

The VI. booke.

N n 2

but

The remedie that the Tartar king vsed against his brother.

Many among corrupt people can doe all things.

The authour in *Gogna* had intelligence of the Tartarian young man

The purpose of the Tartars brother, to be-
reave him of
his state.

Osman aduise
feth the enter-
prize of Tauris,
and sheweth
the manner how.

thought, the matter was now no longer to be fore-
sloved but that it was verie expedient to attempt the
famous enterprize of *Tauris*, and by erecting a Forte
in that Citie to raise a terrour ouer al *Persia*, and a glori-
ous renoume of their mightie conquestes, amonge
the Nations of *Europe*. For it was alreadie well known
what the *Georgians* were able to doo, the people wherof
had already partly of their owne voluntary motion, and
partly enforced by necessity & feare, yeelded their dutiful
obediēce: & although *Mustaffa* had rebelled & returned
to his former libertie & natieue Religion, yet he might per-
adventure by this time repent himselfe thereof: neither
was there any cause at all to feare the treacheries of
one, that beeing without any traine to followe him,
and of himselfe verie poore: woulde rather seeke to
saue himselfe in his obscure and base villages, and to keep
his pittifull holdes within the mountaines: neither could
bee able to endure the sounde of their victors, much
lesse bee so hardie as to assault the victoreis. So that
all thinges now were open, neither was there any feare of
any noueltie arising, but that the iourney to *Tauris* might
resolutely bee performed: for the accomplishment wher-
of hee thought that either the same Armie, or at the
most a verie little greater would suffice, so that it were of
the choicest souldiers.

A letter of
Sciatus that
was found is
the cause why
hee was dis-
missed from
his chiefe Vi-
siership.

By reason of one of the letters, which *Sciatus Bassa* had
written to the *Cuman Tartar*, and was founde I know
not howe, *Amurath* had depriued the saide *Sciatus* from
the office of the chiefe *Visier*, and banished him from
the Courte, so that hee liued afterwarde about *Cal-
cedone*, vpon the borders of *Asia* towards *Constantinople*,
in a certaine *Serraglio* or close Palace, that yee had
The VI. booke. there

the Turkes & Persians.

275

there builde for his owne pleasure and recreation. And
in the rowme of this his son in law, he had appointed *Os-
man* to bee chiefe *Visier* in the ranke of the *Bassas* of the
Court: and not contented to haue committed so great
a trust vnto him, hee nominated him also the Generall
and Soueraigne Captaine in the enterprize of *Tauris*.

Osman Bassa
chiefe Visier.

Such power and force hath vertue, that euen from
the verie skomme of the rascall sorte, and out of the
rustical route of *Mountaine Peasauntes* (which notwith-
standing cannot bee truely iustified of this *Osman*) it doth
oftentimes in this variable worlde drawe diuerse men in-
to Princes Courtes, and aduaunce them to the highest
dignities. This *Osman*s father was a *Circassian* borne,
who in the common losse and conquest of his countrey,
was one of those, that to escape the slaughtering sworde
of *Selim*, submitted themselues to the *Turkish* yoke, and
afterwarde fighting in defense thereof, hee ouercame
the *Ethiopians*, and thereby obtained immortall re-
noume. Of these his vertues hee lefte the saide *Osman*
his heire, who beeing broughte vppe in abundance
of all thinges, and trayned vp in the Arte of warrefare,
became verie couragious and skilfull therein: and at
last, from a priuate Souldier was called to the high-
est dignities of so greate an Empyre, and from thence
to the chiefe place of authoritie in the Armie of the
Easte, and to bee shorte, was at one instante crea-
ted a Counseller and Generall of *Ottoman*. Greate
was the ioye that *Osman* conceiued hereat, and greate
was the desire that hee had to make himselfe woorthie
of so honourable fauours: and the greater confidence
that hee perceiued *Amurath* had reposed in him, the
more eagerly was he spurred on to doe any thing possible
The VI. Booke.

The offspring
of Osman
Bassa.

Osman cho-
sen General
of the Armie,
to goe to
Tauris.

N n 4

whereby

whereby hee might shewe himselfe to haue deserued the same. And therefore aduising with himselfe, that forasmuch as there must bee a greater Armie nowe Leuied, then there was in the former years, & so sent into very far Countreyes, it was also necessarie for him the sooner to send out his aduertisements into all his subiect *Prouinces*, and he himselfe by his owne example to prouoke the other Captaines and Souldiers therunto, he determined euen in winter (thought it were as yet somewhat troublesome,) to passe to *Chalcedon*, and from thence to *Angori*, to *Amasia*, to *Siuas*, and in those territories to driue out the time, vntill hee might vnderstand, that all his souldiers, which were summoned were gathered together. But because vpon this his great speed, it might fall out peraduenture, that his enemies also would beginne to prepare a greater number of Souldiers, if they should vnderstande for certaine, that *Osman* had appointed all these preparations for *Tauris*: he thought it a better pollicie (for so it pleased *Amurath* also: to spreade a rumour abroad, that they must goe for *Nassiuan*, whither *Ferat Bassa* had giuen out speech that he should haue gone the last yeere before: to the end that the *Persians*, beeing so beguiled, shoulde not regard the gathering of so mighty an Armye, as they would haue done, if they should haue heard of their passage to *Tauris*.

And so this Generall cosening Rumour touching *Nassiuan*, was published abroad, not onely through all the Cities subiect to the Turk, but the same therof flew also euen into the Countries of the *Persians*, who notwithstanding beeing very iealous of the Citie of *Tauris*, and fearing that the matter would fall out, as indeed afterwarde it did, ceased not to make curious & diligent enquiry about

The diligence
of Osman
Bassa.

A fained rumour
of going to Nassiuan.

The Persian
iealous of
Tauris.

it. And although the indignitie and disgrace, that was offered to his Embassadour, dissuaded him from sending any other for treaty of peace, yet to spie out the secretes of the Turkes, and to vnderstande certainly whether their intent were to passe to *Nassiuan* or to *Tauris*, hee coulde doe no lesse but dispatch diuers *Chians* or Messengers to *Osman*, and by making a shewe that he ment in very deed to feele his minde touching conditions of peace, to try whether he could learne and discouer the trueth or no. But by all the meanes, and by all the cunning that he could possibly vse, he could neuer find out any certaine knowledge thereof: so that there still remained in him many doubtfull and confused cogitations, which were engendered and fostered by some carelesse and simple reporters, that *Osman* had giuen out speeche for the enterprize of *Nassiuan*.

And nowe according to the commandement gone out through all the Cities of the Empire, the Souldiers of all sortes beganne to flocke together: and all those that either were desirous to be established in their former charges and gouernementes of Cities, or sought ambitiously to bee honoured with some Office and dignitie, made re-
paire vnto him as vnto a king and Soueraigne moderator of the *Ottoman* Empire, presenting him with very large & liberal giuftes. Wherby his estate was so greatly enriched, that through these meanes he had gathered together a huge heape of infinite treasure. And so entertaining them with all affable curtesie, and also with promising both rewardes and honours to all that would followe him in his purposed voiage, he leauied a wonderful great number of Men and Moneyes. But nowe was the time come, that called him away to goe towardes *Erzurum*,

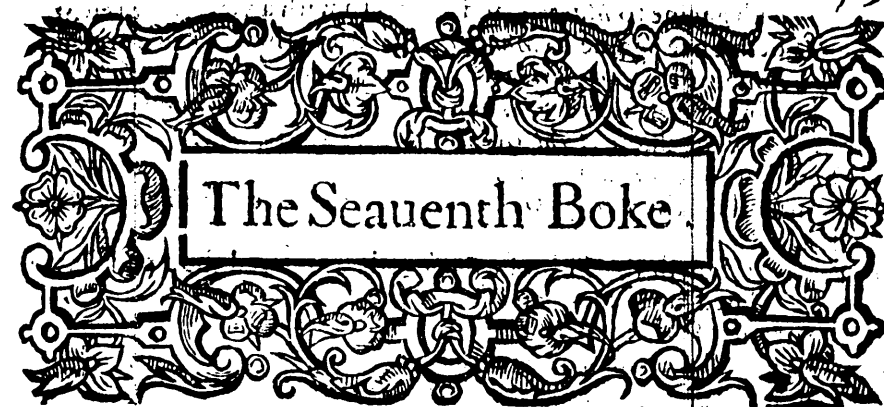
The Persian
cannot come
to any certain
knowledge of
the designe-
ment of Os-
man Bassa.

Osman gathered
together a huge
treasure by
presents.

Great dearth
in Erzurum.
The greatest
Army that e-
uer was ga-
thered was
this.
The souldiers
of Egypt &
Damasco
went not
with Osman.

where hee was greatly expected by his huge armie there assembled together, & notwithstanding the great dearth of all things belonging to vittell, that commonly raigneth in those quarters, yet he was enforced to make his iourney to that citie, where he arriued about the latter end of the Moneth of Iuly, and there, with all possible speed taking a viewe of his whole Army, and of all the prouision necessary for so important and famous an enterprize, he dailye laboured to hasten his departure. In the saide citie of *Erzurum* were mette together all the souldiers of the Provinces that were wont to send helpe, but yet in a greater number, then euer was gathered by any Generall before, for that euerie man forsooke and abandoned his own priuate busines, & vpon assured hopes of new rewards & vnwonted honors, they were all induced to follow the fame of their newe *Viser*. Onelic the people of *Egypt* and *Damasco* were busied with other more priuate Quarrels, wherof because they are both of great importance, and also sel out at this verie instant, it wil not be amisse to make some briefe rehearsal, for a manifest and euident example heer-after, how great harme and mischief the diuersitie of opinions, and dissension of neighbours doth breed among all sortes of men.

The ende of the Sixe Booke.



The Argument.

H Assan the Bassa of *Cairo* in *Egypt* is called to the Court.
Ebrain the Bassa, chosen to be the Kings son in Lawe, is sent to *Cairo* in the rowme of Hassan.
Hassan in the companie of the Master of the Kings horse goeth to *Constantinople*.
Hee is committed to prison, and spoiled of all his wealth.
At the instant suite of the Queene, Hassan is set at libertie.
Ebrain is called to *Constantinople* to finish the mariage.
Ebrain commeth with an Armie of twelue thousand horse.
The Offspringe, religion, customes, Territories, and weapons of the *Drusians*.
Three of the chiefe Lordes of the *Drusians* come to meete Ebrain.
Serafadin also commeth to Ebrain.
Serafadin being accused by his three enemies, speaketh in his owne defence.
Serafadin is committed to prison.
Manogli standeth obstinate and refuseth to come to Ebrain, but writeth his letters vnto him.
Ebrain resolneth to burne the countrie of Manogli.
Veis the Bassa with his sonne the Sanguiacco of *Ierusalem* discomfited by the *Drusians*.
Gomeda is sent to Manogli, but returneth without speeding in his Message.
Aly the Bassa goeth to Manogli and speedeth.
Manogli sendeth his Mother to Ebrain.

O o 2

Gomeda

Gomeda goeth againe to *Manogli*, and returneth with a verie rich present.
 Gomeda goeth once againe to *Manogli*, and returneth with newe presents.
Andra belonging to *Manogli* is sacked, and nineteene other townes burne.
 Three hundred and fiftie persons belonging to *Manogli*, hewen in peeces.
 The *Macademo* or chiefe Agent of *Manogli*, is slayed quicke.
 The Souldiers of *Serafadin* slaine.
 The Souldiers of the *Turkish Gallies* sacke all the Sea coast of *Serafadin* and *Manogli*.
Aly Carsusogli buyeth the Title of a *Bassa* with a hundred thousand Duckats.
Mansurogli laied in chaines, and sent to the Gallies.
 The territorie of *Mansurogli* is sacked.
Ebrain is joyfully receiued into *Constantinople*.
Ebrain giueth great presents to the Sultan.
 Quarrels betweene the *Arabians*, and the *Sangiaccio* of *Ierusalem*.
 The *Subassi* of *Bethlehem* is slayed quicke, by appointment of the *Sangiaccio*.
Osman the *Bassa* is in a readinesse to departe from *Erzurum*, with speche giuen out, that hee woulde not goe to *Tanris*, but to *Nessuan*.

The seauenth Booke.



Murath had heertofore taken *Hassan* the Eunuch out of the *Serraglio*, from the charge that hee had there, to serue in the *Quenes Court*, and had sent him as *Bassa* to *Cair* in *Egypt*: in whose fauoure, for recompence of his continual seruice employed in her behalfe, the *Queene* had obtained this great Office, which besides the honour belonging vnto it, was also verie beneficiall and profitable vnto him, as in deede it is to any other person, whose good happe it is to bee aduanced thereunto: the riches and multitude of people inhabiting therein being so great, that it seemeth not to be one Citie, but rather that it containeth within the large Circuite of it, a number of Cities. This man beeing coueteous of money, and desirous to handle the matter in such sorte, as this place of gouernment might yeelde him so great benefit, that hee shoulde little neede to seeke for any more suche grauntes at the kinges handes, by all manner of meanes, aswel indirectly as directly, sought to oppresse al the whol Nation, and spared neither any state, nor age, nor sexe, but by all importunities and vndue courses, hee would wring and extorte rewardes and bribes from euerie man. By which his sinister and corrupt dealing, hee had now made himselfe so odious and intollerable vnto them, that there was not a man, but would choose to doo anie thing possible,

The VII. Booke. O o 3

Hassan-Bassa the *Quenes Eunuch*, sent to *Cair*, to be *Bassa* there

Cair seemeth to bee many Cities rather then one.

The Tyrannie
of the Eunuch

The Eunuch
Bassa of Cair,
called home
to the Court
by Amurath.

Amurath de-
sireth to paci-
fie the com-
plaints of the
Egyptians.

sible, rather then to remaine vnder these his continual tyrannies. And in the end, when it was plainly perceiued; that neither Religion, nor Loue, nor Iustice, nor Reason, could remooue his coueteous minde from his vsuall cruelties and rapine, a great number of such (as were most vexed and molested by this newe Tyrant,) beganne daily, in close and quiet manner to goe to *Constantinople*, & make humble petitions to the king, that hee would bee pleased to displace so cruell and vniust a wretch, as thought it lawfull for him to drinke vp the bloude of their poore families, without any cause or offence at all. Neither were these complaintes made once or twice by one or two alone, but oftentimes and by manie seuerall persons: soe that generally in the Courte, there was no talke of anie thing else, but onely of the villanies and mischieses, that were reported of the *Eunuch*. At the last, *Amurath* seeing that the publike exclamations wente daillie so farre, that it was nowe a shame for him to let them goe any further withoute due punishment, hee resolved with himselfe to call him to the Courte, and hauing sent vnto him certaine *Capigi* and *Chians*, hee admonished him son-drie times to returne home. But the *Eunuch*, whome it highlie grieved to forsake so fitte an occasion of enriching himselfe, did still delaye his returne, and beganne to alledge newe-coyned excuses for his longer stay. Which when *Amurath* vnderstoode, thinking rather that he was mocked thereby, & peraduenture also entering into some suspicion of some publike alteration in those quarters, with a newe deuise hee determined to provide for so greate a disorder, and by punishing the mischieuous nature of the coueteous *Eunuch*, in some parte at the leaste to satisfie the people that were in a mutinie,

The VII. Booke.

and

and to pacifie their pittifull exclamations and complaints.

There satte at that time amonge the chiefe *Bassas* of the Courte, one *Ebrain*, by Nation a *Sclauonian*, and of a place called *Chianichie*, a shorte daies iourney distante from *Ragusa*, a younge man of the age of two and thirtie yeares or thereabouts, of verie faire conditions, and of reasonable iudgement, vpon whome *Amurath* himself had heretofore determined to bestow his own daughter for his wife and to make him his sonne in law. Whereof before this time there had bene diuers treaties and speeches. And therefore nowe beeing minded to remooue the *Eunuch* from his Office, and to satisfie the Citie, and hauing no other person, to whom he thought hee might better committe that truste, and beeing also willing withall, to minister occasion to his saide sonne in lawe to make monie and enriche himselfe, hee was resolved to send him as General *Syndic* and soueraigne Iudge into *Egypt*, giuing him in particular charge, that hee should remember howe wickedlie his predecessor had dealt before him, so that all the whole Territories of that huge and large Citie, were come vp euen vnto the Court, to exclaime againste his Tyrannie and coueteousnesse. And so this newe *Bassa* tooke his iourney towards *Egypt*, although there ranne before him a greate rumor of his comming, and of the greate authoritie, wherewith hee was sente. At which reporte as the *Egyptians* rested contente and ioyfull: so the *Eunuch* waxed verie sad and sorrowfull: and did verilie perswade himselfe, that this alteration coulde not but engender some strange issue & effect against him. Which opiniõ did so much the more deeply settle it self in his mind,

The VII. Booke.

Ebrain, a Bas-
sa of the
Court.

Amurath pur-
poseth to be-
stow his
daughter vpon
Ebrain, for his
wife.

Amurath su-
deth meanes
for Ebrain to
enrich him-
selfe, by sen-
ding him as
Bassa and
Syndic to Cair

The Egyptian-
ans ioyful, &
the Eunuch
sorrowful for
the comming
of Ebrain.

O O 4

for

for that he did not knowe one trustie person in all *Egypt*, of whom hee might hope for any helpe and protection, in case that *Ebrain Bassa* shoulde driue him to any streight. Whereupon aduising with himselfe to prouide better for his owne affaiers, and safety of his life, hee was resolved not to stay for the arriuall of the *Visser*, but departing out of *Egypt*, with great care and circumspection, he traueled towards *Constantinople*, in hope to appease the kings wrath, or at leaste by the mediation of bribes and by the intercession of the *Queene*, to finde him of a more mild and placable disposition, then hee should finde *Ebrain*, who without doubt would not haue spared any extremitie or cruelty, to bereaue him both of his goods, & also of his life. Thus the craftie *Eunuch* departed from *Egypt*, and put himselfe on his iourney towards *Constantinople*, vsing greate diligence and care, that hee might not meete with *Ebrain*, who beeing already certified by many *Egyptians* of the escape of *Hassan*, gaue speedye aduertisement thereof to *Amurath* at *Constantinople*, to the ende hee might take suche order as was conuenient. *Amurath* hearing this, and hearing withall, that hee kept not the highway, that leadeth ordinarilye from *Memphis* into *Thracia*, feared leaste hee might flie to straunge Princes, and particularly suspected, that beeing arriued in *Soria*, he would passe into *Persia* to the *Soffian* king, and so worke him double and treble damage, as one that had already gathered a huge treasure, and hauing liued in the Court, knew the most secret affaires therof & learned althe priuy deuises and fashions of the *Serraglio*. Whereupon with all diligence hee dispatched his *Imbrahur Bassi* (whome wee may call the Maister of his horse) with forrye of his *Capi*, all Gentlemen vsers, and Officers of the most se-

The VII. Booke.

crete

The Eunuch hopeth to pacifie the king by his going to the court. The Eunuch departeth from Cair.

Amurath feareth that the Eunuch would flye to strange Princes.

cret and neereſt rowmes about him, with charge and commandement, that if hee met with him, he should bring him alieue to the Court, vsing all the assistance and aide of his people, that might bee requisit, and for that purpose deliuered vnto him very effectual & large letters, written after the best manner that is vsed in the Court. The kings Mellerger with his appointed traine departed, and without any extraordinarie enquiry after the *Eunuch*, hee founde him in *Soria*, encamped in the plains of the *Apameans*, neere to the citie now called *Aman*, but in times past *Apamea*, the Principall Citie of that Countreye, where the Riuer *Orontes* with his pleasaunt course watereth the greene and beautifull hilles, and from thence running along to the Walles of *Antiochia*, dischargeth it selfe afterwarde into the *Siriac Sea*, neere vnto *Seleucia Pieria*, which nowe they call *Soldin*. Assoone as the *Eunuch* vnderstood of the comming of the *Imbrahur*, he gaue order vnto his gard of slaues, which in great number with speares and Arcubases did ordinarilye keepe his pauilion, that they should not grant entertainment into his Tent, to any other but onely to the *Imbrahur* himselfe, & in all rigorous manner to keepe the rest of the *Capi* from coming in. This order was giuen in verie good time. For assoone as the Kings Officer had discovered the Tent of the fugitiue *Bassa*, in all haste hee ranne towards the same, and seeking out the greatest among them, wente presently thither to enter into it with all his followers. But the slaues beeing in Armour opposed themselues against them, and permitting the *Imbrahur* to passe into the pauilion, entertained the rest

The VII. booke

P p

of

Imbrahur Bassi dispatched by Amurath to meet with the Eunuch.

Imbrahur Bassi findeth the Eunuch in the champaignes of Apamea.

of his traine without. The *Imbrahur* read vnto him the commaundement which hee had from the king to bring him to the Court, and instantly moued him that without any resistance hee would quietly goe with him. But the cunning *Eunuch*, Behold (quoth he) howe without any calling of the king, or conducting by you I come of my selfe, and am assured that I shall finde not onely pardon and pitie, but also speciall fauour and grace in the sight of my Lord. For the wicked treacheries of my false accusers cannot abuse the vprighte and milde nature of the king, to the preiudice of mee, beeing an Innocent. And so they wente all together towards *Constantinople*, keeping the high way of *Antiochia*, of *Heraclea*, of *Gogna*, and of *Nicea*.

The Eunuch
and the Im-
brahur go to-
gether to
Constantino-
ple.

The Eunuch
at Chalcedon

The politike and crafty *Eunuch* had in this mean time dispatched diuers postes with letters to the Sultan Ladies, certifieng them of his comming, and principally beseeching the Queene, to protect him, and to purg the kings minde from all affection of anger and indignation that he might haue conceiued against him: and so he arriued at *Chalcedon*. Assoone as the king vnderstood of his arriual, hee caused all the treasure which he had gathered, to bee taken from him, withall the rest of his priuate substance, and the same to be carried into the great store house, and himselfe to bee shutte vppe in prison within the seauen Towers: Where after hee hadde woorne out many daies, wherein hee still feared some deadlie blowe, hee receiued from the Queene an vnexpected aduertisement, that hee shoulde bee of good cheere, and quiet himselfe for that his wealth had already excused his life, and

The VII. Booke.

that

that shee hoped in verie shorte time to gette him restored also to his libertie: which indeed she brought to passe. For she her selfe made earnest petition to her husband, that forasmuch as hee hadde bereaued her *Eunuch* of all his goods, hee would at the least deliuer him out of prison, and restore him vnto her. This requeste of the Queene was graunted accordinglye: but all the treasure that hee hadde vniustly scraped together out of the Families of *Egypt*, remained still amonge the Golde and otheriewels of the king.

The Eunuch
set at liberty.

But *Ebrain Bassa*, according to his newe commission was nowe arriued in *Egypt*, and in shorte space, by farre more sinistre deuises, then the *Eunuch* before him had vsed, besides the annuall and Ordinarye Reuenue, of that Prouince, amounting yeerely to the summe of six hundred thousand *Cecchini*, he had got together an infinite heape of riches, that was able onely of it selfe to make him woorthie of his promised wife. And therefore he was called home to the Courte, to accomplish the intended Mariage. With this commandement to returne to *Constantinople*, he receiued also in charg, that he shuld make his iourney through the people of *Drusfa*, and such as hee shoulde find truly obedient vnto him, he shoulde confirme them in their due obedience and make them pay their ancient duties: but such as were disobedient, he shoulde quite root them out and destroy them: & from euery one of them, as wel friends as enemies in any case, to take away their Arcubuses, & al other kind of wepons whatsoever. *Ebrain* presently put this commandement in execution, & hauing leauied

Ebrain called
to Constanti-
nople to ac-
complish the
intended ms-
riage.

Order giuen
to Ebrain to
surueie, and
subdue the
Drusians.

The VII. booke.

Pp 2

the

Ebrain depar-
teth from
Cair with 13.
Sangiacchi.

Ebrain in the
way of Da-
masco.

Ebrain with
an armie of
about 12000.
horse,

the foresaid treasure, put together all his owne priuate riches that hee had gathered in the time of his gouernment, and raised good store of Souldiers in that prouince, hee tooke with him especially thirteene *Sangiacchi*, that were ordinarilie accustomed to sit as assistants in the ruling of those populous Territories of *Cair*, vnder the gouernement of the *Visser*, the king or the *Bassa* of that Countrie, Ifye list so to terme him: and so sette him selfe on his iourneye towards *Gasa*, passing ouer those waste and huge wildernesses of *Sande*, that lie betweene *Memphis* and *Gaza*, and are a great parte of *Arabia Deserta*. From *Gaza* ioyning the *Sangiaccho* thereof with him, hee wente to *Ierusalem*, and from thence causing the *Sangiaccho* there also to followe his trayne, hee iournied by *Safette*, by *Lezium*, by *Naplos*, (called in times paste *Samaria*) still taking with him the *Sangiacchi* of all those places, and at the laste turned himselfe towards *Damasco*, so that before hee ioyned with the bande of *Damasco*, hee had gotten together eighteene *Sangiacchi*, with all their Squadrons of Souldiers and Slaues. Besides these, hee had also his owne priuate Courte, which was wonderfull populouse, and two hundred *Ianizzaries* of *Constantinople*, whome the king would needes haue him to take with him at his departure from the Courte: so that in somme, hee had an Armie, almost of twelue thousand horsemen, From *Damasco* there were come to meete him, euen as farre as *Ierusalem*, all the *Ianizzaries* of that Citie, vnder the Conduct of their *Aga*, or Captaine, and all the *Zaini* and the *Spahini*, and the other souldiers that

The VII. Booke.

that were vnder the gouernment of that *Bassa*, who at that time was one *Veis*, mentioned before in the troubles of Generall *Ferat*, in the laste booke: al which were no more in number there, but onely two thousande persons. There came from *Aleppo* *Aly Bassa*, being then out of Office (whome the Turkes call *Mosul*: that is to saie discharged or dismissed) and a Companie of two hundred Slaues with him. *Ebrain* also sente for *Giaffer Bassa*, beeing at that time the *Eunuch* or Captaine of *Tripoli*, a craftie man, and cruell of Nature: but hee beeing enflamed with the fame of *Ozman Bassa*, who loued him verie well, would not in anie case obey the commaundement of *Ebrain*. There came to him besides by the waie of *Sidonia*, which they nowe call *Seida*, the *Aza* of the *Ianizzaries* of *Cyprus*, with all the bande of that desolate and destroyed *Isle*: which Captaine was transported ouer in the Gallies, that by the kinges appointment were sente to fetch *Ebrain*: who beeing nowe made stronge with all these Souldiers, had purposed the vtter ruine of the disobediente *Drusians*, and the purchase of his owne glorie by triumphing ouer them. But because this my Historie shall not proceed vnder vnknownen names, wee are to declare, who these *Drusians* are, for whom there are nowe so greate preparations made by the newe Captaine, and of whome the king is so suspicious and doubtfull.

The *Drusians* are by Nation and Offspring, Frenchmen, the Reliques of those, that with deuoute mindes did in times past fight those memorabile and Christian battels in *Iurie*, and recovered the holic Sepulchre of

The *Drusian*
people, what
they are.

The VII. Booke.

Pp 3

Christ.

Christ: and beeing afterwarde subdued partly by the plague, and partlie by the furie of the *Barbarians*, mingled their seede with the Circumcised Nation, and so together with their authoritie and commaunding, lost also their first faith and religion: so that hauing extinguished their former sacred knowledge, they grew into a hatred of the *Turkish* superstition, and abhorred the Circumcision of the other, and betooke themselves to a newe Prophet, well knowine and beloved among them, called *Isman*. The true and right *Drusians* doo liue vncircumcised, neither doo they forbear wine, which the *Turkes* are forbidden. They make it lawfull for themselves, without any conscience or respect, to take their own daughters to their wiues: So that (if it be true which *Aristotle* writeth, That amonge certaine brute beastes there is a kinde of respecte obserued in bloude) coupling themselves together by these prophane and filthie Mariages, they liue more beastlie, then the verie brute creatures. And as by their prophet and their factions they woulde needes bee separated from the *Turkish* sect, so in Dominion and gouernement they haue soughte by all meanes to bee different from them: for notwithstanding al the chaunges and troubles of the *Turkish* Tyrantes, yet haue they alwaies beene subiect to their owne Naturall Princes, which by aunciente descent had the rule ouer them, and woulde neuer admitte any Captaine or Gouernour of the *Ottomans* to bee within the Countreyes, which they possessed. They are a people verie warrellike, stout, obstinate, bolde, vndaunted, and religious obseruers of their lawe, although indeed

The P.II. Booke.

Isman the prophet of the Drusians.

The Drusians are not circumcised, they drinke wine liberally, and take their owne daughters to their wiues.

The Drusians would neuer admit any Turkish Gouernour.

the Turkes & Persians. 291

some of their chiefe Rulers, to saue their liues, haue beene enforced to followe the pleasure of those that were mightier then themselves, by reason of their dissention with their neighbours. In battaile they vse especially the *Arkebuse* and the *Scimitare*: and yet some of them at this daie doo serue with Launces and Dartes. They are apparrelled like the Eastern people, with a Turbante on their heade: and breeches they neuer weare, but in steede thereof they couer those partes with their Coate, which reacheth downe to their knees in length; by buttoning it vppe before. They are also accustomed to grosse and Mountaine Meates. They inhabite all the Countrey that is inuironed within the confines of *Ioppa* aboute *Casarea* in *Palestina*, and within the Riuer of *Orontes* and *Iordane*, stretching it selfe euen to the playne of *Damasco*, neere to the hilles that compasse it aboute, vpon the coast of Mounte *Libanus*.

The weapons of the Drusians.

The Countrey which the Drusians inhabit.

They were all in times past good friendes, and confederate together in loue and concorde, so that they were in those daies greatly esteemed: but now, beeing sette in a confusion throughe greedinesse, and couetousnesse, they are deuided amonge them selues, and one of them contrarie and enemy to the other, but especially and principally at this daie, there are five chiefe Captaines or Heades of them, which they call *Emir*. One of them is named *Ebneman*, whome the Turkes call *Manogli*: Another *Serafadin*: the thirde *Mahamet Ebnemansur*, (the Turkes call him *Mansurogli*):

The VII. booke.

There are at this day five Captaines or chiefe rulers among the Drusians.

the forth *Ebnofrec*, by the Turkes tearmed *Feracogli*, & by the Moors surnamed *Acra*, which we may interpret *Scurvy* or *Scald*,) and the fift, *Ali Ebne-Carfus* by the Turkes called *Ali-Carfusogli*. Vnder these, who indeede carry the title and auctority of an *Emir*, that is to say King or Chiefe, there are diuers others, whome the *Drusians* themselues call *Macademi*, that are either Deputies to the *Emirs*, or els their Factors or Agentes, or both: amonge whome, in this alteration of matters, which wee intende to write of, *Gomeda* and *Mendel* were two verie famous persons, who kept their residence, the one in *Baruti*, and the other in *Tripoli* for *Mansurogli*, and called themselues *Emirs*, rather for flatterie then of any duetie, for that they were indeede no other but the *Macademi* of the saide *Emir-Mahamet Ebnemanfur*.

Ebneman or
Manogli.

Ebneman, he inhabited the Mountains & fields, that are contained vnder the Iurisdctions of *Casarea*, of *Prolemaida*, of *Tyrus*, and of *Sidonia*: the inhabitants at this day call those places, *Cheiserie*, *Acca*, *Sur*, *Seida*, all of them, (as farre as I coule see, when I trauelled in Pilgrimage to the holye sepulchre of Christ) beeing desolate Countreyes and vterlie destroyed, and hath his residence for the most parte vppon the hill, in *Andera*. Hee is verie mightye in men and Armour, and since the time that by treacherie and treason his Father was murdered by *Mustaffa* then *Bassa* of *Damasco*, he hath beene a deadly Enemy to the Turkish name.

Ebnemanfur
or Masurogli

Ebnemanfur enioyeth al the Territorie contained with in *Baruto* and *Anafe*, and keepeth his residence vpon the hill in *Gazir*. Hee, beeing driuen thereunto through
The VII. Booke.

the controuerfies that hee had with *Ebnofuip*, sometimes the *Emir* or *Customer* of the Kay at *Tripoli*, and with *Ebneman* aforenamed, yeelded himselfe as a pray to the Turkes, and was made the *Sangiaco* of *Laodicea*, called *Lizza*, hauing also the charge of the Custome house of *Tripoli* committed vnto him, where afterwarde *Gomeda* remained for him: But at the reasonable and honourable requestes of *Giovanni Michael*, sent as *Consul* by the Senate of *Venice* into *Soria*, and by me in this Historie, oftentimes but not worthelie enough mentioned (for I was the meanes and practiser for the saide *Consul*, though vnworthie I were for such businesse) the said office was taken from him, whiles he was prisoner in *Constantinople*, in the yeere. 1586.

Serafadin keepeth his state betweene *Ebneman*, & *Serafadin*. *Ebnemanfur*: beeing in good league and confederate with the first, and at mortall enimitie with the second. Hee is the weakeft of all the rest in forces and reuenues.

Ebnofrec inhabiteth that parte of *Libanus*, that is towards the East, and runneth downe euen to the foote of *Libanus*, ioyning vpon the plaines of *Bacca*. Of which plaines, together with the Citty (called by the inhabitantes there, *Balbeck*, and by some thought to be *Casarea Philippi*.) *Emir Aly Ebnecarfus* was euer the Lorde and owner, who also in this chaunge of Fortune, bought the Title of a *Bassa*, and would needes submitte himselfe wholly to the seruice of the Turkes. And heere along runneth the vale, that is so famous amonge the Phisitians,
The VII. Booke. Qq and

Ebnofrec or
Feracogli.

Ebnecarfus
or Carfusogli

The vale be-
tweene Liba-
nus and anti-
Libanus fa-
mous among
Phisitians.
Ior and Dan,
the two heads
of Iordan.

294 *The warres betweene*
and Poetes, betweene *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*,
where also are to be seene the Lakes of *Orontes* and
of *Iordan*, called *Ior* and *Dan*.

Ebnescree, *Ebnecarfus* and *Ebnemansur*, were al-
waies great friends, but now especially at the com-
ming of *Ebrain Bassa*, they shewed themselves,
more straitly confederated together: *Serafadin* and
Manogli were euer opposite against them: so that
the one side procuring the ouerthrowe and mis-
chiefe of the other; they haue vtterlye losse their
strength, and haue no meanes left them to defend
themselves from the *Ottoman* forces. Nowe as soone
as the newes came among them, that *Ebrain* the *Vi-*
sier beeing departed from *Cair* would come into
Soria, to subdue the *Drusians*, the three confederats
about named, of purpose to turne all the mischiefe
vpon *Ebneman* and *Serafadin* their enemies, resol-
ued to goe and meet with the *Bassa* to shewe them-
selves subiect and deuoted to king *Amurath*, to car-
rie with them large and liberall bribes, and by accu-
sing *Serafadin* and *Ebneman* of infidelitie, of diso-
bedience, & of rebellion, to entreat their vtter de-
struction and ouerthrowe. And so hauing packed
vp together greate store of money, cloth of silke,
cloth of Woollen, and cloth of Gold, with many
loades of other silkes and things of exceeding va-
lue, euery of the three beeing accompanied, one
with some two thousand, and another with some
three thousand, put themselves on their iourney to-
wardes *Ebrain*, and met him at *Ierusalem*, where hee
was already arriued. This their comming *Ebrain*

The VII. booke.

Bassa

the Turkes & Persians. 295

Bassa tooke in woonderfull good parte, and
verye courteously accepted those rich and
great presentes which they brought him, and
perceiuing such offers of their fidelitie and o-
bedience: and such accusations of the two *Drusi-*
an Captaines their enemies, hee began to bee in
good hope of his intended enterprise. Neither did
he forslow to vse moste sweet speeches vnto them,
promising due rewardes to euery one of them and
putting them in great expectation that he would
encrease their honour, and enlarge their estates.
By which liberall promises they beeing nowe be-
come bold and venturous, beganne in more sharp-
and bitter manner to accuse their two enemies.
Which thing did the more highlye please *Ebrain*
for that hee plainly perceiued, that nothing could
more easely compasse their ouerthrow, then this
their discorde. And therefore most readilie hee pro-
mised them, not onely that hee would procure
the destruction of those their enemies, as rebells
to the Turke, but also that hee would make them-
selves the Meanes and Ministers of their owne
reuenge and chastisement. And thus beeing
all accompanied and ioyned together, they came
by the way of *Damasco* to the *Champaigne* of *Bocca*
beforenamed, and in those plains incamped them-
selves. This was in the month of Iulie and in the
yeere of mans redemption. 1585. And the whole
Armie, that was with *Ebrain*, reconing also the
Souldiers of the three *Emirs*, was about the number
of twentie thousand horsemen strong.

Ebrain expe-
cteth good
successe ouer
the *Drusians*,
by their dis-
corde among
themselves.

The Army of
Ebrain in the
plains of *Boc-*
ca encreased
to the nuber
of 20000. hors

Qq 2

In

The three
Drusian Emirs
goe to meete
Ebrain as far
as *Ierusalem*
with a greate
traine.

In this place there came people out of all quarters, with presentes to honour the *Visier*, to whom he likewise yeelded such fauours & reliefes, as his couetous nature could afford them. Among the rest, *Gionanni Michael*, mentioned a little before, sente *Christoforo de Buoni* his Interpreter to salute the saide *Bassa*, who againe for his parte shewed diuerse signes and tokens of the Loue and Reuerence that hee carried towards the *Venetian* estate. And for that the saide *Christoforo de Buoni* was of the same Nation and language that *Ebrain* was off, both of them beeing *Sclauonians*, and of *Ragusi*, hee esteemed of him so deerely, that hee woulde needes retaine him still, with him as his familiar Companion, during all the time, that hee remained in *Soria*, about the subduing of the *Drusians*. By which meanes I attained to the precise and faithfull knowledge of all the proceedings in *Drusia*.

From these plaines also, *Ebrain* presently sente Letters to *Serafadin*, and to *Ebneman*, whereby hee inuited them to come vnto him, and declare themselves to bee Subiectes and obediēte to the *Sultan*, to the ende hee mighte make intercession on their behauires for all suche honorable fauour as they desired: but if they woulde not come, then they must bee assured, that they shoulde bee deprived both of their estates and of these liues. *Manogli* would not come by any meanes: But *Serafadin* beeing poore both in wealth and in forces, and farre

more

Gionanni Michael the Venetian Consul tendeth Christoforo de Buoni his interpreter to visite Ebrain the Visier with honourable presence.

From Christoforo de Buoni the Authour all the particulars of the Drusian people. Ebrain by letters inuited Serafadin and Manogli.

more weake then *Manogli*, resolved to come, hoping that by his presents hee might rid himselfe of all trouble, for that he had hearde of the fortunate successe that had hitherto happened to the three *Emirs*, who (as all the worlde thought) had made the kings Champion their great friende and protector. And therefore hauing packed vp together diuerse loades of silkes, greate store of Money, and many cloathes of good value and beautye, hee carried them with him to honour the newe Duke, by whose Letters hee was so largely inuited. Hee caused also diuerse of his Subiectes to goe with him, and at last arriued at the Pavilion of *Ebrain* with his rich presentes, hauing first commaunded all those, that had accompanied him thether, to sequester themselves from him. The giiftes were readilye receiued, and the speech of *Serafadin* hearde with great attention, which in effect tended to no other ende, but onely to perswade the *Visier*, that he had alwaies bene deuoted and a vassall to *Amrath*, and that hee had carried a continuall desire to bee employed in any seruice for him, and that nowe beeing led by the same affection, and assured by the friendly & courteous offers made him in his letters, hee was come to shewe himselfe vnto him to be the same man, & proffered him whatsoeuer lay in his slender power to performe. *Ebrain* made no answer to any of his speeches, but onely asked him the cause, why he liued continually in discord & bralles with the three *Emirs* (who also late at that time in the same Pavilion)

on

Serafadin in the presentes of *Ebrain*. The speech of *Serafadin*. The accusation of *Serafadin*. His defence.

on.) Wherunto *Serafadin* answered, that neuer any
 Act proceeded from him, that might be the cause
 of any quarels or dissentiōs, but all sprong frō those
 three, who, because they were more mighty thē he,
 did continually woorke him great disquiet, & op-
 presse him intollerably: so that if he had at any time
 taken vp armes against them, he had done it al sim-
 ply in his own defence, & onely to withstand their
 insolent molestations, & not because he was desi-
 rous of warres and dissentions, for that he did prin-
 cipally loue peace with al men, but specially & the
 rather with those that were his neighbours. Heerat
 the three conspirators arose, & by their grim looks
 bewraying their mindes full of hatred, they tolde
 him, that he was euer the occasion of al the bralles.
 For that by his continual disquieting of those quar-
 ters, those hils, those champeignes, & those hauens
 of the sea, he had procured a perpetual losse & hin-
 derance to the customes of the Sultan, (whose of-
 ficer *Ebnemansur* was.) Adding withal, that at this
 day his insolency was growen so great, that from a-
 ny other coasts or maritimal places, there durst not
 any strange vessel ariue at those Portes of *Sidonia*, of
Tyrus & of *Berito*, nor any merchant or merchādize
 passe ouer the plains: But as thogh those countries
 were a pray & spoile to the thecus of *Arabia*, they
 were generally auoided of al trauelers both by land
 & sea. *Serafadin* would gladly haue replied in defēce
 of himself, by saying that neither *Baruto*, nor *Seida*
 nor *Sur* were vnder his iurisdiction, but in troth part-
 ly vnder the authority of *Manogli*, & partly vnder the
 tyrann-

News accu-
 sations of *Sera-
 fadin*.

The VII. Booke.

tyrannie of *Ebnemansur*. But *Ebrain* preuented him,
 and surcharging him with manie inurious words,
 commaunded the Captaine of the two hundred
Ianizzaries of *Constantinople*, to take him into his
 custodie, and so beeing placed in a rotten Tente,
 that was appointed for him, hee was euerie night
 from thence forward put in the Stocks & in chains
 and guarded with a trustie gard of *Ianizzaries*.

Serafadin by
 the comman-
 dement of *E-
 brain* impriso-
 ned.

In this meane time, came the aunswere of Manogli,
who wrote backe to Ebrain Bassa, in this manner. To
the Lord of Lordes, Soueraigne aboue the greate ones,
the mightie, the Noble Captaine, Cosin to the Graund
Lord, and the worthiest among the elect of the prophet
Mahamet, the Noble and famous Lord, Ebrain Bassa.
*God giue good successe to his haughty enterprises, and prof-
 peritie in all his honour. I doe wish (euen as thou doest
 louingly inuite and exhort me) that I might come before
 thee, and follow thee, and serue thee alwaies, in any occa-
 sion, that it may happen thee to stand in neede of my helpe.
 For I knowe that thou wouldest rest assured of the reuerence
 that I beare towards the Lorde, and of the most feruent
 desire, wherein I liue, to serue him, and to employ both
 my substance & my life in his seruice. Wherof I haue also gi-
 uen some testimonie, though but small, in the manning
 of the Customes, that I haue receined. Wherein I haue al-
 waies so carried my selfe, that I am not his Debtor of one
 Aspro. A thing iwis, that Ebnemansur (who is nowe
 with thee) hath not done. For although by his comming to
 meete thee, euen as farre as Ierusalem, hee would make
 a shew of his fidelitic, yet doeth hee vsurpe more then two
 hundred thousand Duckates of the kinges, which hee doth*

The letter of
 Manogli to *E-
 brain Bassa*.

Q 9 4

most

most uniuersally detain frō him of his customes. But my hard fortune will not grant mee the fauour, that I may come vnto thee. For there are at this present with thee three of mine enemies, who (I know well) beeing nat contented to haue alwaies disquieted and troubled my estate, doo nowe seeke to bring mee into so great hatred with thy heart, that if thou haddest mee in thy handes, without any consideration thou wouldest bereaue mee of my life. And I am assured, that this sending for mee, doth import no other thing but onely a desire that thou hast to imprison mee, and so to kill mee. For I know, how much thou art giuen to greate enterprises. Besides this, my comming is also kindred by mine ancient oath, that I tooke, when beeing as yet but a child, I sawe mine owne father, so villanously betrayed by the murdering sword of Mustaffa, beeing at that time the Bassa of Damasco: who vnder the colour of vnfeined freindship, got him into his handes, and traiterously strooke of his head. For in trueth I carie the image of my fathers reuerend head, al pale, & yet as it were brethring, imprinted in my minde, which oftentimes presenteth it selfe to mee, as well sleeping in the darknesse of the night, as also waking in the light of the day, and talking with mee, calleteth to my remembrance the infidelitie of that murdering Tyrant, and exhorteth mee to keepe my selfe alooffe, from the handes of the wightie. And therefore I neither can, nor may obey thy requestes, and in that respect it grioueth mee, that I shall seeme disobedient vnto thee, beeing in any other action, and in all my cogitations, wholly addicted to doe anie seruice, not onely to thee, who art most worthie to bee reuerenced of farre greater persons then I am, but also to euerie the least Vassall of Amuraths.

The VII. Booke.

Thou

Thou wilt pardon me, I hope, and thou shalt well perceauce, that if there be any thing neere me, that may be acceptable to thee, all that I haue whatsoever, though in respect of thy selfe it may seeme vile and base, yet is it thine, and is now reserued wholie for thee and not for me. Farewell, and command me, and hold mee excused, vpon these iust causes, which thou hearest, for my being so backward in comming to honour thee, as my duety requireth. The letter was subscribed in this manner. *The Poore and the least amongst the sclaues of the Graund Lord: The Sonne of Man.*

When Ebrain had read this letter, coniecturing thereby the constant opinion of Ebne-Man, that by no means he would willingly come within his power, hee resolved himselfe to go vpon him with all his Armye, and by burning his Townes, and threatning him in all terrible manner, either by force or by flight to get him into his hands, and in case he could not at last bring that to passe, then at least to try, whether he could draw from him as many arcubuses, and as great giftes and tributes, as possibly hee might. And therefore hee raised all his Campe, and turned himselfe towardes the countrey of *Manogli*, and leauing no place vnattempted, hee burned and destroyed foure and twenty Townes that were subiect vnto him, & so mounting vp certaine rockes of *Libanus*, vpon the top of a large hill, (that standeth ouer *Andara*, and other places belonging to *Manogli*,) he encamped himselfe. But whiles the armie of Ebrain was thus marching forward, *Veis Bassa*, with a great part of his people and his sonne the *Sangiaccos* of *Ierusalem*, with his souldiers likewise, being in all to the number of a thousand & fife hundred persons, were left behind in the champaines of *Bocca*, and (as it were a Reward) had separated themselues from the rest

The VII. Booke.

R r

of

Ebrain resolved to destroy the countrey of Ebne-Man.

24. towns of Manoghes burned by Ebrain the Visier.

of the army: But whilest they were busie in raising their Tentes, by a very great band of the Drusians of the faction of *Manogli*, that by vnusuall & vnknown waies descending downe vpon them, found the said *Bassa*, and his son, with all the foresaid souldiers euenvpon the point of departing, they were furiously assaulted, and with the first tempest of arcubuses, & suddain blowes of their swords, they were so annoyed and terrified, that their enemies continuing their present victorie, became the Lordes of the pavilions, the wealth, and the armour of the Turkes, and leading away with them their horses & their carriages, in all terrible and stout manner they put to death about five hundred persons, and scarce gaue any leasure to scape, either to the *Bassa* the father, or to the *Sangiaccio* the sonne, who fled straight to *Ierusalem*, and neuer returned againe to *Ebrain*: but *Veis* followed the army, and was thought worthie to be pittied of all men, and especially of *Ebrain*, who promised him great rewards and honours at the Kinges hands for his seruice.

Vpon the hill aforesaid, the Visier continued foure & twentie daies together, with aboundance of all thinges necessary for victuall: during all which tyme he attended nothing els, but to trye all deuises, how hee might draw money and presentes from *Ebne-Man*, or how hee might traîne him into his handes. For the compassing whereof, he dispatched *Gomeda* the Agent or Factor of *Ebnemansur*, to the said *Ebne-Man*, being in *Andera*: and sent word by him, that forasmuch as he would not giue credit to the promise that was made him, nor aduenture himselfe to come into the handes of his friend, he should send vnto him all the Arcubuses he had. For the Sultans pleasure was, that his people which went not to the wars

The VII. Booke.

11

in

in his seruice, should not be furnished with so great store of weapons, to the daunger of their neighbours, and of the subiectes themselves. With great griefe of mind did *Ebne-Man* behold the said *Gomeda*, as the man whom hee well knew to be the Factor of his deadly enemy, but yet durst not in any sort doo him anie iniury, nor giue him any reproach. But when he heard the demand for the Arcubuses, he answered him, that all his people and weapons were dispersed abroad ouer his Territorie, so that hee could not tell what Arcubuses to send him. And so *Gomeda* returned without any answer, that good was. Which when *Aly* the *Bassa* of *Aleppo* before named, vnderstood, he offered himselfe to the Visier, that hee would go vnto him, and that to good purpose. Many reasons did *Aly Bassa* vse, to perswade the wary *Drusian*, that hee would come and yeeld his obedience to *Ebrain*, swearing that no manner of outrage should be doone vnto him, & promising him great and honorable fauours. But neuer could he remoue the sound and prouident mind of *Ebne-Man*, or winne him to yeeld himselfe into the handes of a man whom he thought to be so murderous: which when he had found to be more then certain, then did he labour to perswade him, at the least, that he would send *Ebrain* a good number of arcubuses, & withall som honorable presents in signe of the reuerence that he did beare towards him, and of his obedience to *Amurath*: wherein although he found the mind of the *Drusian* to be as yet somewhat harde, as a man that would giue neither little nor much, knowing that all would be but cast away in the wind, yet at the last he brought him so about, that he was content so to farre pleasure him, as to send a present to *Ebrain*. And thereupon gaue him three hundred & twenty arcubuses,

The VII. Booke.

R r 2

twenty

Aly Bassa goeth to *Manogli*.

The present that *Manogli* sendeth to *Ebrain*, by the hand of *Aly Bassa*.

Veis Bassa with the *Sangiaccio* his son discomfited by the *Drusians*.

Gomeda goeth by commandement of *Ebrain* to demand Arcubuses of *Manogli*.

twentie packes of *Andarine* filkes, and fiftie thousande Duckates, to carrie to the Turkish *Bassa* for a gift, and to reconcile him vnto him. For the better effecting whereof, and that he might be rid of him, the next morning he sent his owne mother before him, who in the behalfe of her sonne, did performe a very worthie message, excusing him, as well in respect of his enemies that sate there so neere vnto him, as also in regard of his oath, which he had solemnly sworne, that he would neuer commit himselfe againe into the handes of a Turke. For the which she alledged very good testimony of the deceitfull and lying promises of *Mustassa*, being then the *Bassa*, or rather the Tirant of *Damasco*, by whole handes she herselfe saw her owne husband so barbarously murdered: and therefore she besought him, that hee would accept of the giftes which were sent him, and therewithall a mind and harte most ready to serue and obey the kinge in all occasions: and that hee would hold him excused, and allow his excuses to be lawfull, for that they were both iust and reasonable. The Turke replied vpon her, that although she had found so foule a fault and offence in *Mustassa*, who, vnder the assurance of his promise and fidelity, betrayed her husband, yet for all that, she ought not to feare any such wicked or infamous action, at his handes, who made profession of an honorable person, and a Souldier of his woord: and so by oath protesting all faithfull and constant friendship towards him, he cast a white vayle about her neck, and put another vpon himselfe, and a third he gaue the woman in her hands, willing her to report to her sonne the oathes he had made, and to carrie him that vayle, and bring him with her, for he should not be otherwise handled, but like a friend, and a brother. The peace-

The VII. Booke.

Manogli sent his mother to Ebrain in his stead.

Ebrain promised faith and peace to the Mother, to the end she should fetch Manogli.

able old woman went her way accordingly, but she neither could nor would go about to alter the purpose of her to goe, so that she returned to *Ebrain* an aunswere not greatly pleasing him, and therefore hee licenced her to depart.

After which time, he sought more then euer he did before, to get the stubburne *Emir* into his hands, or at least to draw from him more presents and weapons, without regard of any shame, thinking euery thing lawfull that came into his mind, whatsoeuer. And therefore once againe he sent the craftie and malignant *Gomeda*, to exhort him, that vpon the faith and promise which he had geuen him, he would come vnto him. But for all the craftie and lying speeches, that the treacherous messenger could cunningly vse, he could obtaine nothing at his handes, but words onely. Which when he perceaued, and yet not minded to returne altogether in vaine, and without any profit, by the appointment of *Ebrain* himselfe, he told him, that forasmuch as he was not willing to go, yet he should be contented at least, in his presence to peruse the Accompts of those Monopolies, that he had managed for the King in times past, to the end that if they should be found to be paid and discharged, then he should rid the Turkish Captain from those mountaines, and so remayn in quiet. *Manogli* vnderstanding this fraudulent request, which in the end tended to no other purpose, but onely to get some money, & some presents, determined therein to satisfie *Gomeda*, with an expresse condition notwithstanding, that he should cause *Ebrain* to depart out of those quarters, and that he should not returne any more to request any thing of him. Which he verie largely and liberally promised, onely desiring him, that because he

The VII. Booke.

R r 3

should

Gomeda returneth to *Manogli*.

A new present
of Ebne-Man
to Ebrain.

Ebrain repro-
ueth Gomeda

should not haue any occasion to send againe any others vnto him, hee would also giue him a good quantitie of Arcubuses, and thereby make the *Visier* fully contented and well appaied. And so he gaue him fiftie thousand Duckets more, and fower hundred and fower score Arcubuses, with a thousand Goates, a hundred and fiftie Camels, a hundred and fifty Buffes, a thousand Oxen, and two hundred Weathers. With this rich and honorable present came *Gomeda* to *Ebrain*, and declared vnto him, that this he had gotten from him, vpon promise that he should not molest the *Drusian* any more. For which the *Visier* did greatly reprocure *Gomeda*, telling him that if he did not shew himselfe a more diligent and faithfull executor of his commaundements, he would not be well pleased with him, and that he would make euery man know, what a weightie matter it is for men to take vpon them so inordinate, and so dangerous a libertie. And for the greater despight both to the one and the other of them, *Ebrain* would needes haue *Gomeda* himselfe to returne againe to trouble the *Drusian*. Wherunto although he went in great feare, least some great mischief might happen to him by the hands of *Manogli*, yet was there no remedy, but needes he must follow the commaund of him, who was able to take from him both his honor, and his life. And therefore to auoid the greater danger, and to pleasure him, he made no great scruple to belie himself, and to become infamous in the sight of the *Drusian*. As soone as *Manogli* saw *Gomeda*, thinking with himselfe that he came to him again about his wonted requests, he was greatly troubled in his minde, and had almost preuented his arriuall with a dart, which the angry *Drusian* was minded, and euen at the verie point to throw at him.

The VII. Booke.

307

for

for the great desire he had to rid him out of his sight but that restraining his anger, least it might peraduenture haue bred more dangerous effectes, he quenched his choler with ignominious wordes and deadly threats: protesting at last, that the time would come, wherein he would recover at his hands, whatsoeuer he had now taken from him by the meanes of so wrongfull and so wicked a treacherie. Notwithstanding *Gomeda* could do no lesse but accomplish the effect of his fraudulent requests, and so wrought with him in deed, that he drew from the *Emir*, fower burdens more of Arcubuses, tenne swordes, and tenne ghylt Gangiares or daggers, certain siluer beltes, tenne packes of silk, and some few pence: Causing him withall to protest vnto him, that he would neuer suffer himselfe to be perswaded to come again vnto him: for if he did, he should be enforced to depriue him of his life, happen afterward what might happen of it.

With extreame ioy and triumph did *Ebrain* the *Visier* see all this present, and thinking now with himself, that he had gotten a sufficient bootie of him, he determined to raise his Armie, & to sack all the rest of the Countrey that was subiect to *Manogli*, not leauing any part of it found or vntouched. And therefore sending certain fore-runners before him to discover the Countrey, & to prouide some commodious place to pytch his Tentes, (the Captain of whom was the *Emir-Ebnefrec*, otherwise called *Aera* the *Scuruie*) he rayled his Campe, and marched on the other side of the Mountain: and passing by *Andera*, which was the place of residence where *Manogli* remained, he commaunded that it should be sacked and burnt: which was put in execution accordingly, with vnspcakable effects of cruelty, committing all things to fier & sword. After this,

The VII. Booke.

R r 4

The new pre-
sent that Eb-
ne-man sendet
to Ebrain.

Andera sac-
ked.

the

Gomeda a-
gain goeth
to Manogli.

the Turkes ouerran all the Countrey, and in two dayes space burnt & destroyed nineteen Townes besides, carying away with them whatsoever they could find worthie of spoyle.

After all this sacking and rasing, the *Visier* with all his Armie mounted vp to the large top of a Mountain, which was also neere to *Andara*, and from thence sent a thousand messengers to *Ebne-Man*, to trie whether he would yet be perswaded to come vnto him. But neither all these fliers, nor all their entreaties, nor their terrifying, nor their myldnesse could euer moue *Manogli* to commit himself into his hands, but still more stoutely and constantly resolved to auoyde most certain death. And therefore the *Visier*, not contented to haue burned and destroyed the Countrey, to haue drawn so much treasure from the *Drusian*, and to haue plotted so many treacheries against him, bethought himselfe in the end to satisfie his inward affection to crueltie and reuenge, with the slaughter of his miserable people. And hauing vnderstood by a Spie, that the Captain of *Andara*, being one of the Factors of *Manogli*, with three hundred and fiftie persons was ascended vp to a certain hill into a safe and secure place, he sent *Ebnefrec* to entice him, & to tell him, that seeing his *Emir Manogli* would not come and yeeld himselfe, he should come vnto him, and assuredly, if he did so, in despite of *Manogli* he would make him a *Sangiaccio* of some of those places, which hee most desired. The ambitious and vnheddy *Macademo* suffered himselfe to bee easely perswaded with this most malicious lie, and being accompanied with his three hundred and fiftie followers, went with the said *Ebnefrec* towards the *Visier*. And because the voice was giuen out, that there were no more Arcubuses

19. Townes
burnt.

Ebnefrec or
Feracogli go-
eth to inuite
the Macade-
mo of Ma-
nogli.

in all the Countrey of *Manogli*, the *Macademo* commaunded all his men, that laying aside their Arcubuses, they should arme themselves onely with their swordes, and their bowes; And so going before them, walking still on the right side of the *Emin Acra*, thereby to giue him his due honor. (For it is the custome of the *Mahometanes*, and of all the *East*, and peraduenture it was so also among the Auncients, that the more honorable place is on the least side, as that which is (as it were) vpon the sword of his fellow whom he walketh withall, and the lesse honorable is the right side, as being subiect to the blow of the weapon, & readie to be stroken.) At the last he arrived at the Pavilion of *Ebrain*, hauing first caused his foresaid men to stay behind in a certain valley, two or three miles distant from the Tentes. *Ebrain* would not so much as see the *Macademo*, although both in respect of the nimblenes of his person, and also the fiercenesse of his looks, he was worthy to be seen, but commaunded that he should be safely kept in a seuerall place from *Serusalem*: and in the mean time hauing called to counsell the *Emirs*, and *Aly* the *Bassa* of *Aleppo*, to devise some wyle, whereby they might put to death those three hundred and fiftie, wyth as little losse of their owne souldiers as possibly might be, it was concluded, that the foresaid *Ebnefrec* should leade them into a certain Vineyard, and afterwards at vnwares set vpon them, and hauing so brought them to a strait, hew them in peeces, and cut them off: for hauing no Arcubuses, they could work but small hurt to his souldiers. *Acra* went like a common butcher, and conducted the poore wretches into the appointed vineyard, and while they waited for their Capitaine, and expected some great reward, because they had so confidently beleued their

The custome
of the Ma-
hometans in
their ceremo-
nies and ciui-
lie.

Acra like a
common
hangman.

promises, they were suddenly enuironed with the Armie of *Ebrain*, the *Sangmachi* making a wing on the one side, and the *Tannizaries* on the other: who beeing become greedie of the blood of those miserable soules, hauing brought them into a narrow compasse, fell vpon them with their *Areubules* and their speares, and suffering not one of them to escape, most cruelly slew them all. The unhappie wretches defended themselues the best they could, with their arrowes, with their swordes, with their hands, and with their bodies, but all to no purpose, for they were all destroyed in this common and miserable slaughter. Of the *Turks* there were none slaine, but only three *Tannizaries*, one of their *Vlu-Basti*, and some of the subiects of the two *Emirs*, *Ebnescer* and *Ebnecarsus*, who were mistaken and thought to be their enemies, for that wearing the same kind of apparell, which the other souldiers of the *Macademmo* did wear, they could not be distinguished in the medley the one from the other. Through which incircumspection no doubt there had been slaine a great number more, but that they were aduised euery man to put a vine-leaf in his Turbant, that so being discerned from their enemies, they might be preserved, and at the slaughter lye vpon the rest.

As soon as this massacre was finished, *Ebrain* would haue the death of the *Macademmo* to follow, and causing him to bee brought before him, he commaunded that without any delay he should be stripped, & slayed quick. The *Macademmo* stoutely vpbraided *Ebrain* with his promise, and his oath, and among diuers speeches, that sometimes smiling, and sometimes threatening he uttered whiles they stripped him: *Cut me off (quoth he) my members, and put them into the priuities of that infamous Ebrain*

The VII. Booke. 12

The 350. souldiers of the *Macademmo*, slaine.

The aduise of the *Drulians*.

Ebrain commaundeth that the *Macademmo* should be slayed quick.

skill and
romance
amongst

wife, put them afterwards into the mouth of himselfe. For so (I throw) he will be contented and satisfied with my flesh. And pursuing his threatens, he spake thus to those, that were to be the executioners of his dolorous death. *It is your great good fortune in deed (quoth he) that with such violence, and so needlesse deformitie yee are now resolved to drink vpon my blood, and to take my life from me. For I do not think that any of you all, either had bin habile or durst, man to man, to draw one drop of my blood from me, no not to haue endured my countenance. But go to, proceed in your wicked and unsatiabie desire, and follow the impious commandements of your Visier: for in the end there will light also vpon you, the worthy punishment of this villainous fact.* With these and diuers other speeches, which the *Macademmo* thundred out of his inflamed brest, the miserable wretch (hauing been too credulous) was stripped, and three great slashes made on his back, where they began to flea him, he in the mean time not ceassing to blaspheme their Religion, and to curse their King, and their false Prophet also. And then the barbarous souldiers, pursuing their cruell action, made certaine other gashes vpon his brest, and vpon his stomake, and so drawing his skinne downeward, they could not bring it to his Navel, before he was dead, with most dolorous paines.

After this, the *Visier* caused *Ebne Serafadin* to be called into his pavilion, who (as we told you before) was by his commandement deliuered into the custodie of the Captain of the *Tannizaries* of the Court, and gaue charge withall, that whiles *Serafadin* was in his Tent with him, all his men, that came with him, should be put to death. According to his appointment it was done, and when *Serafadin* was brought before the *Visier*, all his souldiers, which might be about a hundred & fiftie, were miserably

The VII. Booke. 13

The *Macademmo* is in Scambling.

The countrey
of Serafadin
waited.

hewen in peeces, and order giuen that *Serafadin* should be returned againe to his chaynes, and all his Countrey wasted and spoyled. This commaundement all the souldiers were readie enough to put in execution, and besides the booties that they took, they brought away also a hundred and fower score heades of the people that were subiect to the said *Emir*.

The souldiers
of the Gallies
sack the Sea
coast of the
Druisians.

Whiles this wasting by fier, & this slaughter by sword was in hand, the *Visier* dispatched Postes to *Sidonia*, where the forenamed Gallies were at roade, by whom he sent commaundement, that disembarking iiii. thousand souldiers, they should sack all those Countries, euen as farre as *Casarea* in *Palestine*, sparing neither age, nor sexe, nor any condition of persons whatsoeuer. Which likewise was presently done, and three thousand soules brought captiues, great booties made of diuerse rich marchandizes, many Townes burnt, sundry Castels ruynated and made euen with the ground, and to be short, all the whole countrey of *Serafadin* and *Mauagli* vtterly desolated. But *Serafadin* himself was afterward sent to *Damasco*, with all his wealth, money, and presents, vnder the gard and custodie of *Bassa Veis*, and *Bassa Aly*: who brought all things thither safe and sound, and so from thence to *Tripoli*, where on a certain plain betwene the land and the sea, they encamped themselves, and stayed there, waiting for the arriual of the *Visier* with his Gallies.

Ebrain the *Visier*, was now in a readinesse to depart and to returne to *Constantinople*, where he was expected by the King, as well for the greedinesse of his gold, as for the accomplishment of the Marriage. But bethinking himself, that whatsoeuer hitherto he had don, would be accompted either little or nothing, vlesse he prouided in some
The VII. Booke. fort

sort for the quiet of those peoples vnder the Turkish obediēce, he determined to nominate one of the three *Emirs*, that accompanied him to *Ierusalem*, to bee the *Bassa* of all those regions. Now the *Emir Aly Ebnecarfus* being the richest and the most obedient of them all, hee thought good to commit that charge vnto him, & honoured him with that dignity. Neither did he this without a bribe or rewarde, but for the price of a hundred thousand *Cecchini*, which the *Emir Aly* presently paid vnto him, to make him seeme the more worthie of so great an honour. And therefore hee apparrelled him in cloth of gold, hee gaue him a mase and a sword all guilt, and deliuered vnto him the kinges commission, causing him withall to sweare faith and obedience to *Amurath*. And so hauing (at least to the shew) set in order the affayres of those mountaines, he determined to returne to *Damasco*.

There he continued for the space of twelue daies, where he ceased not to draw money & bribes from diuers persons, by most vnreasonable shiftes: and at last hauing no further to doo in those partes, he turned himselfe towards *Gazir* and *Baruto*, two places vnder the gouernement of *Ebne-Mansur*, where hee arriued with all his army, and found that the Gallies, which had left the Port of *Sidonia*, were now in the haue of *Baruto*, accordingly as hee had before commanded. Now vpon a certaine hill about *Baruto*, neere vnto the sea (called by the inhabitants *San Botro*) he placed himselfe, and pitched his owne Tent onely and none other, hauing caused his great pavilion, & all the rest of his best and goodly thinges, which he ment to carrie with him to *Constantinople*, to bee conueighed and laide vp in his Gallies, and shrowded himselfe onely in a very narrow and base tent. Thether he called *Ebneman-*
The VII. booke.

The *Emir Aly*
with 100000.
peeces of
gold buyeth
the title of
the *Bassa* or
Bocca, and
Generall o-
uer the *Dru-*
sians.
Ebrain at
Damasco.

Ebrain at *Ga-*
zir and *Bar-*
uto.

sur vnto him, and in pleasant manner signified vnto him, that now it was time for him to make paiment and satisfaction of the debt, which he ought the king his Lord, of a hundred and threescore thousand duckattes for the custome of *Tripoli* and *Baruto*: for that he could not stay any longer in those quarters, but was constrained to returne to *Constantinople*: and thether he knew not how he might well go, vnlesse he carried with him the discharge of that debt. *Ebne-Mansur* made aunswere that it could not be long, before his *Macademies* would come with his monies, and then the next day after, certainly and without all delay he would disburse it. *Ebrain* who knew that all this was but a lye, determined to cause him to bee put in the Gallies, and because hee could not carry the money to his king, yet at the least to bring him his debtor. But in putting this his determination to effect and execution, he was affraide, of some insurrection among the people, aswell because he was within the territories of the laide *Ebne-Mansur*, as also because he saw him greatly beloued and fauoured by *Ebne-Frec* and *Ebne-Carsus*. And therefore he thought it better policy, by concealing this his purpose, to shew him in his outward actions all good countenance, and by subtile deuises and treachery to take him prisoner. And thereupon told him, (like a deceitfull and lying companion) that for asmuch as hee was to stay there for his busines, that night and the next day, he was resolved to make a road into the countrey of *Manogli*, and praied him to doo him the fauour, that he would be contented to be his guide: and for that purpose when he should send for him at midnight, that he wold come vnto him closely & quietly, because he was minded to depart without any stirre, onely with five hundred

persons in his company. The Mahamet verily beleueed the matter, that so it was, and withall was in good hope by that meanes to finde some way to escape out of his hands. Whereupon, being called vp at midnight, he readily conueighed himselfe into the pauilion of *Ebrain*, who presently charging him most shamefully with many abhominable and foule termes, caused a chaine to be cast about his neck and his armes, and commanded him to be carried into the Gallies. The fiftie men which hee had appointed to be ready armed, hee sent forthwith to *Baruto*, to fetch *Mendelalue* vnto him, who was by the common people intytled with the name of an *Emir*, but indeed was no other then a simple *Macademo* to *Ebne-Mansur*: willing them also, vpon a sudden to sack all the whole countrey of *Ebne-Mansur*. Whereby there was leauied so rich a pray, and so great a booty gathered, that it was a maruell to all men. For besides money & siluer, wherof there was a very huge somme, the store of clothes of silke and gold was such and so great, that it was worthy for a great Prince, and not fit for such a Mountaine-rusticall Lord as this was.

Having conueighed all this into his Gallies, hee sailed to *Tripoli*, where he found *Serafadin* in the custody of the two Bassaes abouenamed: and hauing stayed there some few daies, wherein he committed sundry villanous and abhominable robberies, hee caused the laide *Serafadin* to bee put into the Gallies, with all his silkes and his other wealth, and so departed for *Constantinople*. When he entered into the chanell of the city, accompanied with foure and twenty Gallies, encountred and receaued by a wonderfull troupe of kinsfolkes and frendes, and saluted with an honorable peale of Artillery out of the *Serraglio*, I was

Manfurogli in chaines sent to the Gallies.

The country of *Manfurogli* destroyed.

Serafadin put into the Gallies.

Ebrain receaued into *Constantinople*.

Ebrain be-
guileth
Manfurogli.

also my selfe at *Constantinople*, where I had good meanes to see the bountifull and beautifull presentes, which the spoiling *Bassa* gaue the Turkish king. The somme whereof, (besides the yearely reueneue of *Cair*, amounting to sixe hundred thousand *Cecchini*,) was a Million of gold: threescore horses most richly garnished, of singular beauty, and particularly of the *Arabian* race: a liue *Elephant*, and a liue *Giraffe*: (which is a beast like a *Cammell* and a *Panther*,) two very great *Crocodiles* dead: a chaire of gold and precious stones: a Casket also beset with precious stones and gold: many packes of most fine clothes, wollen, and silkes: certaine other clothes with fringe of gold and siluer, and the Barbarian cut-work: most fine linnen of *Alexandria*, and all the *Arcubuses*, taken from the *Drusians*.

But now returning to the place from whence I was carried into these digressions, I say againe, that excepting the soulders of *Egipt*, and those of *Damasco* and *Iurie*, all the rest of the souldierie, that was bound to these enterprises, was raised with their newe Generall *Osman Bassa*, as wee told you before. And the multitude of them that came both to *Siuas* and to *Erzurum* was so great, that neuer was there seene a greater in all the occasions that happened about these warres, as in the booke following shalbe shewed vnto you. For now hauing made mention of the *Sangiacco* of *Ierusalem*, it will not be amisse to declare the feates of Armes, that passed betweene him and the *Arabians* of *Palestine* before *Ebraim* the Visier came into those quarters.

In the confynes of *Sodomie*, & in the places that lie not onely betweene the Lake *Asphaltites* and *Damasco*, but also in the plaines, and in the valleies of *Iericho* and of *Samaria*, and in other places about *Bethlehem*, *Emaus*, *Bethany*,
The VII. Booke.

my, *Bethphage*, *Capharnaum*, *Nazaret*, *Lenir*, *Betsaid*, *Naplos*, and other townes of name thereaboutes, there do haunt and liue sundry Arabian captaines, who spreading themselves euen as farre as *Rama* and *Ioppa*, ouer-runne all the countries there round about, and continually commit diuers outrages, aswell against the said Citties, as also vpon the goods and wealth not onely of the Inhabitants there, but also of Straungers: yea and their insolency oftentimes groweth so great, that they dare assault the fenced Cities, besides the spoyling of poore traucilers, that by reason of their businesse haue occasion to passe from one cittie to another. They handle a speare well, and are perpetuall shooters, but Armour of defence, they haue none at all. The horses, which they ride, are very swifte to runne, and spare of diet: they are very bold in pulling and theeuing. Neither could I my selfe escape their handes, when I trauelled to the holy Cittie, to worship the great Sepulcher of our Lord. These Arabians hauing had intelligence before hand, that the foresaid ambitious yong man, was appointed the *Sangiaccho* in *Ierusalem*, and that hee was in minde to raise all the *Sangiacchos* thereaboutes, and ioyning himselfe with them, and his Father the *Bassa* of *Damasco*, to worke some great annoyanc to their Libertie, & to put diuers of the to death; resolved with themselves, not to stay in any case, till he and his confederacy were ready, but rather by making sondry inuasions vpon him, euen to the very Cittie of *Ierusalem*, to prouoke him to come out into the field. And to induce him so to doe, they conspired with a certaine *Subassi* of *Bethlehem*, who was their frende, that he should encourage and embolden the *Sangiaccho* thereto, by promising him great successe and fortunate euentures. The ambitious youth, being moued
The VII. Booke.

The Arabians of Iurie, Samaria & Galilee, theeuers & robbers.

The Arabians purpose to fight with the Sangiacco of Ierusalem.

Tt

with the perswasions of the *Subassi*, of whome hee made good reckoning, and being shrewdly prouoked by their insolencies, resolued with himselfe to issue out of the citie into the open field: and therevpon hauing armed a hundred of his Vassalles, and raysed all the horsemen that were vnder his gouernement to the number of sixe hundred, he made a roade towardes *Iericho*, sending before to defy them to battell. The *Arabians* came accordingly, and against the Arcubuses of the Souldiers of the *Sangiaccho*, opposing their Indian Canes and their Arrowes, ouerwhelming him withall as it were a floud, they wrought him great mischiefe. And in the very nicke, euen while the battell was at the hoattest, the traitorous conspirator the *Subassi* fled towardes *Bethlehem*, and leaft the souldiers of *Ierusalem* in the handes of the *Arabians*, who put them all for the most part to the edge of the sword, & scarcely gaue any liberty to the *Sangiaccho* to saue himself by flight. The *Sangiaccho* was certainly enformed of this fraude of the dissembling *Subassi*, and to reuenge himselfe vpon him, hee began also to practise deceit with him, faining that he wold once more try his forces against the same *Arabians*, inso much that hee caused the *Subassi* to arme himselfe and to come vnto him, without shew of any suspition, that he went about any mischeefe against him: But when he came to him, he tooke him a line, and in most dolorous manner caused him presently to be sleaed quick. Such ended these youthly and sudden stirres of *Iury*, by occasion whereof, as being thereunto induced in a resonable respect, we were constrained with a due digression, to runne out a little from our first course of the affaires of *Persia*. And now staying vpon the same, we will returne to *Osman Bassa*, who being now come to *Erzurum*,

The *Subassi* of *Bethlehem* flyeth.
The *Sangiaccho* discomfited by the *Arabians*.

The *Subassi* of *Bethlehem* flyed quicke by the *Sangiaccho*.

The VII. Booke.

and there hauing taken a muster of all his souldiers, was in a readines to depart for *Tauris*, with a speech notwithstanding giuen out & published altogether for *Nasliuan*. Of whome, seeing wee are now to continue our History, without any intermission, we will referue to make further narration in the next booke following: to the entent that the declaration of so famous & so important actions, be not in any wise interrupted by any other thing whatsoever.

Osman in a readines to depart from *Erzurum*, with a speech to go to *Nasliuan*.

The end of the seventh booke.

The Eight Booke.

The Argument.

Osman departeth from *Erzurum* with his Army, which is so great that it seemeth to be many mens powers vnited together.

Osman dismisseth forty thousand Souldiers out of his Army, as being superfluous and needelesse.

Osman taketh a review of his Army: departeth from the *Caldaranes*, and in steede of goyng to *Nassuan*, turneth towards *Tauris*: wherevpon the Souldiers of *Greece* and *Constantinople* are angry with him, but he appeaseth them mildely with fayre speeches and some small quantity of money.

Osman passeth on to *Coy*, to *Marant*, and to *Soffian*, and descryeth *Tauris*.

The Vauward of *Osman* is assaulted and ouerthrowne by the Persian Prince.

The Army of the Persian Prince.

The Army of the Persian king.

Osman sendeth out a new Company against the Prince in reuenge of the discomfiture giuen to his Vauwarde: wherevpon followeth a bloudy battell, which was parted by reason of the night.

Alyculi assaileth the Turkish Army, and retyreth againe.

Alyculi assaileth it a fresh in the night time, and returneth not into the Citty *Tauris*, but withdraweth himselfe into the tentes of the Persian king.

The Persians that garde the gates of *Tauris*, fight with a rascall band of the Turkish Army.

The Persians retyre themselues into the Citty, and in the turnings of their streetes and places vnder the ground, they worke great mischief vpon the Turkes that followed them into the Citty.

A description of the situation of *Tauris*.

Osman maketh choyce of certaine gardens for a plot to build a Fort in.

The

The Argument of the Eight Booke.

The Fort is finished in the space of fixe and thirty dayes.

Certaine Turkes are found strangled in a bathe within *Tauris*, and *Osman* commaundeth that the Citty of *Tauris* should be sacked: wherevpon there doth ensue most miserable and horrible spectacles, and a mortall battell.

The Persian Herauldes returne to prouoke the Turkes to a fresh battell.

The ordering of both the Armies.

Most bloudy battells betweene them both.

The Bassa of *Trebisonda*, and the Bassa of *Caramis*, with certeine *Sangiaccis* are slayne.

The Bassa of *Caramania* taken prisoner.

Osman is at the point of death, by reason of a greuous disease.

Giaffer Eunuch the Bassa is chosen Generall, and gouernour of *Tauris*.

The *Taurisians* recouer the spoyle that was taken from them in *Tauris*.

Osman the Bassa, Visier and Generall dieth at *Sancazan*.

The ouerthrow of the Persians.

The muster of the Army at *Van*.

Teflis is succoured quietly without any trouble or hinderance.

Maxut-Chan is named the Bassa of *Aleppo*.

A Letter sent from the Campe to *Aly* the Bassa of *Aleppo*.

Tt

THE EIGHT BOOKE.



Osman, the General of the Turkish campe, departed out of the Citie of *Erzurum*, about the eleuenth of August, in the yeare 1585. vsing the Rebelle *Maxut-Chan* for the guide of his Armie: which although it was in deed at that time verie great, both for men

and cattell, yet it appeared euery day to become more populous, and daily new *Souldiers* were discovered in it, though they were but vagarantes, and of small valour. The occasion whereof was, not onely the multitude of warrants sent abroad through all the subiect Cities, but also the affection that euery man did beare to the fame and renowme of *Osman*, vnto whom, aswell for his valour, whereof all men caried a good opinion, as also for his soueraigne authoritie, whereby he ruled as *Chiefe Visier*, but especially for the confidence, which (was well knowne) the King reposed in him, they all ran by heapes with most willing minds: And he wisely cherishing and fostering them in their good forwardnesse, entertayned them all with faire promises, and hope of rewardes. Inso-much, that the *Generall* had gathered together about a hundred and fiftie thousand horsemen, some seruing with bowes, some with battel-axe or sword, some with Arcubuse, some with launces, some stipendiaries, and other some voluntaries. And besides these, so great a multitude of seruile people, of craftes-men, of pioners, of cariers, of Iudges, of Treasurers, of Clerkes, of Collectors, and of all sorts of men: So great abundance of Camels, of Mules,

The VIII. Booke.

Osman departed from *Erzurum*.

Osman entertayneth al that come.

150000. horsemen.

the Turkes & Persians.

and of Horses, and to be briefe, so huge an assemblie, that it would make a man belecue, it was not the power of one King alone, but rather the forces of many Kings vnited and confederate together. *Osman* therefore perceauing that he had gathered too great a number of people, and too huge an Armie, and that it might fall out so great a multitude should want victuall, perswading himself that his provisions could not suffice the common necessitie, neither fearing his enemies forces so greatly, that he needed to lead so populous an host against them, he determined to discharge a great number of such as he thought to be most weak, and least apt to endure traueil, and to sell them their desired libertie at a good price. And the common fame is, that by this occasion out of that first number he drew out about fortie thousand persons, who with liberall and large brybes, accordingly as euery mans estate would beare it, redeeming the ordinarie perills of the warres, returned home to their owne dwellings. And so there remayned in the Armie of *Osman*, the number of a hundred and fower score thousand persons, or there aboutes.

The Armie of *Osman* seemeth to be the forces of many kings vnited together.

40000. men taken out of the Army, and returned home.

180000. persons in the army of *Osman*.

The *Generall*, accompanied with this multitude, departed from *Erzurum*, & moued towards *Tauris*, still continuing (for all that) the speech for *Nassuan*. But scarce were there two daies passed, when diuers souldiers of *Greece* and *Constantinople*, presented themselves before him, and vpbayded him with matter of great improuidence, telling him, that they began already to feeble the intollerable penurie of victuall, by wanting the same day their ordinarie allowance of Corne for their horses: so that if in the verie beginning, and (as it were) in the entrance of so long a iourney, they felt such a want, they

The VIII. Booke.

The Souldiers of *Greece* and *Constantinople* complaine to *Osman*.

could not tel with what iudgment or discretion he meant to lead so great a companie so farre as *Nassuan*, nor by what cunning conceit he had presumed to iustain so great an Armie in the seruice of their Lord. *Osman* quietly heard their complaints, and presently prouided for them, by causing such store of Barley to be distributed among them all as they desired, and seuerely punishing the Officers, that had the charge for allowance of Corne, who most couetously began to make merchandise of the common prouision, by conuerting it to their owne priuate vses. And hauing thus quieted their troubled minds, he followed on his iourney, and by the way of *Hassan-Chalassi*, and of *Chars*, he arriued vpon the *Caldarane plaines*, a famous place for the memorable battels, that were there fought betweene *Selim* and *Ismael*, the father of *Tamas*, furnamed the *Soffi*. In these plaines he took a general reuiue of all his Armie, wherein there wanted a number, that by reason of sicknes, and diuers other infirmities, being not hable to continue the iourney, were enforced to stay behind, some in one place, & some in another. From these plaines he afterwarde removed, and turned his course, not to *Nassuan*, as still hitherto he had constantly kept the speech he would doo, but now to *Tauris*.

As soone as the Souldiers of *Greece* and *Constantinople* heard this sodain alteration of the Iourney, they were in a great rage, and coming again before the *Generall*, spake thus vnto him. And what are we, thou villaine, thou Turk, thou dolt, whom thou handlest in this sort? We are neither oxen nor sheepe of the mountains, for the leading of whom thou thinkest thou art come out: neither can we brooke these thy lyes and deceiptes. If thou hast publicly professed to leade vs to *Nassuan*, and by that speech

The VIII. Booke.

hast trained vs from the furdest bounds of *Grecia*: to what end now, after thou hast wearied vs so much, dost thou deceiue vs with such vanities, and prolong our iourney, and set before vs such strange and important dangers, as our minds neuer once thought on? But if this was thy first purpose and intent, & that now not foolishly nor by chance, but vpon premeditation and good aduise, thou changeest thine opinion, why diddest thou dismisse so manie souldiers, that might haue made the Armie more terrible and the stronger for thy enterprise of *Tauris*? Dost thou think, that by suffering others to redeme their liberties, and so to encrease thy riches, thou shalt set our lyues to sale, and so make vs slaues to the Persians? At these arrogant speeches *Osman* was in a great confusion, & when he saw his good meaning, and the earnest desire he had to satisfie the Maiestie and honour of his King, to be taken in so euill part, and these men so highly offended at him, he was sore troubled, and began to reuolue many & sundrie cogitations within himself, what he were best to do. And although he could in deede haue readily vsed the sharpest and the hardest prouisions and remedies for it, that in such occasions are ordinarily applied, yet verie prudently and vpon good aduise he forbore so to doo, and in steed of rigor & punishment, he resolved to work by entreatie, by admonition, by lenitie, and by giiftes: and by reuealing to the *Captain* and *Chiefe* of the rest, that were so readie to rage, the necessity of the rumour that was giuen out for *Nassuan*, myldlie and featlie to pacifie them all. Whereupon hauing caused manie of the said seditious persons to come before him, he first perswaded them, That the former speech for *Nassuan* was not raysed at all by him, Nor that he was minded at that time

The VIII. Booke.

V. v.

to

Osman myldly pacifieth the souldiers that were in a mutinie.

A reuiue of the Armie.

Osman departeth from the *Caldaran* plaines.

The souldiers of *Greece* and *Constantinople*, in pride & anger, complain of *Osman*.

The wisdom of *Osman* Bassa.

The speech of *Osman* to pacifie the souldiers, that were in a vpror.

to go to *Tauris*, but all that was done, he had done to fulfill the commaundement of the *Sultan*, who had charged him so to doo, to the end they might lessen, yea, and peradventure wholie frustrate the sharpe forces & conflicts, which otherwise they might haue found on the *Persians* side, if the speech had bin giuen out at the first for *Tauris*, and so leasure and time giuen to their enemies to prepare themselves, and to come and encounter with them in order and well appointed. For the auoyding whereof, and that all glorious successe and ioyfull victorie might happen vnto them, euen with the least inconuenience to the Armie that might be imagined, the King so commaunded, and so would he haue it: who, of his Princely nature did not onely not delight in the harmes and troubles of his vassals, but also thought nothing to be more greivous, or ignominious to him, then their losse and hindrance. And therefore they for their partes also ought willingly to accomplish his good pleasure: for so should they stil preferue that great opinion, which both the King, and all the Nations of the world had conceaued of their valour and fidelitie. Neither needed they to feare, that the souldiers, which were dismissed, might enfeeble or weaken the Armie: for that they were not onely sufficient to pierce into *Tauris*, and to open the way euen vpon their enemies, but also the *Persians* would not endure their looks: and that those, which were discharged, had purged the hoast of all cowardise, and left nothing in it, but vertue and courage. By this mild answer of the *Visier*, the tumultuous souldiers were sufficiently pacified; but much better appayed and contented they were, as soone as he put his hand to the common purse, and bestowed among them all a certain small quantitie of Moneys; for

The VIII. Booke.

The souldiers well quieted.

Osman distributed a certain litle quantitie of money among them.

by this gentlenesse of nature, all their stomakes were overcome, and they became so willing, & so couragious, that now they durst venture, not onely to *Tauris*, but also to *Casbin*, yea, euen to the farthest partes of all the kingdome of the *Persians*.

These importunate & inconsiderate outrages being thus appeased and quenched, the Generall turned himselfe with all his armie towards *Coy*, being a citty situate beyond *Van*, and in the middest betweene *Tauris* and the *Martian* More, subiect to the Turkes, where the appetites both of the souldiers and also of their cattell were satisfied with all things which they could desire. From *Coy* he passed to *Marant*, a citty subiect to the Persians, very plentifull and fruitfull also in all things, that are wont to be acceptable to man and beast. From thence he leaned downe towards *Sossian*, a little ground, subiect likewise to the Persians, but in all kind of fruites most abundant fertile: and from this place they began to discover *Tauris*. Great was the ioy of the whole Campe, but principally the souldiers of *Greece & Constantinople*, when they saw themselves to haue passed so farre, without feeling any annoiance of the enemy, did highly commend the aduise of the Captaine, or rather of the king, in chaunging the rumour of *Nasruan* for *Tauris*, and did thinke verily, that this their great quyet did happen vnto them, because the Persians were wholly occupied about *Nasruan*: in so much that euery man now being waxen more couragious, and replenished with ioye, without any feare at all, proudly plotted to themselves, nothing but sackings, pillings, taking of prisoners, rauishments, robberies, and all those insolent and dishonest actions, that vse rashly to proceed from the greedie affections of these barbarous

The VIII. Booke.

Vu 2

victors.

Osman turned towards Coy.

Osman arrived at Marant.

Osman leaned towards Sossian.

They discovered Tauris.

The Turkish souldiers make account of sackings and robberies &c.

The Vau-
ward of the
Turkes.

The Vau-
ward at the
bridge of
Saltwater af-
faulted by the
Persians.

Emirhamze
Mirze, the
Persian
Prince, with
10000. soul-
diers.

The Persian
King beyond
Tauris with
50000. soul-
diers.

Alyculi-Chan
in Tauris
with 4000.

The occasi-
on why the
Persians
could not ga-
ther a great-
er armie a-
gainst the
Turkes.

victors. But the chiefe of these were those of the Vau-ward, who being desirous of a bootye, and to discover the enemies countrey rounde about them, descended downe towards certain gardens, full of all sorts of trees, springes and fruites, and hauing refreshed their appetites with the water and other meates, they withdrew themselves to a certaine little riuer, neere to a bridge called *The bridge of salt water*, and there stayed with pleasure, attending the arriuall of their fellow-army. But euen whiles they were thus enioying the water, the fruites, the shade, and the greene grasse, besides all their expectation, they were suddenly assaulted and very shrewdly handled by the Persians.

This was *Emir Hamze*, the eldest sonne of king *Mahamet*, who being accompanied with ten thousand souldiers, had craftely hidden himselfe, watching till some of the enemies bands should come downe to those resting places, that he might set vpon them. For hee was thus come forth against the Turkes, whiles his blinde father was encâped about twelue miles beyond the citty of *Tauris*, with a fiftie thousand persons or thereabouts. In *Tauris* was *Alyculi-Chan* the Gouvernour of it, and with him foure thousand souldiers. A greater Army then this the Persian king could not possibly leaue, and the principall occasion thereof was, the death of *Emir-Chan*; for which all the nation of the *Turcomannes* being waxen rebellious and disobedient, would not by any meanes bee brought to defend that Citty, which was now committed to the gouernement of *Alyculi-Chan* their capitall enemy. From *Gheilan* and from *Hery* there came not somuch as one souldier, to relieue the necessities of *Persia*. So that the King could scarcely gather together these threescore and
The VIII. Booke.

foure

foure thousand men, who by reason of the vncertainty of the Turkes rumour for *Nassuan* and for *Tauris*, were plunged into a thousand disquiets, and scant had leasure enough to be ready all at *Tauris* at the arriuall of their enemies. With these forces the *Persian* had no stomach, so suddenly to go and set vpon the Turkish Army in open battell, and to aduenture themselves vpon their Artillery: but sought in deed by all the meanes he could, first to annoy him with as little losse to himselfe as possibly hee might, and so by attempting his forces, to make triall of euery way, how he might in dyuerse and sundry sortes weaken and endamage him. And yet afterward hee wished, that he had beene assaulted, when being certified of the infirmitie of Generall *Osman*, and aduertised of the sundry losses that hee had receaued at his arriuall to *Tauris*, and in other conflicts, which shalbe told you hereafter, he thought he might haue recouered the spoiles that had beene taken in the sacked and desolate Citty. But the Persian Prince, thus at vnawares set vpon the Vauward of the Turkes, who being greedy of their victuailes, and desirous to discover their enemies countrey, had turned themselves vpon the gardens of *Soffian*. This assault, & the discomfiture of the said Vauward was done at once: for such was the speed, so haughty was the courage of the Prince, and so great the astonishment and strangenes of the case, that as it had beene a lightning, and (as a man might well say) without any resistance, he ouerran all the said band of the Turkes, and dispersed them, putting to the sworde about seuen thousande persons of all sortes. Which being done, he withdrew himselfe back towards his fathers Tentes, leading away with him, horses, slaues, and much apparrell, besides sundry standerdes & Turkish
The VIII. Booke.

Vu 3

drommes,

64000. souldiers the whole force of the Persians.

The Persian Prince assaulteth and discomfitteth the Turkish Vauward at once.

7000. Turkes slaine.

drommes, that were brought after him.

Osman had intelligence of this discomfiture, & fourth. With caused his Armie to be raised, and dispatched *Sinan Bassa* sonne to the late *Cicala*, and *Mahamet* the *Bassa* of *Caraemet*, with diuers other Aduenturers, in all to the number offourteene thousande, to the end they should follow the prince abouementioned. These then ranne a-maine to pursue the kings sonne, who had already sent newes to his father of this his first action by certaine swift horsemen, and so quick they were in their marching, that they ouertooke the yongman, who like a ioyfull victor was iourning towards his fathers Campe. As soone as the Prince saw the Turkes so neere him, and knew that without a dangerous and shamfull flight, hee could not auoid the battell, couragiously hee tourned his face vpon them, and ioyned a most bloody conflict with them. It was as yet two houres before night, when these sharp and cruell skirmishes began, from which they ceased not, vntill night with her darknes did bereaue them of the vse of their swordes, and enforce both the one side and the other to retire, which was doon with the notable losse of the Turkes, who being farre fewer in nomber then they were, and also shrewdly beaten and discomfited, returned to their pavilions from whence they came. The like did the Persians also, who were stayned and imbrued much more with the blood of their enemies, then with the spilling of their owne. It is a common speech that in this second battell, (which notwithstanding together with the first exploit is reckoned but for one onely) there wanted six thousand Turkes, and that there would haue followed a generall slaughter of them all, if night had not interrupted so vncouth an action, well worthie (in truth) of a

The VIII. Booke.

Osman maketh a new expedition against the Persian Prince,

A bloody battell.

The night ceaseth the battell,

6000. Turkes slaine.

thousand day-lightes. So that hitherto the Turkes haue sustained the losse of more then ten thousand souldiers, & yet scarce haue discouered or seene the Citty, which so greedely they longed for.

The next morning the Turkish Campe remoued, and approached within two miles of *Tauris*, where they encamped. But whiles they were about the setting vp of their pavilions, *Aliculy-Chan* issuing out of the Citty with all his guard abouementioned, and with all the inhabitants that were able to fight and manage weapons, he set vpon the face of the Vauward, being now reuied, and with cunning tournings and windings so charged and seised vpon them, that with great shedding of blood hee made them to retire, euen to the Visiers warde, from whence when he espied the artillarie, he withdrew himselfe againe to the Citty, before he was annoyed or offended by any of them. The number of the slaine, and the confusion of the Turkes was notable. For in a very small space of time, the Vauward was put in a disaray, & almost three thousand slaine. But *Alyculi* being not contented with this, as soone as the darkenes of the night was come, issued out the second tyme closely and couertly, & swiftly ran along all the side of the enemies Army, that lay towards *Tauris*, and besides the death of the *Bassa* of *Maras*, put all that band to great damage and destruction. And when he had so doone, without any stay hee fled to the Kings Campe, and forooke the defence of the sorrowfull Citty. In this sort was the Turkish Captaine welcomed by the *Taurisians*, who gathering themselves to the gates, as many of them as remayned within the Citty, well armed & confederate together, were now prepared to make it a bloody entrance for the Turkes, when soeuer

The VIII. Booke.

Vu 4

they

Aliculy-Chan assaileth the Turkish army, whiles they were encamping themselves.

Alyculy-Chan retirith againe into the citty.

3000. Turkes slaine.

Aliculy in the night issueth out of the Citty & assaulteth the Turkes. The *Bassa* of *Maras* slaine by *Aliculy*. *Aliculy* abandoneth the citty of *Tauris*.

The Persians garde the gates of *Tauris*.

they came. All the whole night was spent in watching both on the one side and on the other, neither could the flattering entisement of sleep procure any quiet or rest to the poore soules either of the Cittizens or of the enemies: and yet there was no motion of war on either side. But vpon the breake of day, a great bande of the seruile sort of Turkes, and of the rascall common rout, without any leaue asked of the Captain, armed with corslets, with speares and with swordes, went to the towne, with resolute mindes to sacke it, and to enrich their owne priuate estate with the spoiles and pillage of that welthie City. And now were they come to the guarded gates, where contrary to their expectation they found a terrible rescue, and were enforced to ioyne a hard and mortall medley, wherein the walles, the entrance, yea all the ground thereabout was bathed with blood, & (as it were) paved with weapons and carcases. And yet for all that, though the Persians stood firme & stout at the arriual of this insolent and seruile troupe, at the last they were constrained to yeeld the entrance, being ouercome by the multitude of them, that flowed in vpon them lyke a floud, and retiring theselues into the cittie, which was now astonied & amazed on euery side, they fortified themselues in their houses vnder the ground, and in the corners and winding turnings of the streetes: from whence, by their arrowes, & some few Arcubuscs, they did great scath to the Turkes that entred. Howbet the Persians were not able to kill & destroy so many of their enemy people, but that at the last they were too mighty for them, and wrought many grievous mischiefes and calamities in the wofull City. And so a great number of this rascall people, which remayned aliue, returned to the Turkish Campe, enriched with

The VIII. Booke.

The seruile people first goto the city to sack it,

Slaughter in the gates.

The Taurisians yeeld the gates to the Turkish people.

The Taurisians fortifie themselues in their vaultes, and in the corners of their streets,

booties

booties and slaues, leading away with them both virgins and children, and shewing too manifest tokens of the poore oppressed City, wherein the miserable women & impotent soules embracing and straying their domesticall doores, and kissing their natiue soyle, with prayers, with mourninges, with complaints, bewayled their present misery, and feared also worse & more deadly euents. *Osman*, who was now made acquainted with these calamities, and with this particular misadventure, caused proclamation to be published, that no man should be so hardy as to molest the *Taurisians*, those I meane, which were naturally there borne: and in the meane time he himselfe went round about the saide City, viewing thoroughly the situation of it, and surueighing the place, wherein he might both incampe himselfe safely, and also with the better foundation and greater security erect a Castell or Forte of defence of that conquered countrey.

Tauris is seated at the roote of the hill *Orontes*, which standeth (as it were) ouer it vpon the North side, distant from the shore of the sea of *Bachu*, eight dayes iourney or thereabouts. It hath *Persia* vppon the Southside, which leauing the *Caspian* mountains on the West, reacheth out to Great *Media*: and therefore the City is subiect to windes, cold, and full of snow, but of a very holesome ayre: It aboundeth in all manner of thinges necessary for mans life. It is enriched, aswell by the perpetuall course of merchandises, that are brought thether from the countreyes of the Leuant, to be conueighed into *Soria* and into the countreyes of *Europe*, as also of those that come thither out of the *Westerne* partes, to be distributed ouer all the *East*. It is verie populous, so that it feedeth almost two hundred thousand persons: but yet open to the furie of

The VIII. Booke.

X x

euery

The Turkes returne to the Campe with diuers praies and booties.

Osman vieweth the place where to encampe himselfe, and build a forte.

The description of the city of Tauris.

euery Armie, without strength of walles, and without bulwarkes. It hath a great number of houses vnder the ground: The buyldinges, after the fashion of those that are buylt in the East, are of burnt clay, & rather low then high. It hath Springs, Gardens, and running waters. And for all things it caried the name, as also of their Kings residence. *Tamas* was the man that remoued his seat from this Citie, and translated it to *Casbin*: but still for all that, both before and sithence, although it hath bene molested by the inroades and spoyles of the *Turkish Emperours*, yet it hath alwayes maintayned it selfe in great estimation and renowne.

Now of this Citty, *Osman* did diligently view the situation, and at the last caused his Pavilions to be pitched vpon the side that looketh towardes the South, commanding that all the rest of his Souldiers should do the like, & that all the Workemen and Ditchers should repaire thether to beginne the building of a Castell. On the same side of *Tauris*, there was a garden, all flourishing & beautifull, replenished with a thousand sundry kindes of graftes, trees, and sweete-smelling plantes, among which the Lilly, the Hyacinth, the Gillyflower, the Rose, the Violet, the Flowergentle, and a thousand other odoriferous flowers did yeeld a most pleasaunt and delectable sight both to the Inhabitantes and to Straungers. There were a thousand Fountaines, and a thousand brookes, & among them all, as the Father of them all, a prettie Riuer, which with his milde course and delightfome noyse, deuided the Garden from the ground of *Tauris*, and one onely bridge for those to passe ouer it, which for pleasure repayed out of *Tauris* to recreate themselves in the shadowes and walkes of those greenes: whose beauty was so

The VIII. Booke.

The tentes
pitched on
the south
side.

The most
pleasant and
beautifull
garden of
Tauris.

great

great, being also made famous by reason of antiquity, that it was also called by the countrey Inhabitantes *Sechis-Genet*, which in our language is as much to say, as *Eight Paradises*. This was in times past the standing house of their kinges, whiles they kept their residence in this Citty: and after they had withdrawne themselves from thence, and translated their seate to *Casbin*, it became the habitation and place of abode for the Gouvernours of *Tauris*, and namely *Emir-Chan* kept altogether there, whiles hee had the gouernement of it. These gardens and places *Osman* did choose to builde his Castle in, whereof hee gaue the modell himselfe, and commaunded that all the whole circuite of those Greenes should bee enuyroned with walles, and trenches digged round about them, to conueigh the water from the foresayd Riuer. And so the fabricke was begunne, with the greatest care that possibly might be, the foundation of the embattelled walles layd, the ditche digged, foureteene foote broade, and a mans heighth in depth, and in the space of sixe and thirty dayes wholly finished and brought to an ende. The first day of building the Visier fell sicke of a feuer with a bloody fluxe (as it wastold me in *Constantinople*, by one of the Phisitions, that was alwayes assistant at the cure) which infirmity peradventure was the cause of the slownesse in building, and of many other losses that afterwarde happened, as shall be declared vnto you. In the saide space also of sixe and thirty dayes, there was distributed vpon the walles great store of Artillery, and within the Forte there were built diuers bathes, lodgings, and such other housing necessary for Turkish vses.

While this Fabricke was in hande, there wanted not sondry Accidentes, and straunge newes, to fill the eares

The VIII. Booke.

Xx 2

and

The garden
called the
eight Para-
dises

Osman choo-
seth the gar-
dens to build
his fort in.

In 36. daies
the fabrick
finished.

The sicknesse
of the Visier
Osman.

and mindes of all men: which it shalbe necessarie to report in order as they fell out. Fiue daies after the buylding of the Fort was begon, there came newes into the Turkish campe, that within the Citie of *Tauris*, in a certain baine, there were eight Iannizzaries, and diuerse Spaglanj seen strangled: wherof the *Zaini*, *Spahini*, and Iannizzaries being certified, went presently before the *Visier*, declaring vnto him, that although hee had ouer mildlie giuen order, that the *Taurisians* should not be molested or hurt, and that according to his pleasure, euery man had vsed modestie towards them, and obedience to him, yet the *Taurisians* themselues, who should haue remayned in quiet and in awe, had most audaciously strangled in one of their baynes eight Iannizzaries, and certain Spaglanj, and that in their iudgement these iniuries and insolencies were not to be suffered. The Captain was exceeding wroth at this most cruell and impious action, and without any further delay commaunded, that the whole Citie should be sacked, and that euery man should do the worst, that possibly he could, or might do to it. Heere a man had need of a verie learned and eloquent penne, to describe the fierce and cruel execution of these men, who handled the matter, not as though they would requite an iniurie, but rather exercise an ytter vengeance vpon them, inso much, as it would require great force of witt, and readinesse of tounge to declare it. For in trouth, who is hable either by writing, or by speech sufficiently and liuely to set foorth the treachery, the couetousnesse, the wrath, the crueltie, the impiety, the wickednesse of these triumphing *Turkes*? And on the other side, who can expresse the crying of Infants, the complaintes and howlings of women, the groanings of the wounded, the teares of parents,

The VIII. Booke.

Turkes strangled in a bath within Tauris

Osman commaundeth that the Citie of Tauris should be sacked in the vilest manner.

The villanies of the Turkes in Tauris, while they sack it.

the

the praiers of old men, the feares, the griefes, and to be brieft, the miserie of the *Taurisians*? There was nothing but slaughter, pilling, rauishing, spoiling, and murdering: Virgins deflowred, men-children defyled with horrible and vnspcakable finnes, yonglings snatched out of their parents armes, houses laied euen with the ground, and burnt: riches and money caried away, and to be short, all things wasted and ruynated. Neither were these mischiefes committed once onely, but the second followed worse then the first, and the third vpon that, worse then the second: so that it was a miserie almost vnexplicable, to behold that Citie, which was so populous and so riche, sometimes the Court and Palace of the Crowne, and the honor of the Persian Empire, now subiect to the furie, to the rauine, to the crueltie of the *Turkes*, plunged in calamitie, and vtterly destroied. With the spoyle that was taken, there were many thousands of Camels loaden, and euery man, besides the thinges of greatest value, which they kept secretly, caried away with him some boy or some wench for his captiue.

The misery of the Citie of Tauris.

Boies & girles caried away captiues by the Turkes.

The lamentable and sorowfull aduertisement hereof was brought to the King of *Persia*, who bewayled the miserie of himselfe, and the destruction of others: But the Persian prince beyond all the rest felt rising inwardly within himself the most ardent affections of griefe, of disdain, and of desperation, & being vtterly resolved to put any thing in execution, whereby he might be reuenged of so great a crueltie, and recouer the pray that was taken away, he exhorted his whole Armie to put on the same resolution. And hauing grounded and confirmed himselfe therein, he commaunded, that fiue hundred of his souldiers should ryde out on horse-back, euen to the verie

The Persian Prince commaundeth 500. souldiers, to go and prouoke the Turkes to fight.

The VIII. Booke.

Xx 3

fight

sight of their enemies Tentes, and prouoke the Turkes to battell. These souldiers so appointed went accordingly, and made a gallant show of themselues, at the discouery wherof, the *Turks* imagining, that the *Persians* were come in great number to assault their Armie: Order was giuen by the *Visier* to *Bassa Cicala*, and the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, (the same two which were at first in the former blouddie conflict,) that with the people of *Grecia*, and all the rest of their whole power, they should go to encounter the enemy. They presently gaue warning with the sound of their Trompets, and straight way their standerdes were displayed: Vnder which there were assembled about fower and thirtie thousand Souldiers stronge, partlie stipendiaries, and partlie voluntaries, and besides them a number of seruile people, men exercised in labour and perills, so that there were gathered together in all well neere fortie thousand men. The fve hundred *Persians*, with a meruailous cunning kind of skirmishing, dallied with the Turkish souldiers, and drew them forward, for the space of eight miles and more. And when they were brought to that point, being now fore-wearied with the skirmish, they were lustely assaulted by the *Persian Prince*, who with part of his Armie, which might be to the number of about twentie thousand persons, couragiously & valiantly seised vpon the two *Bassas*, betweene whom there was ioyned the deadliest and cruellest battell, that euer was written of. Wherein the *Persians* hauing giuen a most perillous onfet vpon the Turkes, it was thought, that they would haue been contented with so luckie an encounter, and so to haue retyred. Which the Turkes foreseeing, and beeing not minded to returne this second time, but with victorie, and a notable great conquest, they hardlie followed

The VIII. booke.

lowed vpon the *Persians*, hoping to put them to flight, and to giue them a blouddie and deadlie ouerthrow: But the *Persians* hauing quietly and easilie endured their charge, for a realonable space, at the last made head vpon them a fresh, and began a new conflict with them. By the vehemence of this assault, the *Bassa* of *Caraemit* aboue named, was put to flight, who beeing wholie dismaied and discomfited, fled back to his Tentes, with a manifest token of the vnhappy issue in the battell. The *Bassa Cicala* notwithstanding, sustained the furie of the *Persians*, and valorously with great cunning & skill went about to harten the Armie to fight, and to doo their best endeaouours, shewing his notable courage in euery respect. But when he perceaued that in both the winges of his people there was still great harme done in euery moment of an hower, he aduised with himselfe to retyre with the least danger that possibly he might. Wherein he could not so warily carie himself, but that his Squadrons were shrewdlie beaten and discomfited, and in the end, he was enforced in the sight of euery man to with-draw himselfe to the Armie, and openly betake himselfe to flight. So that he also arriued at the campe, altogether discomfited, without any Ensigne, bercaued of three yong men, whom he loued verie deerely, and without any of his horses which he had caused to be lead with him, to haue serued his turne in time of neede: and to speak all in a woord, he was quite ouerthrowen, and (about) eight thousand of his souldiers slaine. Great was the cowardise of the one, and great was the courage of the other: whereby it may manifestly appeare, how much more the *Persians* are exercised and acquainted with the doubtful conflicts & perils of warre, then the Turkes are.

The VIII. Booke.

Xx 4

With

The Bassa of
Caraemit put
to flight.

Cicala Bassa
flyeth also.

8000. Turkes
slaine.

Osman appointed two
Bassas, to encounter and
fight with the
Persians.

40000. Turkes
go to encounter the Persi-
ans, and to
fight with
them.

A mortal and
cruel battell.

Heraulds sent
by the Persian
Prince to Os-
man.

With this so fortunate and happie euent, the *Persian Prince* being somewhat encouraged, he sent speedie Herauldes to the sick *Visier*, (whom he thought notwithstanding to haue been in health) giuing him to vnderstand, that if it pleased him to fight with him, he was readie for him, and in what sort soeuer he would accept of battell, he would make him good accompt of his valour, & cause him to know, not onely that *Amurath* had most iniuriouſlie and vniuſtly raised this warre, but also that it had been good for him not to haue withstood his force and valiance. *Osman* accepted his offer, but being not hable himself to go and aunſwer the *Prince* in person, hand to hand, by reason of his sicknesse, which euery hower encreased more mortally vpon him, he sent out all the Captaines of his armie. The *Persian Prince* remained ten miles or there aboutes, distant from the Campe of *Osman*, and that vpon verie good consideration, least peraduenture in the heate and furie of the battel, he might haue been spoiled by the Artillarie: so that of necessitie the Turkish armie must needes ryde to encounter with him.

Osman accepteth the offer, but his sicknesse encreaseth mortally vpon him.

The array and order of the Turkish souldiers.

60000. in the Turkish armie

The Turkish Captaines marched in this maner; The middest of the battel was guided by the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, and *Sinan Cicala*, with all the Souldiers of *Asiria* and *Babylon*: The left hand was lead by the *Bassa* of *Natolia*, with the band of *Gracia*. And the right hand was conducted by *Amurath* the *Bassa* of *Caramania*, with the people of *Soria*: to the number in all of three score thousand, besides all those that were slaine in the two former conflicts, and besides a great multitude of seruile people, & diuerſe voluntarie, and sundrie waged souldiers also, that were stil within the Citie, busied about their new pillages, and searching for hidden treasures, and other rich booties,
The VIII. Booke.

euen

euen in places vnder the ground, and in their Churches: and besides the trustie guard of the Iannizzaries of *Constantinople*, with all the Artillarie, which was left behind for the safegard of the sick *Visier*, and all the Tentes.

Being thus ordered and deuised, they confronted the *Persian Prince*, who was himselfe in the middest of his Army, and had placed all his people in very good order on all sides, hauing on his one side, the souldiers of *Persia* and *Hircania*, and on his other side the souldiers of *Parthia* and *Atropatia*, in all to the number of forty thousand. I do not belieue, that *Ida* the mountaine, or *Xanthus* the riuer by *Troy*, did euer see so terrible and bloody battels, as these were, that were fought neere to the Riuer and mountaines of *Tauris*, by these nations, who, though they be all in deed of *Asia*, yet (as *Aristotle* saith) are not very martiall. The Turkes were in a feare least the Persians would haue fetched a great compasse, and with all celerity and fury would haue runne to set vpon their tentes, & the riches which they had layed vp together in their paillions: and therefore at euery motion of theirs they continually feared this suddain outroade. Whereof they had such speciall care, that retiring themselues asmuch as they might, and faining that they yeelded and gaue place to the Persians, they withdrew so neere to their Army, that they wanted but a little from being brought euen within the iust leuill and marke of their artillarie. Which when the Persians had espyed, and perfectly discovered the cunning and craft of the Turkes, without any further dallying they began to seise vpon the maine body of the battel. And the Prince himselfe being entred among the souldiers of the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, who (as was told you a little before) as Generall sustayned the place of *Os-*

The order of the Persians.

40000. in the Persians army.

Terrible and bloody battels about *Tauris*.

The VIII. Booke.

Y y

man,

The Persian
Prince cutteth
off the head of
Mahamet the
Bassa of Ca-
mamit.

The Bassa of
Trebisonda,
the Sangiaco
of Bursa, &
5. other San-
giacchi slaine.

Amurath the
Bassa of Ca-
ramania ta-
ken aliue in
the fight.

20000. Turkes
slaine.

342 *The warres betweene*
man, & pressing into the middest of the battel, dispatched
euery man that came in his way, and hauing drawen out
the *Bassa* from among the rest, he smote off his head, and
gaue it to one that waited vpon him, to carrie about vp-
on the top of his lance. The speechles head being open-
ly discried, wrought a terrour to the Turks, and a courage
in the Persians, who being imbrued with blood in the
battel, and remembring also the crueltie vsed vpon the
Taurians, accounted it an impiety to shew any pittie to
their enemies, and a great point of cowardise to foreflow
the victory ouer them. Whereupon they entermingled
themselues more and more, & made a most confused, and
generall slaughter: wherein besides the *Bassa* aboue na-
named, there died also the *Bassa* of *Trabizonda*, the *Sangi-
acco* of *Bursa*, with fise other *Sangiaccchi*, and many other
Chiaus, and diuers common souldiers taken prisoners. It
fell to the lot also of *Amurath* the *Bassa* of *Caramania* to be
taken prisoner, being (as they say) fallen into a Well or
ditch, whiles hee was fighting: and to be shorte it is the
common report, that the number of those that were slaine
in this battell, amounted to twentie thousande Turkes.
The night came vpon them, and the Persians were now
somewhat too nigh to the Turkish Artillerie, and there-
fore they resolved to leaue fighting, and as they were oc-
casioned by the darkenes of the night, to withdraw them-
selues backe to the pavilions of the king, the Princes fa-
ther.

But now there were many daies spent, wherein (as
we told you afore) the fabricke of the Fortresse was fully
finished. And after so many victories, and so many los-
ses, that fell out on both sides, the souldiers of *Grecia* and
Constantinople, being nowe wearied with seeing their
The VIII. Booke. frendes

frendes and louing fellowes thus slaine before their faces,
hauing also layed vp safely in their owne custody those
praies and booties, which they had gotten in the sack of
the Cittie, resolved with themselues to procure their
owne departure, being partly moued thereunto by the
violent and sharpe season of the winter, which was nowe
comming vpon them. And for that purpose they came
to the Visier, who being already brought into a most dan-
gerous estate of his health, and waxen very faint through
the abundant issue of blood, that mortally flowed out
of his bellie, was (as a man might say) in despaire, with
himselfe to liue any longer, and quite abandoned of all
hope by his Phisitians. And therefore they were faine
by the mouth of such as were trustie about him to repre-
sent vnto him the necessity of their returne: and withall
after many frendly and reuerent entreaties, they caused
also to be signified vnto him, that if he stood obstinate &
vnwilling to yeeld to their request, and wold needs stay
dallying and spending the tyme in those quarters, where
there was no such need, they should be inforced to with-
draw themselues & forsake him. *Osman*, who had nothing
els to do in those countries, but onely to leaue at *Tauri*:
within the new fort for the custody thereof, some con-
uent garriso of souldiers, did liberally promise to gratify the
in their suit, & to yeeld them all satisfactio, as they desired,
by departing from thence the next morning. And there-
fore for asmuch as he was now to remoue, & before his
remoue to leaue such a garrison in the new fort, as might
be sufficient to maintaine and defende it, vntill the next
spring, wherein there should be some new captaine and
fresh supplies sent thether for their succor, he concluded,
that *Giaffer* the Eunuch, being the *Bassa* of *Tripoli*, who
The VIII. Booke. Y y 2 (as

The people of
Greece and
Constantino-
ple procure
their returne
home into
their countie.

Osman
through sick-
nesse despe-
rate to liue a-
ny longer.

Giaffer the
Bassa of Tri-
poli in Soria,
chosen Go-
uernour of
Tauris.

12000 souldi-
ers appointed
to Giaffer the
Eunuche to
guard the fort.

Osman Bassa
at Sancazan.

344 *The warres betweene*
(as we told you in the last booke) would not follow the warres of *Ebrain* the *Visier*, should bee the keeper and gouernour of the said Forte. And therather to encourage him that he would take the charge vpon him, he gaue him freely, for the space of three whole yeares, not onely the office and authority, but also the rentes and reuenues of the *Bassa* of *Caraemit*, in the place of him, whose head (we told you lately) the Persian Prince had cut of: and withall honoured him with the title of the *Bassa* of the Court, where hauing finished his three yeares office of *Caraemit*, he was to go & sit among the soueraigne seates in the order and ranke of the *Visiers*. The *Eunuch*, seeing so faire and so nigh a way for him to mount to those high honours, readily obeyed his pleasure, and presently dispatching his Lieutenaut, (whom the Turkes call *Checaia*) for *Caraemit*, to the gouernement of those countries in his absence, with a hundred of his owne subiectes, hee setled himselfe in the said Fort, and afterwardes, besides his said subiectes, there were deliuered vnto him twelue thousand souldiers, some voluntaries and some stipendiaries, furnished with all necessarie prouision, and sufficient for the warre till the new spring. And when the custody of this Fortresse was thus ordered, and safely provided for, the *Visier* departed according to his promise made to the souldiers of *Grecia* and *Constantinople*, & the same morning, which was the fourescore and seuenth day after his departure from *Erzurum*, hee went to a place called *Sancazan*, seuen miles distant from *Tauris*, with an entent in this his returne, to take another course, then he tooke when he came to that Citty.

They were now vpon the point of their encamping (as the maner is) in a confused disorder & hurley-burley,
The VIII. Booke. when

when those that were hindermost in the armie heard the neighing of horses, and the noise of drommes and trumpettes, which when all the whole Campe vnderstoode (by the report of the first hearers vnto them that were formost) they ranne all headlong and disordered (as they were) to the rescue on that side, where the report was that the noise of horses and warlike instrumentes was heard. But while the Turkes were thus intentiuelly busied on that side, to expect the arriual of their enemies, on the other side without any signe or token of battell was the Persian Prince ready vpon them with eight & twenty thousand persons in his company, who, (hauing discovered the Camelles, the horses, the Mules, & other cariages, where vpon their booties, their spoiles, and their riches were loaden which they had taken in *Tauris*, besides their corne and much of their prouision for victuaile, necessarie for the sustenance of the armie,) had turned vpon them, & with a prouident and safe conuoy had taken for a praye eightene thousand of the Cammelles and Mules, well loaden with the said booties and other victuailes. The Prince sent away presently fixe thousand of his souldiers for the safegard of the cariages, that they might lead them away in safety: and he himselfe with his two and twenty thousand Persians entred into the Turkishe Army, who now to withstand his assault, had conuerted their anger and fiercenes against him. It was a gallant thing, & a terrible withall, to see what a mortall battell and what singular prowesse was shewed, presently euen in the forefront of the army. For in a moment you might haue seene the Tentes and Pauillions turned vp side downe, and their encamping lodgings replenished with carcases & blood, and victorious death ranging in euerie corner. The

The Persian Prince assail-
leth the
Turkes, with
28000. per-
sons.

18000. Ca-
melles, and
mules laden
with spoile,
reskued by the
Persians from
the Turkes.

Turkes themselves, through vnwonted astonishment, became more attentue beholders of this affray, then their enemies were, and to this day with great meruaile doo recounte the vertue and valour of the Persians, who although they were so few in number, and intermingled among so populous an army of warlick people, yet it seemed that they couched their speares & brandished their swords ouer them, as though it had thundred & lightned vpon them, and were in deed rather like fatall ministers, then humane executioners of so generall a slaughter. But these mischeefes being already foreseene and too much feared by the trusty guard of the *Iamizaries*, & all of them doubting greatly least the Persians would forcibly inuade the very lodgings of the Visier, it was commanded, not by himself, (for he was now at the last gasp) but by him who at that time had authority to command in his name, that without any delay the artillery should be vnbarred, & by that means the valorous conflict of these fierce souldiers was vnequally parted. For the Artillery wrought perchance greater harme among the Turkes themselves, then it did among the Persians. For the medley and mingling of the two nations which fought together, being all in a confusion and a hurley-burley, the artillery entring among them without any exception or distinction of persons, ouerthrowe both frendes and foes. At the first thondering noise whereof, the Prince was most ready & swift to flie, & all that were with him, followed presently after him, so that the Turkes which remained behind were more shrewdly afflicted then the Persians were, who by flying away could not feele any dammage, but the Turkes must first bee well payed for their labour. The *Gracians*, the *Constantinopolitanes*, and those that

The Visier at the last gaspe.

The artillery worketh hapely more harme among the Turkes, then among the Persians.

The VII. Booke.

were

were of *Natolia*, pursued these fugitiues, making a shewe as though they would gladly haue ouertaken the stolen carriages, and recouered them againe: but they being already arriued in safety, and the night come vpon them, they feared to proceede any further, then they might easily returne with the safegarde of their liues. And therefore the Persians, though greatly wearied and weakened, thus saued themselves, and the Turkes also retourned into their Tentes, wholly dismaied and discomfited, leauing too manifest a token of the sondrie calamities which hapned in these broiles, and the maruellous ouerthrowe of their whole armie. So that there is no man but confesseth, that in the battell of *Sancazan* there were slaine twentie thousand of the *Ottoman* souldiers, and that in this enterprise of *Tauris*, there died by this time threescore thousande Turkes with that small losse of the Persian forces, which we haue before described.

Among the rest, in the same place died also the Visier *Osman*, Generall of the late dreadfull, but now desolate Armie, not by wouuds, (as some write) nor by any such like means, but being vtterly consumed by the mortall & vncurable disease of an Ague and a Flix, (as wee haue told you before, and doo now againe testifie vnto you, by the certain and vndoubted report of those faithfull Philistians, which were about him,) whose death notwithstandinge was kept secrete from the whole Armie, and euery man thought verily, that it was but onely the continuance of his sicknes, because the charriottes wherein he lay, were still kept close, and in his name *Cicala Bassa*, (for so he had appointed by his will) gaue out aunsweres and commandementes to all the Armie. But although it was thus concealed from the Turkes, yet was it disclosed to the Persians.

he VII. Booke.

Y y 4

ans,

20000. Turkes
slaine in fight
at Saacazan.

Osman the
Visier and
Generall dieth
at Saacazan.

The death of
Osman disclosed
to the Persians
by three
youngmen.

ans, by the meanes of three youngmen, who in the life of *Osman* had the charge of his precious stones, of his iewels, and of his gold, and now hauing gathered together, the best, the cheefest, and the fairest of them, and also the goodliest and the fairest horses that the Visier had, were fled to the King of *Persia*, and reuealed vnto him the death of the Generall. The comming of these youngmen was most acceptable both to the king & also to the prince, as well for the iewels & gold, as also for the aduertisement of *Osman*'s death: who reasoned among themselves, that it was not possible for so great cowardise, and so dishonorable a kind of fighting and ordering of an Army to proceede from the vertue and valour of *Osman*, of whome they had had too manifest a triall and experience in times past: and therefore they were thereby encouraged to put in practise some new and strange kindes of exploytes, and by attempting the vtter ouerthrow of the Turkish remnant, to giue them an honorable Farewell. And therevpon the *Persian* Prince, hauing gotten together fourteene thousand men, went to follow the *Turkes*, who had now raised their Campe, and were remoued to pitch their Tentes neere to a certain streame of salt-water, not farre from *Sancazan*: where also the said Prince caused certain fewe Tentes to be pitched, about fower or fife miles distant from the Turkish Campe, the foresaid brooke running in the middest betweene the two Enemies armies. Now it was the purpose of the *Sofian Prince* to haue assailed the *Turks* in the morning, whiles they were loading their cariages, hoping in that confusion to haue wrought them some notable mischiefe: but the *Turkes* had caught a certain spye of his, who reuealed all vnto them. And therefore they did neither arise so earely in the morning

The VII. Book.

The Persians encouraged to giue the *Turkes* a famous farewell.

A brooke betweene the two armies.

as

as their maner was, nor load their stuffe, vntill such time as they were all armed and on horse-back, trusting by that means to rebate and to quail their enemies assaults. The *Persians* were greatly discontented, when they saw this warie and vniusuall maner of the *Turkes* raising of their Tentes, and perceaued that some inkling had been giuen them of the purpose which they had intended: And yet considering, that if they should loose this occasion, they could not haue any other good oportunitie to annoy them, vntill the next Spring: they vtterly resolved to venture the assault: and hauing obserued, that the Rankes of their Artillarie were on the right side of the Armie, they began to enter (in the sight of euery man) vpon the left hand. But the *Turkes* made a wing presently on that side, and so vncouered and vnbarred their Artillarie against the assaylants, to their great losse and danger. Howbeit they were so nymble and quick to shrowde themselves vnder their Enemies ammic, & to auoid this mischieuous tempest, that being now come verie neere to the *Turkish Squadrons*, they must needs send out people to encounter them, and ioyned present battel with them. They were purposed before, as soone as they saw the *Turkes* begin to stirre, to haue brought them towards their side, into a verie filthy and deepe Moore, which being then drie, yet breathed fourth a most stinking and foggie ayre, neyther was it doubted of, or feared by any, but onely by those that were acquainted withall, and borne there aboutes: and so verie boldly they went towards that place, entyng their enemies to follow after them. But the Rebelle *Maxut-Chan*, and with him that other Traitor *Daut-Chan*, who had knowledge of this treacherie, as being well acquainted with those places, perceaued the policie of the

The VII. Booke.

The Persians begin to assault the *Turks* on the left side, to auoid their Artillarie.

The purpose of the *Persians*, which afterwards came to no good issue.

Zz

anemic,

Enemie, and particularlie gaue notice thereof to *Cicala Bassa*, who presently caused a great compassing-wing to be made, commaunding them to set vpon the *Persians*, and to giue them a continuall charge. The commaundement of the Captaine was put in execution, and so their fore-front opened it selfe wyth verie large and spacious Cornets vpon the *Prince*: who no sooner saw this kind of order, but by and by he perceaued, that his intended Stratageme was discouered. Whereupon without any stay he began to retyre, and called all his people after him. But they could not be so readie and quick to flye, but that three thousand of them remayned behind, all miserably styfled and ouer-trodden in the myre, with verie little dammage or losse of the *Turkes*. And this onely battell, among the five that were fought vnder *Tauris*, and in those quarters, was it that was lesse hurtfull to the *Ottomans*, then to the *Persians*.

The *Prince* returned to the pavilions of the *King* his father, and told him the whole action how it had fallen out, together wyth the departure of the Enemie: And so the *Turkes* came to *Salmas*, where the death of their *Visier* was published. From *Salmas* they went after wardes to *Van*, where they took a surueigh of their Armie, & found wanting therein about fower score and five thousand persons: and some say, more. At *Van* all the souldiers were dismissed into their owne countries, and *Cicala* gaue notice to the King at *Constantinople* of all that had happened. I my self also was in *Constantinople* at the same time, when the postes arryued, that brought word of these great adventures. First was published the death of *Osman*, for whom there were many signes of verie great sorrow: and together with his death were blazed the blouddie and

3000. *Persians* ouerwhelmed in the myre.

The only battell among five, most hurtfull to the *Persians*.

A surueigh of the Armie in *Van*.

At *Van* the souldiers discharged.

The Authour at *Constantinople*.

mortall

mortall actions that were performed, so that it seemed all the whole Citie was greatly discomforted: and diuerse times, in those few dayes, by sundry persons in many places, and particularly in the house of *Mahamet Bey*, one of the *San-Giacchi* of *Cairo*, my verie great friend, I heard much rayling vpon the King, many curses of this warre, and insolent maledictions of these many mischiefes. Then was dispersed the great fame of the new Fortresse erected in *Tauris*, of the sacking of that Citie, and of all the losse that hapned therein. And lastly there was a general Edict published in the Kings name, that through all the Cities of his Empire, they should make solempne feastes, & shew other expresse tokens of mirth and reioysing, which the *Turkes* call *Zime*: And therupon all the Artificers in *Constantinople*, with diuerse goodly and sumptuous shewes, with muscalle instruments, and bountifull banquetting performed the Kings royall commaundements. There was also woord sent to the Embassadours of *Hungarie*, of *Fraunce*, of *Venice*, and of other countries, that they should doo the like: But they all answered with one accord, that it was neuer the custome of Embassadours to make any signe of reioysing, but onely when the King himself in person returned from the like victories.

In the mean time, great consultation was at *Van*, how they might attempt to send succours to *Teflis* in *Georgia*, whereof there was a rumour spread abroad, that it was yelded to the *Georgians*: which in deed was a lye, as at another time the like report was also. And while they were thus in consideration of many matters, *Daut Chan*, who to deserue some reward at *Amurathes* hand, neuer ceased to remember and vrge, whatsoeuer might set forward the conceits of the *Ottomans*, offered himself to performe

Newes published in *Constantinople*.

Feasting in *Constantinople*.

The Christian Embassadours refuse to reioice for these victories.

Consultation in *Van* how to send succours to *Teflis*.

Succours appointed for Teflis, and deliuered to Daut-Chan the Rinegate.

Daut-Chan named by the King the Bassa of Maras,

Maxut-Chan nominated by the King the Bassa of Aleppo.

this so important seruice, & could so well discourse vpon the maner how to bring it to passe, and to make the enterprise certaine and secure, that at the last, *Cicala Bassa* deliuered vnto him thirtie thousand *Cecchini* to cary to the Fort at *Teflis*. *Daut-Chan* went and returned, and releened those souldiers, without any thing hapning vnto him in his voyage worthie the writing. And yet was this seruice so well accepted by *Amurath*, that he honoured the Rinegate with the dignitie of the *Bassa* of *Maras*, a Citie seated in the confines of *Cappadocia* and *Armenia*, neere to the riuer *Euphrates*; where also the same *Daut* gouerneth, euen at this present day: although there was a speech deliuered out by the same, that King *Amurath* had caused him to be strangled, which was not true. *Maxut-Chan* also, he that was the guide of the *Turkish* Armie to *Reinan*, and to *Tauris*, was honoured by the same King with the great rich Office of the *Bassa* of *Aleppo*. Of whom, as also of his children, and of his vassals, I haue had verie many particulars, both touching this warre, and matters of peace, wherein this man was a dealer. So that I haue not written (to my knowledge) any thing herein, which hath not been certified vnto me, from persons of credite and auctoritie, euen of their owne sight, for that they were present and Agents themselves in these enterprises. Whereunto, that such credite may be given, as an Historie deserueth, I haue thought good in this place to translate a certain Letter, sent from the *Sangiagcho* of *Aman*, to *Aly* the *Bassa* of *Aleppo*, who was with *Ehrain*, and so could not be at the actions of *Tauris*. A Copie whereof was also sent to the Senate of *Venice*, by *Giuanni Michele*, at that time Consul for that most honourable *Commonwealth*, of whom we haue a little before made mention.

mention. It was written in the *Arabike*, and beeing translated into our tounge, it was word for word in this maner.

To the rich and mightie among the rich and mightie, the noble Lord of Lordes, among honourable and great persons the honourable and great person, the Lord *Aly Bassa*, Humble salutations, and long prosperitie. Your Lordship hath giuen me to understand, that you desire to be aduertised of all that hath hapned this yeare beweeene vs and the *Chefelbas*; and I, now I haue good leasure to doo it, will not fayle readily so to do. So you shal understand, that from *Eizirum* we came to *Tauris* in forty dayes: and the day before wee arrived at *Tauris*, at the Bridge of salt-water, our Vanguard was assaulted by the Sonne of the King of *Persia*, who quite discomfited it, and gaue vs a great overthrow, with the death of almost five thousand of our men, among whom *Aly* the Bey of *Grecia* was one. And because you would know the very day, that we entred into *Tauris*: I do let you understand, that two dayes before our feast, we entred into it in great number. Two daies the Citie was kept locked, because the *Persians* had gotten the gates, and in that time there was a great fight both within and without the Citie, with the slaughter of our men more then eight thousand, and little losse to the *Persians*. For *Alyculi-Chan* the Governour of the Citie, with the best of his people were readie to flie, and abandon the defence of the Citie, who as he went out, met with the *Bassa* of *Maras*, and slew him with many of our men. But afterward being scurried with the Artillarie, that was set right vpon him, he fled away, and all the rest of the *Chefelbas* Captaines, who vpon that occasion also at the last retired with him. You desire to know, how those of *Tauris* were entreated: and I tell you, that three dayes after we were entred into it, and *Alyculi-Chan* fled with those aboue named, order was giuen for the building of a Fortresse in

the middest of the Citie, which was then all sacked, in such sort,
 as it was great pitie to see, and yet without any direction or
 commaundement from the Visier, although in deed they haue
 giuen out speeches, that it was by his appointment. The Ianni-
 zaries and the Spahini of the Porta, tooke away all their goods
 and household stufte, and twice afterwards sacked it againe: and
 the second time they slew many of the inhabitants of Tauris, and
 found a great quantitie of stufte hidden vnder the ground, and
 sold their children for ten and twelue Ducates apeece. The buyl-
 ding of the Fort was finished in six and thirtie dayes, and
 twelue dayes before this Fabrik was finished, newes came to the
 Visier, that the Persians, were comming to assault him: Where-
 upon he sent out the sonne of Cicala, and Mahamet the Bassa
 of Caraemit, who from the topp of an hill discovered the Persi-
 ans that were comming, and so they descended into the plaine
 and ioyned battell with them. Wherein it seemed at the first that
 the Persians would haue taken their heeles, but they returned
 vpon our men, and pursued them with slaughter to the number of
 fower thousand Turkes, and took prisoners Sinan the Checaia
 or Lieutenant of Cicala, Chenan the Kings Chiaus or Em-
 bassadour, and the Clerk of the Spahini of the Porta. A few
 dayes before the Fort was finished, the Visier was certified a-
 gaine, that the Persians were comming in a verie graat number
 to assault him, whereupon he began to set all his Armie in an
 order: but while he was busied thereabouts, the Persians arriued
 about noone, and setting vpon our men, they saught such a bat-
 tell from that time till two howers within night, that it cannot
 be expressed, either with toung or pen. But as farre as mens iudg-
 ments can reach, it is verily thought, that there may be about
 fortie thousand of our men slaine, with great losse also of the Ene-
 mie. Among our men, the Bassa of Caraemit had his head
 stricken off, Mula the Bassa of Caramania was taken alive in
 fight,

fight, being fallen into a water, whiles he was in fighting: Mu-
 stafa the Sangiaccho of Bursia, and Schender the Bey of
 Grecia, and fwe other Sangiacchij were heuen in peeces, and
 the Bassa of Trebifonda also left his carcase in the field. In
 verie trueth the battell was so great, that it cannot well and suf-
 ficiently be described. Afterwards, the Visier being depar-
 ted from Tauris, and arriued at Sancazan, mould needes stay
 there and pitch: But whiles they were drawing out their Tents,
 and euery man busie to encampe, the Prince of Persia was dis-
 couered with a great number of souldiers: who seeing vs in this
 plight, hastened his pace, and betweene our Rereward and the
 Visier, began battell vpon vs. It was then a hower after day-
 light, and we had trauailed all that night. From that hower
 euen untill euening did this fight last, with such effusion of
 bloud, as is not credibie, and the common opinion is, that we felt
 the losse of more then tmentie thousand persians: among whom
 there is slaine poore Vstef the Checaia, so well known vnto
 you. Here also died the Visier of his infirmities. In the first
 battell the Spahini of the Porta, with certaine of the Kings
 Chiaus brought to the Visier three hundred heads of Persians:
 but in the second they made no great boast, for in deed both the
 one and the other was not without great losse vnto them. We
 removed from Sancazan, and were againe pursued by our
 enemies the Cheselbas, and yet without any fight between them
 and vs: sauing onely, two dayes after we were departed from
 them, they took away from the tayle of our Armie, a great num-
 ber of Camels and Mules, loaden with stufte, slaues, and muni-
 tion, which although they were followed, yet could not be reco-
 uered: but that Mahamet the Bassa of Siwas, with the souldi-
 ers of the Porta, and of Caraemit, brought vs a thousand heads
 of Persians, fwe Drummes, and one Ensigne, besides that with
 our Artillerie, they were hardly untreated, and two of their
 The XIII. Booke.

Chans slaine. We came afterwards in a direct course to Erzurum, without hearing any word at all of the Persians. And to the end you may know how we haue left Erzurum, I do further aduertise you, that there are remaining in it certaine Spahini of the Porta, with certaine Sardari and Vlu-Bassi, and two Sangiacchi, the one of Bir, the other of Maïra, who afterwards fled away both. There is least for the Sardar or Generall and Capteine of these in the Fort, Giaffer the Eunuche Bassa of Tripoli, to whom the Visier hath also graunted, that for three whole yeares together he shall be Bassa of Caraemit, and afterwards one of the Visiers of the Porta. There is least also for them victuails, and munition, and great store of Artillery. But I may not omit to tell you, that in our Armie wee haue endured such a dearth, as wee haue bene enforced to giue our Camelles Biscot and Ryse: and when that failed vs we gaue them Pack-saddles to eat, and after that peeces of wood beaten into poulder, and at last we gaue them the verie earth. And this great dearth endured euery untill we arrived at Van. And at Tauris wee were of necessitie constrained, while the fortresse was in building, to giue our horses their dounge in very drie poulder, by reason whereof there followed a greivous mortallitie of horses, Camelles, mules and men: and the stinke, which grew of this mortallitie was so great, that we were faine alwayes enerie one of vs to carrie halfe an Onion vnder our nose to purge it. Yet at last we are now arryued at Erzurum, from whence we hope also shortly to be deliuered, for that euery bodie had licentia to depart euery from Van. God be with you. From Erzurum the first day of the Moone of May.

By this Letter it may manifestly be perceaued, that the number of Turkes which perished in this enterprife of Tauris, is peraduenture greater then that which we haue written. And although there be therein discovered
The VIII. Booke.

some kind of diuersitie in the actions, otherwise then we haue deliuered them: yet ought no man greatly to maruaile thereat: for that it is a verie easie matter to varie in such a point, because the maner how, and the occasions why, yea, the verie proceedings of battels are many times not knowne to all men alike, especially in so huge an Armie, wherein the effectes and issues can verie hardlie be throughly knowne, much lesse the causes and occasions thereof.

The end of the eight Booke.

A A a

The Ninth Booke.

The Argument.

The Occasion of the Persians perplexed cogitations.
 The Persians resolution to assault the Forte.
 The Persian, seeke to be reconcyled with the Turcomannes.
 The Turcomannes do deceitfully promise to helpe the Persians in
 their common miseries.
 The Persian king deliuereth his sonne *Tamas* to the Turcomannes.
 The Turcomannes fly from the assault of the Forte, and call *Tamas*
 their king.
 The Persian Prince pursueth the fugitiue Turcomannes.
 The Persian Prince putteth to death *Mahamet-Chan*, and *Calife* the
 Sultan: He committeth his owne brother *Tamas* to prison, and
 withdraweth himselfe to *Casbin*, to gather a new Army.
Saitan-Chalass abandoned by the Souldiers that were in it.
 The Inhabitanes of *Chiulfall* giue tribute to the Bassa of *Reiuan*,
 and also to *Alyculi*, whereby they preferue themselves in peace.
Cicala the Bassa at the request of *Graffer* the Bassa mindeth to suc-
 cour the Forte.
Cicala seareth the comming of the Persian king, and retyreth to *Van*.
 King *Amurath* at *Constantinople* chooseth *Ferat* the Bassa to bee his
 Generall, who had once already bene Generall before *Osman* the
 Bassa.
Ferat goeth to *Sinas* and so to *Erzurum*, where he meeteth with a ve-
 ry great Army, which was in great distresse by reason of a dearth.
Ferat passeth on to *Van*, and there findeth the Souldiers of *Soria*,
Palestina, *Iury*, and *Mesopotamia*.
 The mustering of the whole Army.
 The Turkish Generall hath intelligence with certaine trayterous and
 rebellious Persians
 The Persian Prince commeth to *Tauris*.
 The causes, why the Prince would not attempt to assault the Forte.

The

The Persian Prince ouerthroweth *Zemello*, sacketh the Cittie of *Salmas*,
 and discomfireth the Bassa of *Reiuan*.
 A treaty for the exchange of the two Prisoners *Ebrain-Chan* and *Amurath*
 the Bassa, but nothing concluded by it.
 The subiectes of *Manogla* do great harme in *Soria*.
 Aly the Bassa is sent from *Constantinople* to *Soria* against the Drusians.
 The Prince setteth his Army in array, and goeth to meete and endom-
 mage *Ferat*.
 The Prince discouereth the treason of the Rebelles, and so retyreth.
 The Forte is succoured by *Ferat*, without any speech or word of any
 battell from his enemies.
 The Stratageme of *Simon* commeth to no good issue.
Teflus is reliued with succours.
 The Persian Prince commeth to *Gengo*, and is thrust through the body
 by one of his owne keepers.

A a a 2

THE NINTH BOOKE.

The trouble-
some cogita-
tions of the
the Persians.



BVt the Persians in the meane time, were all full of wrath and indignation for the Fort that was builded by their enemies. For on the one side they found themselves not onely disfurnished of artillarie, and of other engines to batter the walles downe to the ground, but also to be much fewer in number, then were sufficient and requisite to resist the tempest of fires, which they knew they must indure in assaulting those that should be enuironed within the Castell. And on the other side, they reconed it too great a shame vnto them, that the enemy hauing made a Fort within their owne naturall Cittie, should quietly rest there, and insolently threaten them with daily oppression, and mischeuous calamities in time to come. And therefore being pricked on by glory, by vertue, and by very necessity, they determined euen in the sharpenes of winter, to gather fresh souldiers, and reducing the forces of their armie into a cōuenient order, with trenches of earth, to approach the ditch, and to trie if they could aduaunce a countermure as high as their walls, and so attain to the conquest thereof. But in the gathering together of their new men they discovered new difficulties. For then they perceaued manifestly, that to hire souldiers either from *Heri*, or from *Gheilan*, it was denied them by *Abas* and *Amet-Chan*: and that the Turcoman nation, which might haue been the readiest and neereest at such a neede, for the late death of *Emir-Chan*, and for the succession of *Aliculi*, were

grown

The IX. Booke.

grown very contumacious: so that neither the King nor the Prince, nor the presidents and gouernours of the kingdome could tell on which side to tourne them. At the last, foreseeing the safegarde of the Common wealth, they determined to draw the *Turcomani* to a reconciliation, hoping that if they should promise them any honest satisfaction for the wrong, wherewith they challenged themselves grieued for the death of their captaine, they would become more tractable to do them seruice in their common necessities. And therefore the king sent letters to the heades & capitaines of those nations, & principally, to *Mahamet-Chan*, and to *Calife* the Sultan, wherein declaring plainely vnto them the perill of his honour, and the libertie of that whole kingdom, he shewed vnto them that all his hope of ridding *Persia* from that yoke, and setting free all those people, which in all ages heretofore had bene so faithfull and frendly vnto them, was reposed onely in their aide and assistance: and that their onelie Armes was hable not onely to mainetaine, but also to encrease the renown of valour in the Persian nation: which estate, as in yeares forepassed it wrought enuie and terror euen in the farthest and most remote peoples of all *Asia*, so at this present, if it bee not succoured and releued, standeth in termes to become a most miserable spectacle to all the world. And that therefore, forgetting all thinges that are past, as being doone not to worke any shame or scorne to their nation, but onely for zeale and loue to the kingdome, they wold demand such satisfaction as they would require: for hee would bee ready to agree to any iust request they should make. With these and perhaps with more affectionate and passionate letters were the wrothfull *Turcomani* inticed to the reuenge

The IX. Booke.

Aaa 3 of

The Persian
king by letters
solliciteth the
Turcomans.
The tenor of
the kinges
Letters.

The aunswere
of the Turco-
manni, and
their craftie
deuises,

302 *The Turkes & Persians.*
of the iniuries which they had receaued by the *Otto-*
man forces. To which Letters they were not a whit
slacke in framing an aunswere, but readily wrote back,
that they would come vnto hym, and put in executi-
on, whatsoeuer for the common necessitie he should
command.

Now they had already craftely concluded among
themselues, that they wold not suffer any other to sit in
the ranke of their Captaines in the rowme of *Emir-Chan*
lately deceased, but onely the young *Tamas* the Kinges
thirde sonne. Which conclusion they had plotted to
themselues, with a resolute mind, to cause him to bee ac-
cepted for King at *Casbin*, in dispight of the king himselve
and of the Prince *Hamze*, nothing regarding, that by
this action farre greater seditions would arise in *Persia*,
then euer were yet heard of, but onely being wholly bent
to reuenge the sole death of one onely *Emir-Chan*. So
vile and so base an account did they make of the honour
of their naturall King, and of their auncient religion, that
before such matters of so great respect and importance,
very audaciously (I will not say temerariouly) they pre-
ferred their owne priuate reuenge: and chose rather to
become most bloody and cruell against those, to whome
they were allied in religion, in blood and in countrie,
then against their common enemies. With this mali-
tious and fraudulent resolution, to the number of tenne
thousand, vnder the conduct of two Captaines *Ma-*
hamet, and *Calise*, they went to the king in all reuerence,
and offred all readinesse to bee employed in the enter-
pryse, whereunto they were called. The old credulous
king, not suspecting any mischeefe plotted by these re-
belles, was greatly comforted at their comming. And

The IX. Booke.

although

although by some of his Sultanes, that had felt some ink-
ling of this conspiracie, he was aduised to deale circum-
spectlic and warilie with them, and especially not to
trust them with any secreat, or to let any matter of impor-
tance to be in their defence: yet did he thinke euerie hour
to be a thousand, till he had made them satisfaction, hop-
ping thereby that if they had conceaued any mischeefe
in their mindes, they wold lay it aside, and being pacifi-
ed by his amiable and courteous entertainement, yeeld
themselues in very truth faithfull and obedient vnto him.
And therevpon being more constant then hee was in
this his imagination, whiles hee bestowed good wordes
and giftes among them, at the last hee demanded of
them what Captaine they wold nominate in the rowme
of *Emir-Chan*: promising vnto them, and peraduenture
(as some say) with an oath, that whomsoeuer they desi-
red, if possibly it might be, they should be satisfied. Here-
vntoo the dissembling *Mahamet-Chan* made answere,
that their desire was principally to doo him pleasure and
seruice: of whose bounty and good inclination they did
so well hope, as that he wold not appoint any person but
such a one, as should be valourous, noble, and deere and
acceptable vnto them. The King stayed not from gi-
uing them presently to vnderstand, that so hee had deter-
mined to doo, and frankly declared vnto them, that find-
ing *Tamas* his thirde sonne to bee without any charge,
and being desirous to geeue them a Captaine that might
please them, to the end they might rest more assured of
the good will which hee bare vnto them, and haue a
good ostage in pawne thereof, hee had made choise of
his childe *Tamas* to be the successour of *Emir-Chan*: and

The IX. Booke.

A 22 4

that

Ten thousand
Turcomans
go to the Per-
sian king

that if it so pleased them, they might accept of him, and with one accord endeauour themselves to conquer those odious walles of the Forte, which with so great ignominy and reproach of all the Persian Nation was there erected by the Turkes. As soone as *Mahamet-Chan* heard the resolution of the king, who besides all expectation offered thus to gratify them, and voluntarily of himselfe, without any suspicion at all, yeelded them the meanes whereby they might put in execution the worke which they had maliciously contriued against the peace and liberty of the kingdome: hee became more ioconde then he was wont to be, and outwardly shewed himselfe readie, for whatsoever the King would commaund him: and yeelded also in the names of all the rest, large promises of fidelity and obedience, so that the matter might be perfourmed, for which he had now giuen his word:

The king, who longed to see the houre, wherein this assault should be begunne, as a matter no lesse desired by euery man, then necessary for all; the more he was aduised and counselled by his Sultans and the Prince, not to deliuer his sonne *Tamas* into their handes: and the lesse they feared that the king would haue committed such an errour, but rather beleeued verily, that the king would haue made the conspiracy, which they had reuealed vnto him, to bee capitall and matter of treason in the *Turcomanni*: the more resolute and vnwise hee was, and therevpon very secretely, and (as it were) by stealth, aswell to maintayne hys promise made vnto them, as also to sett his Sonne in such security, as hee might not so easely bee made away by hys brother *Hamze*, or hys

The IX. Booke.

bro-

brother *Abas*, he gaue him into the handes of *Mahamet-Chan*, as chiefe of all the *Turcomanni*, who to nourish the good opinion and credulitie of the King, and to secure the Prince and the Sultans, gaue a lustie beginning, by the helpe of all his followers, with trenches and Rampires to approach the Fort. Neither was there any greate time consumed therein: For they had nowe almost made the farther side of their ditch euen with the enemies wall, and the ditch it selfe was also almost filled vp with earth, so that there wanted but little more labour to begin the desired assault.

And nowe was there a great fame published ouer all the East, in what daungers the newe Fortresse was vpon these occasions, yea and aduertisements were nowe sent into *Italie*, that it was quite demolished, ouerthrowne to the ground, and burnt by the Persians: when as contrarie to the common opinion, and contrarie to the publique expectation, wherewith al the world was nowe replenished, that false and wicked Traitor *Mahamet-Chan*, with all his *Turcomanni*, leading away with them the child *Tamas*, departed in the night time and vpon a sudden from so noble and honourable an enterprize: and being vtterlic blinded with ardent desire to put in execution his ill-hatched purpose, couertly and without any noyse remooued from the besieged walles, and put himselfe on his way towards *Casbin*, still terming *Tamas*, by the name of the king of *Persia*, and sundrie wayes abusing and mocking the poor olde king, and the Prince. Great was the astonishment of the subiect Cities, when they hard the new publication of this vnripe & vncexpected yong King. Great was the griefe, that the olde king conceaued of this daungerous rebellion. But verie greate was the sorrowe that afflicted the Prince,

The IX. booke.

Bbb.

for

The king deliuereth his sonne *Tamas* to *Mahamet-Chan*.

Great hopes that moue the *turcomans* to assault the fort.

Aduertisements sent into *Italie*.

The Rebellion of the *Turcomanni*.

for these alterations of so great importance. Whereby not onlie so honourable and so necessarie an enterprise was quite abandoned, but also ther was put in hazard the preservation of his own dignitie, the honour of that Scepter, the peace and quiet of the Kingdom, and his succession to the Crowne which was due and appoynted to him. Whereupon being wholly incensed with griefe and anguish, hee began to tolle and retolle a thousand deuises in his heade, that he might resolue what he were best to attempt. To abandon the siege of the Forte, it grieved him about measure, and to suffer so pernicious a rebellion to go forward it seemed also to be too dangerous for the state of *Persia*. To provide for both these inconueniences at one time, it was altogether impossible. And therefore for certaine daies he stood waivering in a huge tempest of contrarie thoughts: but at the last being inwardlie prouoked with the pricke of glorie, and encouraged by the chiefe Sultans of the Kingdome, hee resolved to turne himselfe against the *Turcomanni*, and by rooting out first these newe springing daungers, that might haue bene able, alone of themselves, to haue impeached euerie enterprise against the *Turkes* to make the way more open for him to compass the siege, and to begin the preparation of his Armie for the next Spring. And so hauing gotten together twelue thousande Souldiers, and rayeing also a part euen of the Kings ordinarie Guardes to goe with him, all couragious and hardie, hee sette himselfe to followe the rebellious and fugitiue *Turcomannes*, and marching in a direct course towards *Casbin*, all the way as hee passed, hee had alwayes notice of the iourney which they helde. And being arriued at a place called *Calistezza*, a dayes iourney on this side *Casbin*, hee ouertooke

The IX. booke.

them

them, and ioyned battell vwith them. Wherein manie of them being sorie for their vvicked reuenge, would not so much as stirre their swordes against the Prince and manie other also fledde away for feare, and so hee obtayned his vvished victorie ouer them. The sedicious *Mahamet-Chan* was taken prisoner, and by the commaundement of *Emirhamze* presentlie beheaded: the like also was done to *Calife* the Sultan, and to diuers other Captaines of this pestilent conspiracie. Young *Tamas* also was taken prisoner, and by the direction of the Prince himselfe, sent aliue to the Castle of *Cabaca*. Fiue thousande *Turcomanni* there were, that heing nowe the followers of *Mahamet*, fledde out of this battell towards *Babylon* by the vway of *Siras*: touching whome, the opinion of manie was, that they shoulde goe to yeeld themselves to *Solyman* beeing then the *Bassa* of that Citie, vvwhich also was done, although repenting themselves afterwardes of their follie, they sought to returne into the fauour of their king: But all in vaine: so that being become Rebelles to the one, and suspected to the other, they did at one time loose their Countrey, their Libertie, their honour, and the fauour of all men, as well friendes as foes. The Persian Prince passed to *Casbin*, and staying there, hee laboured to gather together the disperled *Turcomanni*, those especiallie, that beeing mooued with the honestie of the cause, would not beare Armes in so vniust an action: And afterwardes to make an Armie as greate as was possible, whereby he might be the better able, at his returne to *Tauris*, to attende the besieging and conquest of the Forte. And this was the ende of the *Turcomanne* stirres.

The IX. booke.

Bbb 2

But

The *Turcomans* discomfited by the Prince.

Mahamet-Chan & *Calife* the Sultan beheaded.

Tamas imprisoned.

The Prince at *Casbin*.

The Doubtes of the Persian Prince.

The determination of the Prince.

The Prince, with 12000. pursueth the *Turcomans*.

Saitan Chala-
last relinqui-
shed by the
garrison ther.

But the Turkes in this meane time were busie about diuers matters. At *Constantinople*, *Amurath* was busie about the election of his Generall: and the Souldiers of those Garrisons, that were placed in the Fortes vpon the frontiers, they were also attempting many thinges. Those of *Saitan Chala*, by the Kinges direction relinquished their Forte, because the King thought, that *Lory* a Fortresse verie neere thereunto, was sufficient for the defence of that quarter: and now that there was a newe charge for maintenance of Souldiers in the Forte of *Tauris*, added to his other expences, this might be very well spared. And hereupon there was a lying rumour spread at *Aleppo*, that *Lory* was recovered by the Georgians.

The Bassa of
Reiuan at
Chiulfal.

The Bassa of *Reiuan*, more for couetousnes then for any glory, being very angry that the nation of the *Chiulfalini* did bring no presentes vnto him, seeing that *Leuentogli* had sent very rich gifts to the Bassas of *Van* and of *Tessis*, settled himself against the Country of *Chiulfal*, and made an inroad vpon them to annoy the, with a thousand five hundred Harquebusiers. The *Chiulfalini* being aduertised hereof, shut vp their gates, and stayed wayting for the comming of the Bassa, with purpose to pacifie him, by sending him some bountifull presents. Now *Chiulfal* is a place of some ten thousand soules or thereabouts, situate in the frontiers between the Armenians and the Atropatians, and yet within *Armenia*, three dayes iourney distant from *Tauris*, inhabited by Christians partly Armenians, partly Georgians: a people rather giuen to the trafique of filkes, and other sortes of wares, whereby it waxeth rich and full of money, than instructed in weapons and matters of war. It was alwayes subiect and tributarie to the Scepters of *Persia*, and contrariwise, both by nature and affection.

The IX. Booke.

great

great enemy to the Turkes. The Bassa thus went against them, and being arriued at *Chiulfal*, hee founde it defended with good store of armed souldiers, and the gates well and safely locked. Notwithstanding the Bassa was entertayned by their Embassadors, who were already gone out to meete him with their liberall presents, and to entreat him that he would accept of the peoples good wils: Who if they had not heretofore brought vnto him their voluntarie tributes, it was done for feare least they should haue fallen into the displeasure of their King: who no doubt if hee should haue vnderstood any such matter, would haue bene ready to destroy their countrey, and depriue them of their liberties and liues. The Bassa who rather to make a booty, then for any other cause had that inroad, receauing his presents, was well pleased with their intertainment, allowed the excuses of the *Chiulfalini*, and returned again to *Reiuan*.

The Bassa of
Reiuan re-
turneth from
Chiulfal well
pleased.

Aduertisement hereof did flie in all hast to the Persian King, who imagining that besides the paymente of these voluntarie tributes some worse thinge had happened, dispatched away *Alyculi Chan* with three thousande Souldiers, and with this direction, that if the Countrey were subdued by the Turkes, hee should fight against it: And if it had voluntarily yelded it selfe vnto them, hee should not onlie recover it, but also burne it, and bring away all the chiefe men of the Countrey for prisoners and slaues. *Alyculi* went to *Chiulfal*, and finding the matter to haue passed as before is described, without vsing either sword or force, hee perwaded them, that in signe of their obedience still continued towards the Persian Prince, they would present him with greater and more liberall giftes, then they did their enemy Bassa. The *Chiulfalini*

Alyculi. chan
at Chiulfal.

The IX. booke.

Bbb 3

were

Aliculi re-
turneth from
Chiulfal wel
pleased.

were verie readie to perfourme what hee required, and pleased him in such sort, that hee caried backe verie good tydings of their fidelity and obedience to the King. Whereby this miserable people in midst of Armes and Squadrons of the Enemie, what with presentes and what vvith lies, preserved their liberties and their liues in safetie.

Giaffer the
Bassa in a
great feare.

Whiles the *Chiulfalini* were in this sorte molested, *Giaffer* the Bassa of the Forte, fearing leaste the Persian Prince would returne with the Turcomanne forces, and with a mightie Armie for the siege, perceiuing himselfe euerie day to vvaxe weaker and weaker, by reason that manie did secretelie and priuilie flie from him, determined to sende aduertisement thereof to the *Bassa Cicala* at *Van*: signifying to him by writing, that hee feared greatly least if the Prince should returne with Souldiers to assault the Forte, he should of necessitie be inforced to yeeld it vp vnto him, because manie were fled out of the Fortresse, manie perished by sicknesse, and many also slaine, whiles too boldlie and rashlie they aduentured to goe abroad to prouide victuals. And that therefore he would take care, as he rendered the honour of his Sultan, to send him succour, to the end that at the return of the Prince he might be able to resist him and maintaine himselfe. Adding moreover, that now at this time, especially, this designment might easilie be performed, because there were no forces of the enemies in those quarters, sauing only a few which remained about the king, being twelue miles distant from *Tauris*. The *Bassa Cicala*, although he had a great zeale and loue to his owne Cittie, which is indeede the greatest and moste noble frontier towne in all those countries, notwithstanding being deeplie moued by the importunitie of the en-
ter-

terprise that was propounded vnto him, and verie desirous to gaine some credite of glorie and renowne with his King, entertained and accepted the aduices of *Giaffer*, and getting him to Horse, with a traine of three thousand Harquebusiers, and good store of munition, he trauelled towards *Tauris*. The Persian King being aduertised of this stirre, sent out certaine Spies to learne vvhat vvay they helde, meaning to meet them, and to set vpon them: But the Spies coming neere vnto *Salmas*, were apprehended by the fore-runners of *Cicala*, and being put to torture, they reuealed at the last, how their King was in Armes, and on his way towards *Sancaran*. At this newes *Cicala* was greatlie astonied, as vvell for the daunger, vvhereinto the forces and munition, which hee had with him, were likelie to fall, as also for that by any losse, which his troupes should sustaine in this stirre, the Fortresse of *Van* must needes bee in great hazarde to bee lost, because hee had left in it but a verie fewe persons, neither was there any Captaine to commaund them but onelie the *Chocata* his Lieutenant. And thereupon hee determined to relinquish this dangerous enterprise, and to withdrawe himselfe backe, to the defence and preservation of the Cittie, that was committed to his truste and gouernement. But although these expected and desired succours, were not conueighed to the Fort accordinglie, yet had *Giaffer* as good fortune as hee coulde vvish. For the preparations of the Prince were so long and troublesome, and his returne so much prolonged, that there was time ynough yeelded vnto the Turkish Generall, now newlie chosen, (as by and by shal bee tolde you) to goe into those quarters, and to preserve all that, which the onlie expedition and celeritie of
The IX. booke.

Cicala the
Bassa of *Van*
goeth to suc-
cour *Tauris*.

Cicala the
Bassa in a
great feare.

Cicala the
Bassa retireth
to *Van*.

the enemy might haue put in great hazard, and almoste haue brought to a desperate case.

R. Amurath
busied about
the election
of a new Ge-
nerall.

In the meane time, at the Citie of *Constantinople*, the King was in a greate doubt within himselfe, what hee were best to resolue for the choyce of a newe Captaine. On the one side *Osman* the *Bassa* hauing by his last will and testament left *Sinan Cicala* to be his successour, the manie dangers he had runne through in the quarrelles about *Tauris*, and besides these his desertes, the greate fauours that *Cicala* had in the *Serraglio*, did make the King greatly incline to this his election. On the other side he heard of a certaine publike rumour spread among the Souldiers, that they coule not by any meanes endure, to haue so yoong a Captaine appointed ouer them, giuing out in plaine tearmes, that euery man might knowe it, that they would not obey him, and that some daungerous disorder would ensue vpon it in matters touching the Armie. Then was there also *Ferat* the *Bassa*, the same man which once already had had that charge, before *Osman* had it: and hee shewed himselfe verie ambitious and desirous of this honour, and had of late performed some honest and conuenient office in the *Serraglio*, whereby the King might take some liking of his person. Any other to make choice of, he had none, so that in this consultation with himselfe, hee was vterly vnresolved what to doe. Yet in the end, because he was to prouide in good time for his businesse, he determined to make choyce of *Ferat*, a man of great fidelitie, of honourable valour, and already throughly instructed in all such points, as were necessarie for the brideling of such an Armie. Him therefore he chose to be Captaine for the conducting of his succours to *Tauris*, and to him hee graunted the ordinarie authoritie to manage at his pleasure

The IX. booke.

Ferat the *Bassa*
chosen
Generall.

sure such affayres of the Empire, as concerned this his iourney.

Vppon this resolution, generall preceptes were sent out to all Citties within the Kingdome, and to the *Bassas*, the *Sangiacchi*, and other Gouvernours and Officers thereof, with speciall commandement, that all their souldiers, together with their taxes, tenthes, munitions, victualles, Armour, Artificers, and to bee short all their necessarie furniture and prouision should be readie and in order vpon the firste warning that should bee sent vnto them at the next Spring. And direction was geuen to *Ali-Vechiali* the Captaine of the sea, that hee should arme fourteene Gallies for conduct of the Ianizzaries to *Trebisfonda*, and such other garrisons as were to bee transported to *Erzurum*, and from thence to bee employed where the Generall should commaund. Great prouision of money was made, and in *Soria* (besides the ordinarie somme that is bestowed vpon the yearely pay of Souldiers in *Reiuan*, in *Erzurum*, in *Aggiachalasi*, in *Lory*, in *Tomanis*, in *Teflis*, and in *Chars*, which swallowe vp all the reuenue of that Countrey, and also of the Citie of *Tripoli*, and amounteth to the summe of sixe hundred thousande Duckatets) there was taken vp in prest, of priuate Merchantes in the Citie of *Aleppo* onely, the summe of three score thousand *Cecchini*, to bee repayed vnto them with the firste monyes that should bee receiued by the Officers of the Custome houses. A matter that mooued an extraordinarie grudging among the people, for that it seemed a verie strange and intollerable exaction to euerie man, besides so manie grieuances and impositions laid vpon them for corne, for carriages, for Pioners, and for workmen, to endure this burthen also of lending their money without

The reuenue
of Soria
600000. duc-
kats.

A loan of
60000. *Cec-*
chini lent to
the King by
the Merchants
of Aleppo.

The IX. Booke.

Ccc

any

any hope of restitution thereof. Yea and in deed euery man did greatly woonder, how they were thus ill aduised, by this meanes to make it knowne to the Christian Princes, what scarcitie and want of money they had. The Generall had also with him foure hundred peeces of Artillery: and did besides so worke the matter, that *Maxut-Chan*, who was now appointed the Bassa of *Aleppo*, vvas graunted vnto him to bee the guide of his Armie, and that *Cicala* the Bassa of *Van*, beeing scarce his good friend was remooued from thence, and sent as Bassa to *Babylon*.

And thus hee departed from *Constantinople* in the moneth of Aprill, and by the way of *Chalcedon* pasing ouer the Sea into *Asia*, hee came to *Sinas*, in truth, something later than hee should haue done, by reason of the greate plague, which at that time did generally afflict and grievouslie vex the Citie of *Constantinople*, besides manie other occasions and executions that hindered his iorney. Neuer was there so greate a number of Souldiers sent out of *Grece* and *Hungarie*, as was this ycare: And yet had he gathered them altogether, and mustered them before hee departed from *Sinas*, where hee stayed so long, that it was nowe the latter ende of the moneth of *Iulie*, before hee went thence. Neither was it the plague onely that caused this his stay (for the most parte of the Turkes make no more dayntie to auoyde the plague, then wee vse to eschewe any gentle disease:) but another greate cause of it was the exceeding dearth of victuals in *Erzurum*, where there was neither graine nor corne sufficient for the necessitie of their Cattell and men: which dearth was also so great in *Aleppo*, that a *Venice*-bushe of wheat was sold for a dozen *Checchini*.

The IX. booke.

At

At the latter ende of those dayes, wherein *Ferat* made his abode in *Sinas*, and was nowe readie to departe from thence, there came vnto him certaine postes sente from *Giaffer* the Bassa of *Tauris*, by whome hee was aduertised, how the Persian Prince was hourly expected with a populous Armie following him, and that if hee should foreflowe to send succours, and to prevent the coming of the Prince, and so giue him time and leasure to assaulte the Fortresse, hee was in exceeding greate feare, least the Prince might surprise the same. Vpon this aduertisement *Ferat* presentlie remooued, and hastened his iourney in such sorte, that hee was in *Erzurum* about the beginning of August: where hee was scarce arriued, but suddenlie being prouoked thereunto by the reporte of the Princes coming, which was daylie more and more confirmed, hee set himselfe towards *Van*. To which place all the Souldiers of *Aleppo*, of *Tripoli*, of *Damasco*, of *Iurie*, and of *Palestina* were already gone by the way of *Caraemit*: for so they were commaunded to do, because they might auoyde the Cittie of *Erzurum*, from whence, by reason of the great dearth *Hassan* the Bassa, gonnour thereof was remooued, and coulde not keepe residence there, but withdrewe himselfe to *Chars*, where hee lay at greater ease and lesse charges. *Ferat* therefore made haste to *Van*, where hauing gathered all his Souldiers together, and made a reuision and newe surueigh of all his Armie, hee departed thence, and being presentlie come into the open and large Champaynes, hee marshalled them in such sorte, as though hee should haue bene prepared to fight the Battell. Wherein hee did imitate olde *Sinan* the Bassa, vwho although hee reaped small commendations for these his fained battells,

The IX. booke.

Ccc 2

whereof

Aduertisement from
Giaffer the
Bassa of Tauris,
to Generall Ferat.

Ferat in Erzurum.

Ferat at Van.

the marshalling of
Generall Ferat's
Armie.

400. peeces
of artillerie
with the
Generall.

Maxut-chan,
Guide of the
Armie.

Ferat departeth
from
Constantinople.

The plague at
Constantinople.

exceeding
dearth at Erzurum
and Aleppo.

whereof he made shew in the *Champeynes of Chielder*, yet notwithstanding hee shewed greate cunning and experience in matter of warre, for that hee woulde bee assured of the Arte and discipline of his Souldiers: without which, manie Armies in numbers infinite and in Armes terrible, haue bene defeated by few squadrons in number far fewer, and in Armes lesse fearfull, though in matter of Warre, and skill in fighting more cunning and experienced.

his Vauward.

And therefore for the Vaunt-garde of his Armie hee appointed the Bassa of *Mesopotamia*, with all his souldiers: a people watered on the one side with *Tigris*, and on the other side with *Euphrates*, partly infected with the fearfulness of the Arabians, and partly endued with the constancie of the Armenians: And of these, to the number of twelue thousande. In the Rereward hee set the Bassa of *Damasco*, Captaine of a Nation more famous than valiant, to the number of eight thousand: in which reckoning were all the people of *Soria*, of *Palæstina*, and of *Iudæa*, watered with *Jordan* and *Orontes*. In the bodie of the battell he placed himselfe with the souldiers of *Grecia*, of *Peloponnesus*, and of *Bithynia* to the number of eightene thousande. In the right Cornet there were marshalled the Bassaes of *Cilicia*, of *Pontus*, and of *Cappadocia*, and of all those places that are comprised vnder the name of *Caramania*, and *Natolia*, with all those peoples that are dwelling vpon the coast of *Pontus Euxinus*, vpon *Sangario* and vpon *Maander*, to the number of twelue thousande. In the left Cornet the Bassas of *Maras*, of *Erzurum* and of *Van* made the Wing, with the Souldiers of both the *Armeniaes*, and the *Sangiacchi* of the *Curdi*: watered with the Lakes *Tospite* and *Martiano*, dwelling in the middle betweene

The IX. booke.

tweene the Iberians and the Mesopotamians, on the one side frozen with the colde of *Taurus*, and on the other side warmed with the prospecte of the South, in all to the number of twelue thousande. This last Cornette was kept with a perpetuall watch by the Knight Marshall of the filde, and the other was defended with a continuall trench of artillery: And in them both were mustered the voluntarie Souldiers, that after so long warre being greedy of spoyle, and ambitious of glorie, were equallic diuided betweene them, to the number of twenty thousande. The Vauntgarde went alwayes a mile before the Armie, with two thousande Horse, and foure companies of the readiest light Horsmen to the number of three thousande: and before all these, foure or sixe Fore-runners or Spies on horsebacke. After the Auauantgarde rode the Master of the Kinges Horse, called the *Imbrahur Bassi*, with foure hundred Ianizzaries. Nexte after them followed foure hundred *Solacchi*, and then foure thousande Ianizzaries more, and presently after them, the Long-shot wrought in *Algier* and called *Sciomete*, being the ordinarie and perpetuall Guard of the Generall, who without any company by his side, sauing onely his twelue footmen, came next vpon them. And behinde him his Standerdes, his Drummes, his Trumpettes, and the whole bodie of his Battell: betweene vvhich and the Rere-vvarde followed his huge carriages for the necessarie vse of his Armie, and on both sides the two greate and large Cornettes before described. The watch of the night, whether the Armie were marching or lodged, was committed to the truste of the Bassaes of *Cilicia*, and *Natolia* aboue named. And thus had the Generall *Ferat* marshalled his Armie, with further direction that they shoulde

The IX. booke.

Ccc 3

The Marshall of the fild.
Voluntarie
souldiers
20000
Master of the
Horse.

The Ianizzaries and the
Solacchi.

The Sciomete
the place of
the Generall.

the carriages

the night-
watch com-
mitted to the
Bassas of Ci-
licia and Ca-
ramapia

not hazarde battell with the enemie, but vpon certaine hope that they might shunne and auoyde such cruell and memorable slaughters, as the laste yeare vnder the vnhappy gouernement of *Osman*, had left heapes of deade Carcasses almoste euen and leuell vwith the tops of hilles: And vwithall hee failed not to comferte and encourage all such, as quaked in their heartes at the remembrance of those mischances that they had scene or heard.

The Generall was greatlie perplexed in his minde with continuall feare, least his enemies shoulde come vpon him with some sudden assaulte: and the same also that was spread before in *Amasia* and after confirmed in *Erzurum*, of the arriual of the Prince *Amze* at *Tauris*, with such an Armie, as was publikelie reported, did euerie moment encrease his irksome cogitations. But on the other side, hee reposed great confidence in the conspiracy that was plotted against the life of the Prince, with the priuie of *Alyculi-Chan* the Protector and Champion of *Abas* the *Mirze* of *Hert*: Who vnder collour of accompanying the Prince to assilt his forces, had resolutelie concluded with himselfe, and absolutely promised *Abas* (hauing also giuen intelligence thereof to the Turkish Generall) that hee would rid the Prince *Amze* of his life, or at least (which he thought might more easilie be brought to passe) in the sundrie reuolutions and variable chances of the battell at some time or other, to make him fall aliue into the handes of *Ferat*, and so to settle his Lord and Master *Abas*, in his estate. Vpon these treacheries *Ferat* grounding himselfe, began with greater confidence to dispose his designementes, and somewhat lesse to feare the reportes of the Fame, that blazed abroad the huge preparations of

The IX. booke.

Perfia

Perfia against him: which preparations in trueth, as by moste wicked deuices and malicious conspiracies they were turned quite contrarie from that end, whereunto the Prince *Amze* had continuallie appointed them, so if they had bene employd with such faith and fidelitie, as so righteous a cause required: without all doubt the writers of our time shoulde haue had in this four-skore and sixth yeare, matter ynough to shewe, and represent to the vvhole worlde such accidentes as shoulde be nothing inferiour to those of the yeare before going. And *Perfia* should haue scene some reuenge at the least, of those most mischieuons iniuries that it hath receaued. But forasmuch as rebellion and discorde, those two infernall Ministers of the Deuill, haue for the vtter vndoing and ouerthrowe of the glorie of *Perfia*, continually fauoured the Turkish Armies. No maruell it is, that the Persian Nation cannot vaunt of any reuenge, that they haue taken of anie one indignity offered vnto them by their enemies: and that our Writers cannot choose but write of the true and vndoubted victories of the Turks, and the bare shadowes of the Persian exploytes. Which notwithstanding (but all in vaine) our Christian Nations, euen vntill this day, although they doe see the manifest prospering, and euident conquestes, which the Turkes haue had in diuers States and Countreyes, yet doe they easilie belecue, because they doe moste earnestlie desire them to bee true. But wee vwill not fayle as trulie as possiblie wee may, to reporte, whatsoeuer wee vnderstande to haue happened: that out of our writings the Readers may take such aduise, as out of such aduertisementes may bee gathered.

The IX. booke.

Cec 4

The

The General
Ferat made
acquainted
with treache-
ries in Persia.

The Persian
Prince at
Tauris.

The cause
why the
Prince at-
tempteth not
the winning
of the Fort.

The Persian Prince arriued at *Tauris* with the greatest parte of his Armie, about the twentie eighth of the Moone *Regeb*, which may bee about the latter end of *Julie*: In which place euery body thought verily he would haue stayed, and attended the conquest of the Forte: which now hee might haue vtterlie destroyed with more ease than before he could haue done, because the souldiers that were in it were reduced to a very small number, and those that did remayne were greatly impayred by sundrie inconueniences, and withall shrewdly terrified with the expectation of the Princes arriual. Notwithstanding this common opinion, and publike conceite was vtterlie frustrated. For *Amze* did not onely forbear to attempt this expugnation, but hee scarce taried any while in the Citie of *Tauris*. The cause of this his so doing, is diuerslie, yea and vainlie reported. The Persians and all their adherentes say, that Prince tooke this course, not because hee was not able immediately to besiege the Forte, and easilie to haue gotten the victorie ouer it, (for they did not sticke verie glorioussly to vaunt, that it was in his power so to doe,) but onely because if hee had taken and destroyed the Forte, then would the Turkes haue forborne to come to *Tauris*, and so the Prince should haue loste the opportunitie of ioyning battell with them, and plaguing the Turkish Armie with such losses and discomfitures, as hee earnestly desired to afflict them withall: meaning notwithstanding to destroy the Forte, after hee should haue satisfied his longing to bee reuenged on his enemies Campe. Others cannot beleue that the Prince would relinquish so necessarie and honourable enterprise for any such respect: for they were of opinion, that *Amze* could not haue had a

The IX. booke. †

more

more glorious reuenge, nor more grieuoussly endomaged his enemies, then by ouerthrowing that Forte, which to the greates daunger and perill of the Persians was erected euen in the midst of them: yea that Forte, for the building and accomplishment whereof, they had compassed all those mischiefes the laste yeare. Another cause also there is yeelded of this his so doing: And that is, the infirmitie which the Prince knew to be in himselfe, as a man vnacquainted with the dangerous attempts of a siege, verie fearefull of Artillery, and more corragious in anie other kinde of battell, then these that are vsed to be foughten vnder the walles of any place. But let it be that he was lead by eyther of these two respectes, it maketh no greates matter: The trueth is, that *Amze* with all the troupes, which hee brought with him (the number and order whereof shall bee shortly hereafter declared vnto you) did scarce make any stay in *Tauris*. For he had vnderstood, that before the Cittie of *Salmas Zeinell* the *Bey*, by nation a *Curdo*, and by office the Bassa of that Cittie, had encamped himselfe: whome hee determined suddenly to set vpon, and chastise, not onely for his rebellion, whereby of a Persian hee became a Turke, but also for many other his insolent behauiours, which hee had diuers times vsed against the liberties and priuiledges of the Citties of *Persia*. This determination hee put in execution, and being accompanied with twelue thousande Souldiers, hee rode to *Salmas*, where finding *Zeinell* with all his people, hee gaue him the assault. *Zeinell* was more readie to flie and make escape, then minded to fight or make rescues: and his Forces also as ready to followe his example: who beeing more intentiue to saue themselves, with their householde stuffe and other im-

The IX. Booke.

Ddd

plements,

Zeinello the
Bassa discom-
fited by the
Persian
Prince.

The citie of
Salmas also
sacked by
him.

The Bassa of
Reiuan put to
flight & dis-
comfited by
the Prince.

plementes to resist their enemies, the more they fought by all meanes to preserue their liues, and slippe out of the Persians handes, the more they fell into the spoyle, and were woonderfully ill entreated, so that the Bassa himselve with a fewe other fugitiues, coule hardly saue themselves in the cloatest and darkest corners thereabouts. And in this sorte was *Zeinello* and the Cittie of *Salmas*, that was committed to his charge, and detence, endommaged and left for a praie to the Conquerours: Who entring into their streetes, houses, and Temples, sacked and spoyled the same, exercising thereon such cruelties and indignities, as partlie the naturall desires of souldiers doe vse to practise, and partely such as the Turkes themselves shewed vpon them (as it were for an example howe to doe in the like case) in that miserable and most vnfortunate sacking of *Tauris* the laste yeare. Thelike spoyles did the Persian Armie make in all those quarters rounde aboute: and so woulde peraduenture haue returned to *Tauris*, but that certaine Spies arrined vpon them, who brought aduertisement, howe the Bassa of *Reiuan*, being issued out of his Fortresse with fiftene hundred Harquebusiers, had committed the like outrages in the villages and fieldes thereabouts, as the Prince had done about *Salmas*. With this newes *Amze* was greatlie moued, and immediatlie raising all his Armie, he journeyed euen vntill night, towards *Reiuan*, and not farre from the Cittie encountred the Bassa: who discovering his enemies forces a farre off, beganne in great disorder to flie and retire into his Fort, leauing the greatest parte of his Souldies, being nothing so speedie in flight as himselve, to the fury of the Prince, who slewe them all, and exercised all mischief, that might be

The IX. booke.

de-

deuised, and al terrible maner of crueltie in those quarters.

But notwithstanding all these wrathfull conflictes and broyles of warre, the two famous Prisoners, *Ebrain-Chan* and *Amurat* the Bassa, of whom we haue made mention in the former books of this historie, ceased not, by peaceable entercourse and treatie about their own liberties, to procure that they might interchangeably be enlarged and restored to their owne Lordes. This practise continued verie hote for manie dayes together, and at the laste the Turkes were contented to enlarge *Ebrain-Chan*, vpon condition that *Amurat* also might be set at libertie. But the offer was thought to be verie vnequall: For (say the Persians) *Ebrain-Chan*, was emprisoned against all right, by the dishonourable treacherie and infidelitie of *Amurath*, to the great contempt and vtter subuersion of al lawes, which towards Embassadours ought most sacredlie and religiously to bee maintayned in any cause whatsoeuer: and *Ebrain-Chan* ought not in any respect to be kept in prison, but with most manifest iniustice and iniquitie. Whereas on the other side *Amurath* the Bassa was lawfully taken captiue, and brought into thraldome, not by deceite of wordes, nor breach of faith, but in plaine battell, euen with the daunger of those that tooke him prisoner, and to bee shorte, agreeable, and according to the lawes of warre, and Enemy-Nations. And therefore so vnequall and vnproportionable an exchange was not onelie vtterlie to bee denyed and reiected, but also vnreasonable on the Turkes behalfe to be offered. These sounde and effectuell reasons of the Persians coule not be answered, but eyther by money or by some other meanes that mighte supplie the defeates of the Turkes in equalitie:

The IX. booke.

Ddd 2

where-

A treatie to
exchange the
two prisoners
Ebrain and
Amurat.

the treatie of
enlarging the
two prisoners
is in vaine.

Whereunto they woulde neuer agree to yelde, and so the two Captaines remayned still in prison as thy did before.

At the verie same time, in the confines of *Tripolie*, certaine *Drusians* of the territorie of *Manogli*, who after the departure of *Ebrain* the Bassa were quietlie and peaceable retired to their owne homes, beganne to raise new stirres and troubles. Whereuppon the *Drusian* Captaines, that were carried prisoners to *Constantinople* by *Ebrain* the Bassa, and were nowe vpon the poynt to bee set at libertie, and to returne to their woonted habitations; at the reporte of these fresh troubles and tumultes, were againe restrayned, and clapt vp in close custodie, and in great daunger also to haue lost their liues. Nowe the rumour of these stirres was this: that *Manogli* perceauiug all the Souldiers and garrisons to bee now departed, for the warre of *Persia*, as wee haue tolde you, and none other prouision sent for the defence of those places, hee determined to issue out into the fielde, and not onelie to reuenge the death of his people, which vniustlie, and by treacherie they had suffered, but also to licke himselfe whole, and by a kinde of violent restitution to bee recompensed for all those bribes and presentes, which with so manie shifts and subtilties, as before is declared, were extorted from him by the Messengers and Stratagemes of *Ebrain* the Bassa. For which purpose, beeing issued out into the playnes and Champeignes of *Tripoli*, and hauing first wasted and sacked all the territorie of *Ebnemansur* and of his other enemies, hee forced all that Countrey with sudden inuasions and inroades, euen verie neere to the Citties of *Balbecke* and *Tripolie*. As

for the defence and rescue of *Balbeck*, *Acra* woulde not stirre a foote, fearing belike least hee might bee endangered by the valour and resolution of *Manogli*, wherewith hee was verie well acquainted. But for *Tripoli*, there were diuerse Souldiers, that remayned in that Cittie, and liued as it were in Idleness, which with a greate sum of money they had purchased at the handes of the couetous Officers of the Sultan Emperour. And these souldiers beganne to bestirre themselves lustelie. In this number of idle mates was one *Mamut Bey*, sometime a *Sangiaccho*, but nowe cassiered and put out of Office, who by meanes of his bribes hauing auoyded to serue in these warres of *Persia*, imagined with himselfe, that such a fitte occasion, whereby hee might shewe himselfe willing and readie to repress the insolent inuasions of the *Drusian*, might make him deserue so well at the Sultans handes, that hee woulde bestowe vpon him the office of Customer in that Cittie, which so greatlie he desired. And therefore hee before any of the rest, displaying his Standard, and mustering all his bandes of Souldiers, in so much that hee did not spare the verie *Caddi* and the *Destardar* (that is to say, the Iudge and Chamberlaine of the Cittie) but made them to ride out with him, he roade to encounter the *Drusians* and to ioyne battell with them, hoping eyther to destroy them, or honourable to put them to flight: Or els (as others doe discourse of the matter) in deede not to meete with them at all, but onelie to beare away the commendation, that he was readie with his weapons in his hande for the publike defence of the Cittie, and custodie of his Lordes Countreyes. These Souldiers of *Tripolie* were not farre departed from their Cittie, but

the Drusians presentlie confronted them, and with continuall shot of Harquebusies began to disorder and diuide them. But the people of *Tripolie*, although indeede somewhat negligently, yet did they continue the skirmish a great while, and would peradventure also haue endured the battell a longer time, but that in the sight of all the Armie, to the generall astonishment of them all, the *Caddi* or Iudge of their Cittie was shot starke deade with a Peece, and fallen from his horse: Who as among all other men that came out of the Cittie should haue bene the last man that should haue entermedled in such like actions, so was he the first man that was slain in the fight. At this spectacle there arose such a confused feare among the Turkes, that the *Defiadar* or Chamberlaine of the Cittie, without any longer stay fled as fast as hee could into *Tripolie*, and all the rest after him. The *Sangiaccho* also, who was the chiefeft and busiest instrument of rayeing these stirres, had his Standerde bearer slaine, and his Ensigne taken away, with manie other losses that happened besides among the baser sorte. Aduertisementes hereof was sent to *Constantinople*, and presentlie thereupon, the Drusian Captaines (as wee tolde you before,) were againe restrayned: *Mendel*, as a great confederate with *Manogli*, that had raised all these troubles, and *Mansurogli* with his complices, as friendes vnto *Acra*, that would yeelde no defence in so greate a necessitie. Howbeit the Turkish King dispatched away *Aly Bassa* borne at *Aleppo*, with the title of the Bassa of *Damasco*, and with authoritie to muster fresh Souldiers, and so vvhollie to attende the vtter subuersion of *Manogli*. But comming thither, hee founde no innouation at all, but his presence in that

The IX. booke.

The Caddi of Tripoli slaine by the Drusians.

The Drusians becaue the Sangiaccho of his Standerd, and kill his standerdbearer.

Aly the Bassa sent from Constantinople into Soria against the Drusians.

Countrey serued rather for a reconciliation and peace making amongst them, then for moouing any vvarre againste them. And in trueth, if euer at anie time there vvere good cause to auoyde newe vvarre, at this time of all other it vvas moste necessarie to auoyde it: because neither the common treasure, nor abundance of victualles, nor the desire or readinesse of the Souldier did yeelde anie courage to enterprise such troubles: Besides, the huge number of Locustes, vvhich vvere in such abundance ouer all the Countrey of *Soria*, that in the memorie of all the oldest men there liuing, neuer vvas there seene so greate a multitude of those Excrementes in those Quarters, did as a moste horrible spectacle mightilie encrease the vniuersall feare of grievous calamities to ensue thereupon.

Nowe the Persian Prince hauing made an ende of those outroades and spoyle, vvhich before wee haue mentioned, retyred himselfe to *Tauris*, and towardes his Fathers Campe, gathered together all the reste of his Armye, that vvas novve arriued. The Order, Number, and Condition vvhence it is not amisse to describe, in such manner and sorte as I hearde it reported at *Aleppo*, vvhether I made diligent and due enquirie of these newes there. They reported, that vvhether vwith the Souldiers of *Heri*, the Turcomannes, and the bandes of *Gheilan*, and vvhether vwith all the reste of the Armie, sent from the Citties that vvere subiecte and obedient to the King of *Persia*: The Prince had gathered fourtie thousande Souldiers: whereof, notwithstanding that I and others had some doubt and suspicion, yet was it commonlie maintained by conferences among

The Army of the Persian prince.

the Turkes and Persians, and by letters among the Persian Merchantes, and afterwarde it was confirmed also to bee true in deede. From *Heri*, vnder the conduct of *Alyculi-Chan*, they say there came an Armie of eight thousande: From *Gheslan*, vnder the gouernment of a sonne of *Amet-Chans*, they say there came seuen thousande Horsemen: Of the Turcomannes there were gathered together about sixe thousand: And all the rest leauied by the subiect and obedient Citties of *Persia*, whereof wee haue often made mention before. And besides all this multitude, the King was guarded by his ordinary Guard of *Churehi* and *Eshahul*, whose number and necessarie prouisions we haue already described in the second booke. The companie of *Heri*, with some part of the Turcomannes were dispatched by the Prince vnder the conduct of *Alyculi-Chan*, to encounter the Turkish Generall: And the like order giuen to *Emanguli-Chan*, who had the Souldiers of *Media*, and the borderers of *Armenia*, vnder his gouernment. Both these Captaines had in speciall charge, that in the moste narrowe and most deceitfull places by the way they should meete and receiue their enemies Armie, and worke them the greatest mischiefe and losse that possibly they coule. All which, *Amze* did thus order and appoint, because hee thought by this meanes to weaken his enemies Forces, and then being so weakened, to come vpon them with a fresh bartell, and vterlie to destroy them at their arriual to *Tauris*.

Both the Captaines departed accordinglie, making shewe that they woulde with all affection obey and accomplish the commaundementes of their Prince: But
The IX. booke.

The ordering
of the Army
of Persia.

The order of
the Persian
prince to annoy the Army
of Ferat.

neuer was there heard any seruice of moment put in execution by them. For *Alyculi* went about to alleage reasons and excuses, why they shoulde surcease from meeting with the Turkes: and *Emanguli* being as yet vterly ignorant of the wicked purposes and mischieuous treacheries of *Alyculi*, followed also his example. But these excuses and delays of these two Persian Captaines, the Turkish Generall tooke leisure, without any losse or hindrance at all, to arriue at *Tauris*, and to place the expected succours within the Fort. At what time, by good hap, but by what meanes I knowe not, the Prince was certified of the malignant intent of *Alyculi*, and of the designementes, which many of the Sultans had lately contriued together, to betray the Prince alieue into the handes of the Turkish Captaine. Of which suspicion *Amze* being greatlie affraide, hee durst not onely not trust himselfe to persourne those battelles that hee had detremined to persourne, but quite abandoning all this noble and honourable enterprise, hee wholly employed all his care and studie, for the safe custodie of his owne person, and to leaue the triumph of the matter in the power of the Turkes. And thus those great hopes and expectations, which the Persians had conceaued of compassing verie famous exploits against their enemies, did not onely prooue vaine and come to no good issue, but contrariwise by this discouerie they were conuerted into moste daungerous disturbances, and all *Persia* thereby endured sundrie alterations and reuolutions of most important consequences: For both *Alyculi-Chan* and his Complices were pursued by the Prince as Rebelles and Traytors, and also *Abas Merize* of *Heri* was manifestlie discouered for a wicked
The IX. booke.

Prince Amze
retireth for
suspition of
rebellion.

Eee

and

and treacherous contriuer of his brothers death. Whereupon the common mischiefes were encreased more then euer they were before, and the publike calamities yeelded greater hopes to the Turkes, then they had euer conceaued and fostered in all this warre.

Besides these designementes, there were others also, that contrarie to all expectation came to the like unfortunate issue, laide and plotted by *Simon* in *Georgia*, who by the direction of the Persian Prince had vnitd together his Neighbours the Georgians, for the accomplishing of most noble and honourable enterprises. And the designements of *Simon* were these: That at such time, as he thought most conuenient for sending fresh succours vnto *Teflis* in *Georgia*, he meant himselfe in person, with the companie of seuen or eight thousand Georgians, and with a number of horse-loades of money (if not true loades indeed, yet seeming in apparance so to bee) to present himselfe vnder the Fort of *Teflis*: and to the Turkish Bassa, Gouvernour of that Castle, to deliuer a counterfeite commaundement wherein it should appeare, that King *Amurath* did giue the Bassa to vnderstand, that by *Simon* being now conuerted to the Turkish Religion, hee had sent fittie thousande *Chechins*, and other muntion for the Souldiers: and that he had also giuen vnto *Simon* full commission and authoritie at his pleasure to manage and dispose of that Fort: and therefore that hee should entertaine *Simon* and giue him credence therein. This his designement *Simon* put in execution, hoping thereby without force of Armes and without any other inconuenience to make himselfe Lord and Maister of that Castle. But the Turkish Bassa, although both the forme, and the tenour, and the Seale of the commaundement were verie like to the ordina-

The IX. booke.

ric

The Plot of
Simon the
Georgian.

rie manner of the Court (wherein *Simon* had vsed greate care and diligence:) and although he thought it also verie likeli to bee true, because he was reuolted to the Turkish religion, as hee had sayned in the counterfeite commaundement, and that for all these causes he ought to receaue and entertaine *Simon* into the Fort: Yet *Simon* wanting one speciall thing, which in such like cases is a matter of greatest importance, he was deceaued in his expectation, and with great shame and derision forced to retire, and so to auoyde the Artillery, that by the direction of the Bassa rayned like a Tempest vppon his Souldiers. Nowe the thing which *Simon* wanted, was a certaine token deliuered to the Turkish Bassa, when hee was first appointed Gouvernour of that Castle: For to euerie one that is left as Lieutenant in such Fortes, ordinarily in this warre, with all secrecie, and straitest conditions of allegiance and fidelitie, there is deliuered a Counterfeite of the Marke, which shall be vsed by him, that the next yeare following shall be receiued with succours into the Fort. Which being required of *Simon* by the Turkish Bassa, *Simon* knewe not what answer to make, and because he could not so doe, he was discovered to be a treacherous deceauer and for such a one was he presentlie pursued in such and so eager manner as people included within a castle wall, could in so sudden an occasion vse against him. And in this sort, did all the designementes and hopes of the Persians vanish to nothing, and the reporte published in *Italie*, and particularlie in *Rome* of the taking of this Fort was quite dashed and found to be false, for that the fortunate Turkes remained in quiet possession of the Countreyes which they had conquered.

Whē the Turkish General had placed his succors in the
The IX. booke.

Ecc 2

Castel

Simon when
his plot came
to no good
issue, retireth
with losse
and shame.

General Ferat
hauing suc-
coured the
fort, retur-
neth toward
Erzurum.

Succours sent
to Teflis.

Castle of *Tauris*, leaving for the custody thereof *Giaffer* the Bassa with his former companies, hee returned to- wardes *Erzurum*, hauing first caused a Fort to be erected at *Chucchine Tauris*, a place nere vnto *Tauris*: another at *Coy*, and a thirde at *Cum*, which sometimes belonged to *Ebrain-Chan* now prisoner at *Erzurum*, as we tolde you before. And in euerie one of the saide Fortes he left a ne- cessarie number of Souldiers, with sufficient munition and maintenance for them. Hee sent also after wardes to *Teflis* in *Georgia* the succours, which they there had long expected and desired, and without any hinderance or difficultie verie willinglie receiued, because the counter- seyt of the *Marke* was well knowne vnto them, which before to *Simon* was both vtterlie vnkowne, and also greatly hurtfull.

But the Persian Prince hauing hunted *Alyculi-Chan* out of the quarters of *Tauris*, thought himselfe wholly de- liuered from the greate feare of treason and rebellion, wherein he liued; and therefore in as great haste as hee could, he put himselfe on his iourney towardes *Genge*. In which place hauing gathered together a good number of Souldiers, hee determined to remooue thence, and to stop the succours for *Teflis*, and so to procure the vtter ouerthrowe of the conductors thereof. Hee had alwayes found *Emanguli-Chan* to be both faithfull and wise, and in him he reposed an assured confidence for perfourming of any enterprise that he had in his hand, and communica- ted with him euery deuise that he had conceaued in these warres. And therefore hee made heade and ioyned with him, and lodging most familiarlie within his Citty, hee stayed there for the setting in order, and disposing of his foresaide designment, being verie desirous not to

The IX. Booke.

suffer

suffer this season to slip, without signification to the world of some notable noueltie which might be correspondent to the same, that of matters passed and perfourmed the yeare before, was now spread and published abroad ouer all the world. But when he was euen at the verie fayrest to put this his desire in execution, and when least of all hee feared any treacherie or treason, vppon a sudden in the night time, he was miserablie stricken through the bodie by an Eunuch of his, that guarded him: and so the most re- splendent and bright shining lampe that euer was in *Persia*, was vtterly extinguished.

What was the occasion therof and who procured his death, diuers & sundry are the opinions of men. Some think that his brother *Abas Mirize* of *Hers*, who had before con- spired to cause him to bee betrayed into the handes of the Turkish Generall, had now by force of money and giftes perswaded the wicked Eunuch thereunto. Others deeme, that his owne Father, being become verie desirous to see *Abas* settled in the kingdome, did procure his death: which notwithstanding in mine opinion hath no poynt of proba- bility. Diuers others do reason the matter diuerslie. But wee, not onelie are not able to affirme the certen truethe of this accident, but also haue scarce any heart to testifie to the world, that thus or thus in truethe his death was pro- cured. For we are not minded to set downe any discourse for a truethe, in such matters as haue happened in these warres, since wee returned and haue remayned in *Italy*: to the ende that wee woulde not diminish that credite and good opinion, which we know our Readers haue iustly giuen to all thinges hether to written by vs, as vnto things that wee were most desirous to vnderstand for certenties, by such good meanes, as we haue already named in our

The IX. booke.

Ecc 3

Epistle

The Persian
Prince slaine
by the trea-
son of one of
his Eunuches

Epistle to the Readers. And we in the meane time wil expect that some other VVriter will pursue these aduentures in such sort as shall seeme best vnto him. For touching our selues: being wearie of the many diuersities which wee daylie heare by aduertisements out of the East countrey, we haue had no hart at all, to describe, what hath happened therein, in the yeare fourscore and seuenth. But by the fauour of the Readers here we haue thought good to make a full point.



A Letter to the VVorshipful SIGNOR MARIO CORRADO,

Wherein is prooued, that Tauris is not Terua, as Iouius writeth: nor Tigranoama, as Negro taketh it: nor Tigranocerta, as others doe thinke: but Ecbathana, as Ortelius and Anania doe iudge.



Orshipfull Sir, I haue alwayes made that reckoning of your VVorships counsels and aduises, which your vertue deserueth, and especially touching those matters whereof it pleased you to aduertise mee, at such time as I was resident in this Citie, and so kindlie entertained therein with all curteous and bountifull entertainment. For whatsoeuer I could possibly

possible obserue in the Historie of the VVarres betweene the Turkes and Persians, both concerning words and also concerning matters, I haue endeouored by all meanes to reduce vnto that note which you deliuered vnto mee, and haue not fayled, asmuch as my skill could reach, to put in execution all your good preceptes and aduertisements. Only there remayneth in this historie one thing which as yet is not throughlie iustified: and that is, mine opinion touching the Citie of *Tauris*, which your VVorship by reason of your doubtting thereof, made mee suspect at the first, but afterwards it pleased you to allow and confirme to be the best and soundest. And although I haue freely and boldly set downe, that *Tauris* is not *Terua*, as *Iouius* writeth, but *Ecbathana*, as manie others both before and after *Iouius* doe take it: and although I find manie reasons whereby I haue bene perswaded so freely to auow it: Notwithstanding, when I considered that this was a matter of great importance in this Historie, to entreat of the true finding out and acknowledgment of a Cittie, for the conquest whereof, almost all these troubles of warres were principally raised: to the end that all things might the more plainlie appeare, I resolved to publish these my reasons, and particularly to send the to your VV. not only because your first encouraged me with liuely arguments to approue this particularity, being of it self a very important matter, yea & the more importat in regard of the authority of such men as are of the contrarie opinion: but also because you were a great helper vnto me with your owne priuate study to furnish mee with so goodly a number of reasons for the same. By twelue arguments therefore, me thinks I may certainly and demonstratiuely reason, that *Tauris* cannot be the *Terua* of *Ptolomey*, but ought indeed to be called the ancient *Ecbathana*.

My

the first reason.

My first reason is, because *Strabo* teacheth vs, that the Poole *Martian*, or *Martian*, or *Margian* (call it as yee will) that which is now tearmed the Poole *Actamar*, is situate in the confines of great *Armenia*, and stretcheth euen as far as the confines of *Media Atropatia*. And in the twelfth book of his *Geographie*, it is manifestlie seene, that there is either verie little or no quantitie of countrie or people at all betweene the *Martian* Poole, and *Media* the greater. The same may be collected out of *Ptolomie*, who (as it seemeth) doth place the forenamed Poole, rather in the entrance of *Media* the greater, than in the latter end of great *Armenia*. Out of this certaine trueth I gather this foundation. The *Martian* Poole is in the confines of the *Medes* and of the *Armenians*: and therefore it must needs followe, that if *Tauris* should be *Terna*, it must either be in the West, or in the West Southwest, or in the West Northwest, or els in the verie Northwest of the saide Poole: for in the South or in the North I doo not beleue that any man doth place it, and it hee should so doe, hee should commit an error, not onely worthy of correction but also of chastisement. But if *Tauris* bee *Ecbathana*, it must either bee in the East, or in the East Southeast, or in the Southeast, or in the East Northeast, or els in the verie Northeast. For much lesse will any man be so bolde as to place it in the South, or in the North of the saide Poole, and whosoeuer shoulde so place it, hee shoulde commit a double error. *Terna* indeed: according to *Ionius*, and according to that which the discription of *Ptolomey* doeth inferre, is (as a man may say) in the verie center and midst of great *Armenia*, and consequentlie it muste bee in the West, or West Southwest, or West Northwest of the saide pool.

The IX. booke.

Whereup-

Wherevpon, if *Tauris* should be *Terna*, then should *Tauris* haue the very selfe same situation. But both sence and reason, yea & *Ionius* himselfe, & all other doo with one accorde confesse, that *Tauris* is in the East of the forenamed Poole, and by a good quantitie of grounde distant from it. And therefore it remaineth, that *Tauris* is not *Terna*: but *Ecbathana* being a good way distant in the East of the saide poole, a man may conclude, that the verie situation and auncient ruines of *Ecbathana* haue yeelded matter and stuffe to this new *Tauris*.

And somuch the more likely, because all the Marchantes and souldiers that vse the viage from *Van* to *Tauris*, and from *Tauris* to *Van* (being a place situate as it were on the easterne banks of the *Martian* poole) doo vniformly testifie, that in their traueiling from *Van* to *Tauris* they haue their faces looking towards the East: and in their returne from *Tauris* to *Van* they haue their faces turned towards the West: and that they passe through certaine vallies between certain mountaines which peraduenture may be the toppes of the *Caspian* mountaine.

The like testimonie is geuen by many of the souldiers that went to *Tauris* with *Osman*. Besides whose testimony, we may also make a sound coniecture by the iourney which that army made. For the said armie being gathered together at the city of *Erzurum*, (which out of all doubt wee must hold to be *Simbra* or *Sinibra* in *Ptolomee*) and by the way of *Hassan-Chalasi* and *Chars*, passing by *Euphrates*, and leauing *Araxis* on the leaft hand, it arrived at *Van* vpon the *Martian* Poole. And from *Van* it came to the champaines of *Caldaran*, and thence to *Coy*. From which place it passed afterwarde to *Merent*, to *Soffin* (which peraduenture may be the auncient *Soffia* of the *Medes*)

Eff

and

The second reason.

the third reason.

and so to *Tauris*. After that *Tauris* was sacked, and the Forte erected there, the armie retourned to *Van*, & from *Van* by the wonted way to *Erzurum*. Now doo not I know, to what end all this people should go to *Van* and to *Coy*, if *Tauris* were in the sight of *Terua*, which is on this side of *Van*, five degrees or thereabouts. For it had beene much better for them by a direct course to haue passed from *Chars* to *Terua*, then first to go to *Van*, & then to come to *Chars*, and so to *Erzurum*. Neither can *Iouius* be excused, in saying, that in those dayes they had no such way. For he himselfe in the three and thirtieth booke of his histories, (reciting the viage which *Soliman* made, at such time as retiring from *Tauris*, which he had sacked, he iourneyed toward *Mesopotamia*,) doth expressly write, that *Soliman* in his returne first arriued at *Coy*, and to the Champaines of *Caldaran*. And a little after he addeth, that *Tamas* pursuing *Soliman* came to *Tauris*, and from *Tauris* to *Coy* and to the *Caldaran* Champaines. By which voyages *Iouius* might easily perceauce, that *Tauris*, (which in his fourtinth booke he situateth more toward the East then *Coy* is, by the space of foure score miles or thereabouts) by this means must be in *Media* the Greater, where *Ecbathana* is: and that consequently it could not bee thought to bee *Terua*, which by *Ptolomee* himselfe is placed on the west not onely of *Coy*, but also of the Margian Poole.

This opinion is also fortified and made manifest by the authoritie of *Ptolomee*, who placeth *Terua* for latitude in 78. degrees, and the Martian Poole, 83. degrees. and so setteth *Terua* more towards the west, then that poole is, by foure whole degrees. Howbeit if this *Terua* should be *Tauris*, as *Iouius* will haue it, then should it bee on the east

The fourth
reason.

east side of the said Poole, not onely 4. degrees but five or six degrees. By these selfe same reasons me thinketh that *Negro* is likewise conuinced, who in his Geographic The errour of Negro and others. doth resolutely write, that *Tauris* is *Tigranoama*. And with *Negro* are those also confuted, which say that *Tauris* is *Tigranocerta*. For *Tigranocerta* is by *Ptolomee* situated on the West of *Tigranoama*, and *Tigranoama* on the west of the Martian Poole, by the space of three whole degrees. Besides that *Strabo* writeth, that *Tigranocerta* was aboute the riuer of *Euphrates*, from which riuer *Tauris* is distant more then twentie daies iourney of sumpter-horses.

Moreover another argument may be framed in this The first reason. manner. From *Tauris* to *Casbin* at this day it is no more then nine daies iourney: & euey daies iourney may be reckoned after five and twenty miles or thereabouts: which besides that I can iustifie it with the greatest certainty, that may be (next to a mans owne sight) is also confirmed by *Barbaro*, and by others according to *Ramusius*. Howbeit this iourney could not be finished in so few daies, if *Tauris* were in the situation of *Terua*, considering that from *Terua* onelie to the verie entraunce of the Martian Lake therefall out three degrees, much more to *Casbin* which is in the midst of *Media* the Greater. For vnto *Casbin* the way wold fall out to bee far greater for number of miles, of daies-iournies, and of degrees.

Those also that going from *Tauris* doo trauell in a direct line towards the North, do cleere this for a manifest truth. For they report, that after a long iourney, hauing first passed ouer certain mountaines, they doo arriue vpon the Southerne side of the Caspian sea, euen directly wherethose hauens of the sea of *Tauris* are, whereof *Bar-*

The sixth reason

baro speaketh, A thing that was neuer read to haue happened vnto those, that traueiling from *Terua* doo go in a direct lyne towards the North: for they alwaies leaue the saide sea on their right hande, and went into the verie middest of the *Isthmus*, which is a narrowe peece of land situate betweene the Caspian and Euxine seas: as it may sensibly bee iudged, by the right measure of *Ptolomees* Table, without any further reading of other wryters or information of traueiling straungers.

The seuenth
reason.

The custome also, which the kinges of *Media* obserued in spending the Sommer season at *Ecbathana*, as a Cittie more cold, more northerne, and more subiect to the winds, seemeth to me to be no small argument for maintenance of myne opinion. For by that custome I doo coniecture, that *Terua* being one of the midland Citties of *Armenia* must needes be lesse cold, and lesse subiect to snowes and windes then *Tauris* is at this day. Whereof all men do with one consent agree, that it is a cold, and a snowie Cittie, and euen in the sommer time subiect to the continuall blastes of the windes.

The eight
reason.

Next hereunto may bee added the situation of *Terua*, which in *Ptolomee* is placed betweene *Euphrates* & *Araxis*, and yet somewhat distant from both the saide riuers towards the South: which doth manifestly declare that *Terua* cannot be *Tauris*, because *Tauris* is not onely at this day beyond *Araxis*, but is also beyond the Caspian Sea, whereinto *Araxis* doth discharge it selfe.

The ninth
reason.

A man may also drawe no slender argument, from those that goe from *Tauris* to *Ormuz* or *Armuz*, which we now call, the Island in the Persian sea, from whence they fetch their pearles and other precious things, although in deed

deed it be otherwise somewhat vnhappely seated by reason of the excessiue heate that raigneth therein. These traueilers leauing the Caspian mountaines on their right hand, and not troubling themselves either with climbing ouer them, or with ferrying ouer *Euphrates* or *Tigris*, and without touching either of *Mesopotamia*, or *Babylonia*, or turning to *Van* or to the Mantian Marish, do ascend vppwardes towards *Siras* in *Persia*, & going as it were southward, they come at last to the Persian sea. So that if *Tauris* were *Terua*, and so in the middle region of the greater *Armenia*, then should they not need to go towards *Siras*, but they must of necessity passe ouer the Caspian mountaines, or ferrie ouer *Euphrates* or *Tigris*, or els trauell the rough *Mesopotamia*, or tourne themselves towards the Mantian Marish, or towards *Babylonia*.

With the like reason may a man confirme this to be true, by those that passe from *Bitlis*, (a famous Cittie in *Armenia*) to go to *Tauris*. For they must of necessity trauell ouer the Caspian mountaines, and still to iourney eastward, leauing behind them the Mantian marish, the Cittie of *Coy*, and the *Caldaran* champaines: which whether they be the Champaines of *Araxis*, or some other neere vnto them, let other men vse their owne iudgment: for wee can hardly certify the truth of that particularitie. But if *Tauris* were *Terua*, which is in the middest of Great *Armenia*, then should they not neede to make this iourney. For neither should they trauell so much towards the east, neither should they leaue behind them either *Coy*, or the Mantian Marish, or the *Caldarane* Champaines.

The tenth
reason.

This opinion of mine is no lesse confirmed to be true, by others also, that comming from the furthest partes of the East Indies, doo first arriue at *Cassan* a famous Citty of

The eleuenth
reason.

the Persian kings, and then trauell to *Tauris*, & from *Tauris* to *Coy* and to *Van*, making alwaies about eight or nyne daies iourney towards the west: which could not be so, if *Tauris* were either *Terua*, or *Tigranoama*, or *Tigranocerta*.

Like vnto these reasons is that also which may be drawen from the iourney that is vsually made from *Tauris* to *Babylonia*. For as euerie man doth testifie, and namely *Angioello* in his viage lately made into *Persia*, they trauell by south southweast. Which is a manifest token, that *Tauris* is iust in the situation of *Ecbathana* & not of *Terua*. For whosoever trauelleth from *Terua* to *Babylonia*, hee must of force trauell not by south southweast, but by southeast.

These are the reasons, whereby I haue bene perswaded not to leaue this parcell of my history to remaine in such doubt, but haue taken vpon mee resolutely to decide the same. Which although they be very pregnant and strong, yet shall I account the better of them, if your W. will willingly accept of them, and vouchsafe to continue the reading of this my letter, vntill you vnderstande also in what sorte *Iouius* and his followers haue on the other side confirmed their opinion.

For three causes doo they belieue, that *Tauris* should bee *Terua*. The first Argument is drawen from a verie subtil consideration, which they haue, touching the similitude & likenes of the names of all those places, whereof they doo find that many auncient Citties doo yet at this day retaine the first nomination, although by the alteration of speeche it bee somewhat different from the same. As for example, the Turkes call *Constantinople* by the name of *Stambul*, which is a terme borrowed from the

Grecians.

Grecians, who call this Cittie *Stimboli*. And this terme which the Græcians do vse, was first brought in whiles their Emperours raigned at what time the Cittie of *Constantinople* was called by excellencie *ῥώμη*, that is to say, the Cittie: and such as went thither, or came from thence, vsed to say (euen as we vse also at this day to say of *Rome*) *We go to the Cittie, we come from the Cittie*, alwaies vsing the terme *ῥώμη*. Which Greek worde, being corrupted by the common people of *Græcia*, began first to bee *Stimpoli*, and afterwarde being more deformed and depraued by the Turkes, it came to be *Stambul*. The like may bee said of the Cittie of *Charfa*, which *Ptolomee* calleth *Corfa*: of *Anguri*, which in old time was called *Ancyra*: of *Euphrates* and *Araxis*, the one being now called *Frat*, and the other *Arais*: of *Cesarea*, which still is called *Caisarie*: of *Alexandria*, which yet is called *Schenderie*: of *Ioppa*, which is called *Iaffa*: of *Antiochia*, which is called *Tachie*: & of many others, among whom *Terua* may also be nombred, which afterwarde with a small alteration of the worde came to be called *Taruus*, *Teruis*, and *Tauris*.

To this first argument, they added also a second. For they say, that those which trauell from *Amida*, beeing at this day called *Caramita*, the cheefe Cittie of *Mesopotamia*, & go to *Teruis*, do passe ouer the riuer *Tigris*: which riuer runeth from the one side of the Mantian Marish vnto the other side thereof with such swiftnes, that it is likened to an arrow, and thereof it purchased the name of *Tigris* which it hath at this day, (as *Strabo* teacheth vs). Neither doo they passe ouer any other Riuer of fame there. And that is a manifest token, that *Tauris* is in *Armenia*, euen in the very situation of *Terua*.

Besides these two reasons, they haue also a third argument,

Fff 4

The third argument.

The twelfth reason.

The first argument of Iouius and his followers.

ment, fortified vpon the relation and report of those Armenians, that come to *Venice*, to *Rome*, and to other partes of Christendome: from whom, it may be peradventure, that *Iouius* tooke his information. For all theie haue geuen, and at this day doo giue vndoubted testimony, that *Tarus* is in truth in *Armenia*. Which testimonie, if it bee true, then must it needes bee concluded (say they) that *Tarus* can be no other but *Terua*.

These three argumentes I haue not deemed to bee so pregnant & sure, as that they do deserue or enforce, that I should commit the truth of mine opinion to the authority of *Iouius*. And therefore rather then I wold yeeld vnto them, I haue founde out a most easie way to resolue them, and to aunswere them most sufficiently.

Wherevpon, concerning their first argument, I say, that although the similitude of wordes do fall out well in many matters, yet in many other it doth greatly erre, & may easily deceaue vs. For whosoever should go about to recon vp all the Citties, and all the Riuer, and all the Mountaines, and all the Prouinces, hee should finde a great want and errour in the most parte of them. And therefore wee will alledge some fewe of them, by whose example a man may know the slender force of the reason that is drawe from this similitude of wordes. And in truth what similitude hath *Damasco* with *Siam*? *Ierusalem* with *Godz*? *Arsacia* with *Casbin*? *Persepolis* with *Siras*? *Bithinia* with *Bursia*? *Calcedon* with *Scutar*? *Tyrus* with *Sur*? *Etolemaida* with *Acrida*? *Derbent* with *Alexandria*? *Albania* with *Zuira*? *Iberia* with *Gurgistan*? *Atropatia* with *Siruan*? *Mesopotamia* with *Diarbeche*? *Appamea* with *Aman*? *Seleucia* with *Pieria*? *Soldin*? *Anazarbo* with *Asfara*? *Arabia Felix* with *Giamen*? *Cilicia* with *Caramania*? and many others the

The answer
to the first
argument.

the recitall whereof wold bee troublesome and tedious. And indeed, with great reason ought we to hold this for an vncertaine kind of argument, which is taken from the liknes of wordes. For those nations, that haue gouerned these regions haue not alwaies had one and the selfesame regard in naming the places which they had subdued. But as in some of them they haue still retained their verie proper names, although their language hath made them somewhat to differ: (as in some aforementioned may be seen, and as now of late we haue obserued in *Cipris*, which yet they call *Cypros*.) So in some others altogether forgetting their former names, they haue called them by diuers names, according to diuers occasions, & in diuers respects. Yea and *Iouius* himselfe saith, that *Amida* was called by the Turkes *Caramita*, for the blacknes of the earth: and we also, besides the obseruation of *Iouius*, doo know that *Alexandria* vpon the Caspian Sea is now termed by the Turkes *Schenderia*, (as it should bee called by the auncient name:) but because it is longe and straite, it came to be called *Derbent*, and because it hath Iron Gates *Demir-Capi*. Likewise for *Casbin*, or as the Persians terme it *Casuin*, (let it bee which of the auncient Citties you will haue it to be) it is notoriously knowen, that it was so called because it was at the first a place, whereinto they were wont to banish or confine such persons, as for their offences and misdemeanours had deserued that chastisement. Which for that it was a place of punishment, it was called by the Persians *Casuin* & *Casbin*, which in the Persian language signifieth *Chastisement*. The like I might say of the city of *Aleppo*, by the Moors called *Halip*, which in our tongue signifieth *Milke* (for the same *Arabians* do

Ggg

say

say, that it was so called for the aboundaunce of milke, which in the time of the Patriarches was yeelded by the hearde and flockes of cattell in those champaines). But because I haue not that certaine testimony hereof, which I haue of mine other examples, I will not make account to build any foundation therevpon. And therefore next after those thinges that I haue already noted, I will set down also what I haue obserued touching the riuer, that entreth into the sea betweene *Beryto* and *Tripoli*. Which riuer, because it runneth neere vnto a Church, which was sometimes dedicated to Sainte *Iacob*, is by the inhabitantes there called *Mar Iacut*, which is to say, *the Riuer of Iacob*. Likewise the riuer *Orontes*, which is nombred amonge the famous Riuers of *Soria*, (whose bankes I haue viewed, euen from his springing head to his maine channell, which is neere to *Selencia Pieria*,) hath among the Arabians and the Turks quite lost his ancient name. And because it is very swift in his course, & hath many turnings and windings, (so that those which swim in it are oftentimes drowned therein,) as though the poore riuer had in that respect the nature of a murderer, therefore the Turkes and the Moores haue geuen it a name, that signifieth expressely, a murderer or traitor. And to the end that the truth hereof may likewise be knowne in mountains also, I will not conceale that which cometh to my memory touching the mountain *Bacras*, which is also called *Beilun*. This is a mountain, lying in the ranke of the mountains that deuideth *Soria* from *Cilicia*, (which how it was termed by auncient writers, I leaue to other men to iudge). But by the Inhabitants there, it hath been alwaies, & is at this day called *Bacras*, for none other reason

son or cause, but for that it is so ragged, so eaten as it were, and in some partes, euen in the grassie plottes of it, so bald and so bare, that it resembleth the head of one that is scurue, which by the Turkes is called *Bacras*, and by the Moores *Beilun*: for so do the Moors also call that mountaine. Hereby then it doth manifestly appeere, that it is no sound argument which is drawen from the likenes or similitude, that auncient names haue with the names of later times. For all places haue not reserued, & retained among the diuersity of sundry languages their auncient denominations: and so it seemeth to mee that this first argument remayneth sufficiently confuted. As also the second, which hauing no good and sound roote, may easily bee ouerthrowne.

Vtterly false is that foundation, which the followers of *Iouius* do vse in that place where they say, that the riuer *Tigris* passeth from the one side of the Mantian Lake vnto the other side thereof. For it woorketh not that effect, which they speake of, in the *Mantuan Marish*, but in the *Marish*, that by *Strabo* is called *Tospite*, and *Topiti*, and *Arassena*. I will not here alleadge the testimonies of later liuers, as namely of *Cicala* himselte (the *Bassa* of *Van*) nor of a thousand and a thousand marchantes and souldiers, but onely the testimony of *Strabo*, whose authority cannot be refuted as a lyer. Hee, in the eleuenth booke of his Geography, thus writeth. *Armenia* hath also great Lakes. One is the *Mantuan* Lake, that is to say, *Blacke* and *Greene* like the *Sea Water*: & (as they say) it is the greatest Lake next to *Mwotis*. It arriueth euen vnto *Atropatia*, and hath diuers salt-springes. The other is the *Arassen* Lake, called likewise *Topiti*: (for so it should be read, and not *Toeti*, as

Answer to
the second
argument.

some translate it.) This hath *Nitrum* in it : and teareth & renteth a mans apparell, and for that cause the water of it is not good to drinke. The riuer *Tigris*, departing from the mountaine neere vnto *Nisates*, passeth through this Lake, without mingling of it selfe with the water thereof, by reason of his swiftnes, whereof it hath taken his name: for the Medians call an arrow *Tigris*. It hath fishes of many and diuers kindes, whereas the fishes of the lakes are but of one kinde onely. Neere to the vtmost corner or Gulfe of the Lake, this riuer falling into a great deep, and running for a great space vnder the ground, riseth againe neere to *Colonitis*, and from thence courseth towards *Opis*, and the walles of *Semiramis*, leauing the *Cordians* on the right hand. All this did *Strabo* write, by the authoritie of *Eratosthenes* in his sixteenth booke : where he saith also most plainly, that the saide Riuer *Tigris* doth not passe through the Mantian Marish, but through the *Topiti*. But no matuell it is, that *Iouius* hath conceaued this errour, considering how greatly hee is also deceaued, when he will needs call *Siras*, *Ciropolis* : when likewise he saith, that in *Cassan* there is trafficke for silkes, and that this Cittie standeth in *Sulbana*, betweene the South and the West : and lastly, when hee putteth no distinction or difference betweene the *Zogdiani*, the *Bactrini*, the *Ariani*, the *Margiani*, & the *Aracosi*, but maketh them all one. And therefore leauing these considerations, it shall be sufficient for me to answer to their last argument, which is drawn from the report of the *Armenians*, who say that *Tauris* is situated in *Armenia* the great.

A reason (in verie truth) verie daungerous, verie slippery, and verie deceitfull. And it seemeth to me to bee altogether

altogether like to the reason of those, who going about to proue, that the *Amomū* of *Dioscorides*, is none other thing, but the *Pes Columbinus* (that is to say, the *Pigeon Foot*) of *Mount Libanon*, do vse the common word of the *Sorians*, which call that *Plant Hamana* being in very deed nothing els but a kind of *Pigeon foot*. And in troth what assured credit may bee reposed in those Armenians, and in such kinde of people as are vtterlie vnskillfull in Geographie, who neuer read any authour, that had taught them the proper Termes of those prouinces? Doo wee not see what a confusion and mingle-mangle they make of the same regions? Doo they not precisely call one part of great *Armenia*, by the name of *Gurgistan*, onely because many *Georgians* inhabite there? And likewise on the other side, doo they not call one part of the great *Media* by the name of *Armeni*, because many *Armenians* do at this day dwell dispersed here and there in diuers villages of that country? But vnder the word *Rumeli*, which in our language signifieth *Greece*, how many places doo the Turkes entertaine, which are quite out of *Greece*? And with their *Natolia* and *Caramania* doo they not likewise confound & (as it were) murder so many prouinces, that it seemeth a matter impossible to find out their ancient names? what man is hee then, that if hee had many other meanes, and many other reasons to proue the truth for the certaine acknowledgement of sundrye places, would reporte himselfe wholly and absolutely to the relation of that people?

This is as much as I thought sufficient to aunswere the reasons of *Iouius*, & to confirme mine owne opinion. All


Ggg 3

which

which notwithstanding, I doo refer to your worshippes iudgement, who as a most gentle person, and a speciall friend to the truth, will make that accoumpt of my reasons as they deserue. Which that you will doo, I humbly beseeche you, and so hartely recommend my selfe vnto you.

From Rouigo the 17. of August. 1587.

Your worships most affectionate seruitor,
Iohn-Thomas Minadoi.

 A Table, conteyning the declaration of the Names and wordes, vsed in this Historie, aswell Auncient, as Barbarous. Wherein the letter *A.* signifieth the Auncient: *B.* the Barbarous: *P.* the Persian: and *T.* the Turkish name or word.

A.



Cca and *Acra*, *B.* a Sea-coast Citie in Soria. *Ptolomaida*, *A.* according to *Ortelius* and *Anania*.

Adena and *Adana*, *B.* a Citie in the confines of *Cilicia*, *Adana*, and it may be, *Nicopolis*, *A.*

Aga, *B.* a Capitayne, or Chiefe of his companie.

Aggia-Chala, *B.* the Castell Peregrine, or the Castell of Strangers.

Aggiarni, Look for *Cheselbas*, and the *Persians*.

Aleppo, *B.* and *Halep*, *B.* look for *Halip*.

Alger, *B.* by *Iouius* is thought to be *Julia Cesarea*, *A.* and by *Castaldo* and others, to be the Citie of *Cirtha* in Africa.

Altun-Chala, *T.* the golden Castell, or Castell of gold: A place in the confines of great Armenia, and Georgia.

Amadan, *B.* a Citie of the Persians in Parthia.

Aman, *B.* a Citie in Soria, watred with the riuer *Orontes*. *Apamea*, *A.*

Amasia, *B.* *Castaldo* thinketh it to be *Cappadocia*, *A.* and others take it to be in auncient times called *Amasia*, *A.*

Andera, or *Andara*, a Towne in *Drusia*, where most exquisite Silkes are made.

The Table.

- Andrinopoli*, B. a principall Citie in Thracia, *Adrianopolis*, A.
- Angori*, B. a Citie in Cappadocia, which is a Region in Asia the lesser, and by *Bellonius* thought to be *Encyra*, and *Ancyra*, A. in the peregrination of Sainct Paul.
- Antachie*, B. a Citie in Soria, now decayed, but yet worth the sight, both in respect of the situation and walles thereof, as also for the Riuer that runneth by it. *Antiochia*, A.
- Arasse*, B. a Riuer that watreth the South part of great Armenia, & almost diuideth it from Georgia. *Araxis*, A. *Achlar*, and *Ares*, T.
- Arbella*, B. a Citie in Assyria, according to *Strabo*, and *Q. Curtius*, and by the error of some thought to be *Tarusis*.
- Arcipelago*, B. but in old time called *Mare Egeum*, A. a part of the Sea *Mediterraneum*, that seperateth Europe from Asia.
- Ardachan*, B. a Citie of the Turkes in great Armenia.
- Ardouil*, P. a Citie in Media, the first Seat of the Persian Sect, wherein *Giunet*, *Sederdin*, and other their successors, that were authors of the Persian superstition, did reside and reigne.
- Arz*, T. a Supplication, a Request, or an Information.
- At-Maidan*, B. the high Street, or chiefe Market place in Constantinople.

B.

- Bagdat*, B. *Laonicus* calleth it *Bogdatis*, and the Italians call it *Baldacco*, in old time *Babylon*, A.
- Balbech*, B. a Citie in Palæstina, which *Bellonius* taketh to be *Cæsarea Philippi*, A. and so is it accompted in the peregrination of Sainct Paul.

The Table.

- peregrination of Sainct Paul.
- Balsara*, and as *Frederico* writeth it, *Bassora*, B. a Citie in the channell of Euphrates, called by *Castaldo*, and others, *Teredon*, A.
- Bassa*, T. a Capitaine, a Gouvernour, a chiefe Lord.
- Beglerbey*, T. a great Lord.
- Bestan*, P. a Citie in Hircania.
- Bey*, or *Beg*, or *Bech*, T. a chiefe man, or a Lord.
- Bir*, which some call *Birta*, B. a Citie vpon Euphrates, in the confines of Soria.
- Bruz*, B. a Hill in Armenia; the creast of the Periardj Mountaines.
- Brusia* and *Bursa*, B. in old time the chiefe Palace of Bithynia, and called in the old time *Prusia*, A. But *Ortelius* vnaduisedly thinketh, that *Bursa* and *Brusia* is not a Citie, but a whole Region. And herein also is *Castaldo* deceiued, if our owne sense haue not shewed vnto vs one Citie in steed of another, or if we be not deceiued in deed in the verie names of them.

C.

- Caddi*, T. a Iudge.
- Cafe*, B. a place within two dayes journey of *Babylon*, where *Aly* and his children are buried.
- Cassa*, B. *Anania* vseth no other name: although in deed *Cassa* now was in old time called *Theodosia*, A.
- Cahaca*, B. a Towne so called, situate betweene *Casbin* and *Tauris*.
- Cairo*, B. a huge Citie in Ægypt, neere whereunto are the famous *Pyramides*: whereby a man may easily iudge, that there was the most renowned citie of Memphis.

HHh

Ortelius

Ortelius thinketh that it is *Babylon* : but *Ortelius* himself setteth downe another *Babylon* in another table of his, and placeth it in *Assiria*. So that he maketh two Cities of one name. Whereof notwithstanding it is no time now to dispute.

Caisar, B. a place in Cilicia, of no great reckoning, and without any note of antiquitie.

Calais, T. a Guide.

Caldaran, B. the name of certain famous Champeynes. Perhaps they may be the same Champeynes which *Strabo* called the Champeynes of *Araxis*.

Calise, P. a Priest, or Prelate.

Canac, B. a Riuer that diuideth a part of Atropatia from Armenia.

Candahar, P. a certaine Kingdome. In old time *Peripatetico, A.*

Capigi, T. a gentleman Vsher.

Capigi-Bashi, T. the chiefe gentleman Vsher.

Capigi-Larchecaisi, T. the Lieutenant or chiefe Lord of the gentlemen Vshers.

Caracach, P. a Territorie of the Persians in Media.

Carachala, T. the black Castell, it is in Armenia, but it belongeth to the Georgians.

Caraemit, T. the black Citie. It is now the Metropolitall Citie of the Mesopotamians. *Iouius* and others call it *Amida, A.*

Caramania and *Caraman, B.* the black Region : It is commonly deemed to be *Cilicia, A.*

Casbin and *Casuin, P.* we may well interpret it : *The place of punishment.* And it is the Citie, whether the palace of the Persian Empire was translated by Tamas, and called *Casbin*, because those that for their punishment had

had deserued banishment, were at the first banished thither. It is yet in Media the great, a little more South then Tauris : So that a man may verie well think it to be *Arfacia, A.* in *Strabo*.

Casenda, T. the common Treasure. Look *Hasna*.

Cassachi, T. Robbers by the high way.

Cassan, B. a Citie in Parthia, verie famous and rich. *Ortelius* and the rest make no mention of it.

Cassangic, B. a place belonging to Maxut-Chan in Armenia.

Cecchino, or Zecchino, A. a Venetian Duckate.

Chala, and Chalasi, B. a Towne or a Castell.

Chan, P. and also vsed in Tartaria, and is the same that the Turkes call a *Bassa*.

Chars, B. peraduenture it is that which *Ptolomie* calleth *Corsa, A.*

Checaia, T. a Deputie or Agent.

Cheiserie, B. we think it to be *Cesarea in Palestina, A.* a litle from *Ioppa*. *Ptolomie* saith it is *Cesarea*, wherof *Strabo* maketh mention. It hath many notes of antiquitie.

Cheselbas, B. a Red-Capp. It is a title giuen to the Persians : who are also called the *Soffians*, the *Cheselbas*, the *Persians*, and the *Aggiami*. Look *Persians*.

Chianichie, B. a place neere to *Ragusa*, verie famous, because it was the natiue Countrie of *Ebrain Bassa*, sonne in law to *Amurath*.

Chiaus, T. a Nuntio, or an Embassadour.

Chielder-Giol, B. the Lake of *Chielder* : for *Giol* signifieth a lake : and it may be thought without any error to be the Poole of *Euphrates, A.*

Chielder Monte, B. the hilles of *Periardo*.

Chielebi, B. a Gentleman.

The Table.

- Chiusfal, B.* a Towne in Armenia, yet inhabited at this day by the Georgians.
- Chiuri-Chala, B.* a new Territorie in Georgia, that is to say, inhabited of old by the Georgians, but yet comprehended vnder Armenia.
- Clisca, a* Territorie in Armenia, and in old time possessed by the Georgians, though now in the handes of the Turkes.
- Codabanda, P.* Blind or weak of sight. *Hodabanda* signifieth the selfe samething, but other writers erroneously pronounce it *Hodabende*.
- Coran, B.* a Citie in Parthia.
- Corfu, a* late word: a famous Island, called in old time *Corcyra, A.* and according to *Ortelius, Corfinio, A.*
- Coy, B.* a Citie in the borders of Armenia, and Media, betweene Van and Tauris.
- Culbat, B.* a Citie in Parthia.
- Cur, B.* a Citie in Parthia.
- Curchi-Bassi, P.* Captain of the *Curchi*, who are the soldiers, that are appointed for the guard of the Persian Kings Court.
- Curdi, B.* a people which many think to be the *Parthians, A.* But we cannot possibly thinke them to be so. wherein we agree with *Castaldo*.
- Curzolari, B.* in old time called the *Echinades, A.* which are certain Rockes, verie famous by reason of the victorie by Sea obtayned by the most happie and fortunate League of the Chatholikes, against the Turkish fleet.
- Cussestan, B.* a part of Assyria.

Dagmat,

The Table.

D.

- Dagmat, B.* a Citie in the confines of Parthia, and of Media the great.
- Damasco, A.* a Citie in Soria. Look *Sciam*.
- Destardar, T.* a Treasourer or Chamberlein.
- Demir-Capi, T.* the Iron-Gates. *Demir-Capi* is also called *Derbent*. It is a Citie sometimes called *Alessandria, A.* neere to the Hircanian Sea. It is called *Derbent*, because it is in figure narrow and long: and *Demir-Capi*, because there were the Iron-gates, that were sometimes the entrance into Scythia.
- Demotica, B.* a Citie in Thracia, famous in regard of the banishment of *Sinan-Bassa* into that place, wherof mention is made in the Historie, *Lib. 5.*
- Derbent, B.* a Citie called *Demir-Capi*. *Derbent* signifieth streit or narrow.
- Diarbech, B.* the Countrie of *Mesopotamia*.
- Diuano, B.* a place of audience, or a Counsaile-house. It is sometimes taken for the audience it selfe, and sometimes for the Counsaile it selfe.
- Don, B.* the Riuer sometimes called *Tanaïs, A.* in Sarmatia.
- Dreuis and Denuis, B.* a Religious person, an Heremite.

E.

- Edel, B.* sometimes called *Volga, A.* a famous Riuer in Sarmatia within Europe.
- Emir, B.* a common name among the Arabians, and the Drusians, vsed for a Prince, a Duke, a chief Noble man.
- Eres, B.* a Citie in Atropatia.
- Erzurum, B.* we think it to be *Simbra* in *Ptolomie*.

HHh 3

Eßabul,

The Table.

Eſabul, P. a troupe of Souldiers belonging to the Guard of the Perſian King.

F.

F. ichi, B. a Maſter of Ceremonies, a Maſter of Religion.

Famagoſta, B. a new word corrupted from the vulgar Greeke, which calleth it *Famauſta*, in old time it was *Salamina* in Cyprus, *A.*

Farſi, P. the Region of Perſia.

G.

Gangiara, B. a ſharpe crooked dagger.

Gaza, A. a Citie in the confines of Iudea, and in the way that leadeth towards *Peluſium, A.*

Genge, B. a Citie of the Perſians in Armenia the greater.

Gheilan, B. a Citie in the Region of *Gilan*, which *Caſtaldo* calleth *Geli*.

Giamen, B. a Prouince in Aſia, where *Arabia Felice* is ſituated.

Gianiſaro, B. a degree of Turkiſh Souldiers ſo called.

Giauat, B. a Citie of Atropatia, in the confines of Media the greater.

Gien, B. a Citie of the Parthians.

Giol, T. a lake or a poole.

Giurgi-Chala, T. the Georgian-Caſtell, now poſſeſſed by the Turkes. It is in the confines of Georgia and Armenia.

Godz, B. the Citie of Ieruſalem.

Gogna, and Conia, B. a Citie ſo called, and in old time *Iconium, A.* the chiefe Citie of the Lycaonians.

Goletta, B. a famous Iſland.

Gori,

The Table.

Gori, and Gorides, B. a Territorie in Georgia.

Grin, B. a Territorie inhabited by the Georgians, ſituated on the hither ſide of *Araxis*.

Gurgiſtan and Georgia, B. the Region that containeth all the auncient *Iberia*, and part alſo of *Armenia* the great. The inhabitants of the Countrey do call all that Territorie *Gurgiſtan*, which is inhabited by the Georgians. In which point, *Negro, Anania, and Pius ſecundus* are not well aduiſed, becauſe they think that Georgia is onely *Iberia*.

Gnuergi-Chalaſi, B. a Caſtell ſituate in the middeſt of a little lake towards Tauris.

H.

Halip, an Arabian word, and ſignifieth Milke. It is a verie famous Citie in Soria, which *Iouius* calleth *Alapia*, *Bellonius* calleth it *Hierapolis*, and *Qillanoua* being in a notorious error for this point, calleth it *Antiochia*. For *Antiochia* is two dayes iourney diſtant from *Aleppo*, more toward the Sea, as we our ſelues haue ſeen with our eyes.

Haſna, T. It ſignifieth Treſure, Store, Money collected aſwell for publike, as for priuate uſes, although properly it is onely taken for the publike Treſure, or for the Kinges monyes.

Haſſan-Chalaſi, T. The Caſtell of *Haſſan*. It is alſo called by the Turkes, *Paſſin*. It is a new erected thing betweene Erzirum and Chars, ſituate vpon the bankes of the riuer Euphrates.

Heri, B. a Citie in Aria.

Hiſpahan, B. a Citie ſometimes in Parthia.

H H h 4

Ieſſelbas,

I.

[*Esselbas*, B. a Greene-Cap. A certain people betweene the *Bactrians* and the *Sogdians*, so called, because they did weare Greene-Capps on their heads.

Imammadul-iss, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Imbrahur-Bassi, T. Master of the Kings horse.

Isnic, B. a Citie in old times called *Nicea*, A. in Bithynia, neere to the Moore *Ascania*, A.

Istigelu, and *Sagialu*, B. a Renowmed familie, both at *Casbin*, and also ouer all the kingdome of Persia.

L.

[*Lake-Aetamar*, in old time called the Moore or marish *Martiana*, or *Margiana*, or *Mantiana*, A. and according to *Strabo*, it is in Armenia the greater.

Lake of Essecchia, in old time called the Marish *Lychnitis*, A. in Georgia.

Lake of Isnic, in old time the Marish *Ascania*, A. in Bithynia.

Lake Tospite, or *Toeti*, it is in great Armenia.

Lizza, B. a Citie by the Sea-coast in Soria, called in old time *Laodicea*, A.

Lori, B. a Fortresse in Armenia, sometimes belonging to the Georgians, but now possessed by the Turkes.

M.

Macadems, B. a word vsed among the *Drusiani* for a Deputie, an Agent, or a chief Factor. For an *Emir* or Lord in Drusia. Look the 7. Booke.

Macuco, B. a Measure in Soria, wherewith they measure Corne.

Corne. It is a little bigger then the bushell of *Padua*, that is fower bushels and a halfe, *Venetian* measure.

Malan, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Mar delle Zabacche, B. in old time called *Palus Mæotica*, A. the Fennes of *Mæotis*.

Mar di Bachu, B. in tymes passed *Mare Caspium*, and *Mare Hircanum*, A. It is also at this day called the Sea of *Corazum*.

Mar Maggiore, the great Sea. And *Mar Nero*, the black Sea, sometimes called *Pontus Euxinus*, A.

Mar Morto, the dead Sea, sometimes called the *Lake Asphaltitis*, A.

Marant, B. a Citie neere to Armenia in the confines of the Medians, or rather within Media.

Maras, B. a Citie in Cilicia, called by *Bellonius* and *Ortelius*, *Maronia*, A.

Marmara, B. a Citie vpon the Sea-coast of Thracia.

Masandran, B. a Citie in Hircania.

Masiat, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Masul, T. a man cassiered, or depriued of his Office: in English, Iack out of office.

Mecca, B. a Citie in *Arabia Fælix*, where some think *Mahamet* was borne, and where he is also buried.

Mengrellia, B. sometimes the Region of *Colchos*, A. famous for the golden Fleece.

Meschita, B. the place where the *Barbarians* do meete together, to say their prophane prayers: in English a Temple, or a Church.

Miana, B. a Citie situate in the borders of Media the greater, of Persia, and of Parthia. It is peraduenture so called, by the Riuer that is neer vnto it, whose name is *Miana*.

The Table.

Miriza, and *Mirize*, *P.* the title of a Prince in *Persia*. The Kings chiefe Lieutenant.
Moldavia, a Region in *Dacia*.
Mordar, *P.* a Chaunceller. The Turks call him *Tescheregi*.
Mucaren: the first moneth of the Turkish yeare: much agreeing with our *January*.
Musti, *T.* the chiefe Priest.
Mustaed-Dini, *P.* the same which the Turkes call *Musti*. The chiefe Priest.

N.

Naplos, *B.* in old time called *Napoli*, *A.* in *Samaria*: peradventure it was in time past *Nephtalim*, *A.*
Nassuan, *B.* a Citie in *Media* the greater, or els in the confines of *Media*, and *Armenia*. Some think it to be *Nasuana*, and others take it to be *Artaxata*, *A.*
Natolia, in the opinion of *Bellonius*, comprehendeth all the Regions of *Phrygia*, *Galatia*, *Bithynia*, *Pontus*, *Lydia*, *Caria*, *Paphlagonia*, *Lycia*, *Magnesia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Comagena*.
Neneruan, *B.* a place in *Armenia* bordering vpon *Georgia*.
Nisabul, *B.* a Citie in *Aria*.
Nisaur, *B.* a Citie in the confines of *Parthia* and *Hircania*.
Nosul, *T.* a Taxe or collection of Corne.

O.

Olti, *T.* a place belonging to the Turkes, betwene *Erzurum* and *Ardachan*.

P.

Pangiahar, *B.* a Citie bordering vpon *Hircania* and *Media* the greater.

Pasim.

The Table.

Pasim. Look *Hasan-Chalasi*.

Persiani, The *Persians*. They are also called *Aggiani*, *Chefelbas*, & *Sofiani*. *Persiani*, of the Prouince of *Persia*: *Aggiani*, of the Region *Azemias*, or *Aggiamia*: *Chefelbas*, of the Redd-marke which these people weare in their Turbantes: and *Soffians*, of the *Sofi*, who is their chiefe Gouernour.

Peruana-Giol, *T.* the lake of *Sclaves*. It is in *Armenia*.

Phasis, *A.* a Citie in *Colchis*, called yet at this day *Phasis* and *Fas*.

Porta, a Gate: but principally in this Historie it is taken for the Court of the Turkish *Sultan*: because all his Counsaillors, and chiefe Gouernours of his kingdome do vse to sit in the Gate of the Emperours Court, to heare and dispatch causes aswell priuate as publike.

Portugall, in old time called *Lusitania*, *A.*

R.

Rasadi, *B.* a man of a false Religion, of a false faith.

Rama, a Towne in *Palastina*, which *Castaldo* calleth *Lidda*. Peradventure it was that *Rama*, *A.* which mourned and wept for the great slaughter of the holie Innocents, *Math. 2.*

Ramadan, *T.* one of the solemne feastes of the Turkes. It is also the proper name of a man, and the name of a Moone. For as we haue twelue Monethes, with their seuerall proper names: so haue the Turkes their xij. Moones with their seuerall proper names also.

Reiuan, *B.* a Citie in *Armenia*. It may be, it is *Terua* in *Ptolomie*. But I do not altogether agree with him in that point.

S Affetto, B. a Citie in Galilie, inhabited by the Iewes.

Saba, or Shah, P. the great King or *Sofi* of Persia.

Saitan-Chalasi, B. the Castell of Satan, or the Devils Castell, in the confines of Armenia and Georgia.

Salmas, B. a Citie betwixt Tauris and Van, but Southward to them both.

Sancazan, B. a place neer to Tauris, famous in this Historie, aswell in respect of some battells there foughten, as also of the death of *Generall Osman*, who died there.

Sangiacco, B. a Lord, or a kind of Captaine.

Sardar, T. Captaine of the *Iannizzaries*, Captaine of the Armie, and properly the Generall.

Saru, B. a Citie in Media the greater.

Sasuar, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Sciam, B. the Citie of *Damasco*. Look *Damasco*.

Scutar, and Scutari, B. sometimes called *Chalcedon, A.* a Citie in Asia, right ouer against *Constantinople*. Some do erroneously call it *Chrysopolis, A.*

Sechi, B. a Citie in Atropatia bordering vpon Georgia.

Seida, and Seit, B. in old time called *Sidonia, A.* a Citie on the Sea-coast in Drusia.

Semiran, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Semitarra, B. a Scimitarre, a long crooked Sword, A Faulchon.

Ser, B. a Riuer sometimes called *Cirus, A.* that watreth the South part of Georgia.

Sessa. Look *Tocca* and *Turbante*.

Siee, B. an old, wise, Religious, learned, and prudent man. A man of good, and holie life.

Siliurea, a Citie in Thracia called *Silymbria*: Which the Persian calleth *Selimbria*, and *Nicolo Nicolio, Seliurie*.

Sinibra,

Sinibra, or Simbra in *Ptolomie A.* It is now called *Erzurum*, fower daies iourney distant from *Trabisonda*.

Siras, B. some call it *Persepolis, A.* and some *Ciropolis, A.* It is the chiefe palace of the Region of *Persia*.

Siruan, and Siruania, B. sometimes called *Media Atropatia*. The Hebrewes called it *Madian, A.*

Sinas, B. in old time *Sebastapolis, A.* a Citie in Natolia.

Soffi, and Sofito, P. an auncient word signifying a wise man, learned and skilfull in Magike Naturall. It is growen to be the common name of the Emperour of Persia.

Soffian, B. a place neer vnto Tauris. It may be perhaps the auncient *Soffia*.

Soldin, B. a Citie vpon the Sea-coast of Soria, destroyed long ago. It was called in old time *Seleucia Pieria, A.* within fiew miles whereof the Riuer Orontes dischargeth it self into the Sea: But *Castaldo* in his description of *Asia*, doeth not describe it in deed, as it standeth.

Soria, B. in times past the Region of *Syria, A.*

Spahini, T. a companie of Turkish Souldiers so called.

Spaoglani, B. a companie of foote-men, inferiour in degree to the *Iannizzaries*.

Stambul, by the Turkes and Arabians so called, in steed of *Constantinople*.

Subassi, B. The Lieutenant or Captaine of a Garrison or Guard.

Sultania, a Citie in great Media.

Sultano, or Sultan, B. a Captain. A great Lord. It is verie often vsed for the Emperour of Turkie: as *Sultan Amurath*, the great Turk *Amurath*.

Sumachi, and Sumachia, B. the chiefe Palace of *Atropatia*.

The Table.

Sunni, B. a man of sound faith, and sincere opinion in matter of Religion.

Sar, B. a Citie vpon the Sea-coast of Soria, in old time called *Tyrus*, A.

T.

Tartari, and *Tatar*, B. the Tartarians, inhabiting Scythia and Sarmatia.

Tatar-Chan, B. the chiefe Lord or Gouvernour of the Tartarians. He is called the great *Chan* of Tartaria.

Tauris, and *Taru*, Read the Letter to *S. Mario Corrado* in the end of this booke.

Techisnandan, B. Certain Mountaines in *Caramania Deserta*.

Teflis, and *Tiflis*, a Citie in Armenia, but belonging to the Georgians.

Testis, T. a Proceffe or Bill of complaint, put vp by the Plaintife.

Teracan, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Tocca, B. the round Roll, which the Barbarians vse to weare on their heades. It is also called *Sessa* and *Turbante*.

Tomanis, a Citie in Armenia, but belonging to the Georgians, verie famous for the notorious & treacherous straites that are neer it.

Trabisondo, B. a Sea-coast Citie vpon Pontus Euxinus, called in old time *Trapezuntium*, A.

Triala, B. a place in Armenia, renowned for a number of Churches there, which held of the Romish Religion.

Tripoli, B. a Sea-coast Citie in Asia and in Africa.

Turbane, B. a white Roll, which the Barbarians weare vpon

The Table.

vpon their heades. Look *Tocca*.

Turbat, B. a Citie in Parthia.

Turcoman, a Citie betwixt Tauris and Casbin.

Turcomanni, a people mingled among the Turkes and Persians.

Turcomania the greater, of old called *Great Armenia*, A.

Tursis, B. a Citie in Parthia.

V.

Van, B. a Citie in the Martian Marish.

Vifier, B. a chiefe Counsaillour, or Gouvernour generall of the State of Turkie.

Vlac, and *Volacchi*, T. Postes, or Currors to run of a message in hast.

Vlu-Bassi, B. the Captain of a certain number of Souldiers, but not so high in degree as an *Aga* is.

Z.

Zaffo, and *Giaffa*, B. a Citie by the Sea-side, in old times called *Ioppa*, A.

Zagatai, B. certain Tartarians, comprehended vnder the name of the *Sogdiani*.

Zaghen, B. a City in Armenia, inhabited by the Georgians.

Zaini, T. a noble companie of valiant Souldiers.

Zanga, B. a Citie in great Armenia.

Zante, B. an Island in the Ionian Sea, called in old time

Zacynthus, A.

Zine, B. certain festiual signes and shewes of publike ioy.

Zuiria, B. a Region lying at the rootes of Mount Caucasus, towards the Hircanian Sea, and was called in old time, *Albania*, A.